

# Table of Contents

---

I. The Creation Story.....	11
A. Creation.....	11
1. Dateless Past.....	11
2. God’s Creative Word.....	12
3. The First Creation.....	13
4. The Pre-Adamite Creation.....	15
5. Our Present Creation.....	17
6. Creation Not Evolution.....	20
B. The Origin of Man.....	22
1. Created as Eternal Spirit Beings.....	22
2. Man Consists of Three Parts.....	23
3. Adam, the First Human Being.....	25
Review Questions- Unit 1.....	25
4. God Gave Man Dominion.....	27
C. The Garden of Eden.....	29
1. Then came Woman.....	30
2. The Probation of Man.....	31
3. The Fall of Man.....	33
4. The Penalty of Death.....	39
5. The Promise of a Savior.....	43
D. Cain and Abel.....	45
1. The Right Sacrifice.....	46
Review Questions- Unit 2.....	48
E. Noah and the Flood.....	49
1. The World before the Flood.....	49
2. The Profile of a Giant.....	52
3. Ark Building Time.....	58
4. The Deluge.....	60
5. God’s Covenant with Noah.....	63
F. Table of Nations.....	65
1. The Tower of Babel.....	68
2. The Division of the Earth.....	69

# Table of Contents

---

Review Questions- Unit 3.....	70
II. The Patriarchs.....	72
A. The Covenant.....	72
1. Covenant Dynamics.....	73
2. The Hebrew Ritual.....	75
3. David and Jonathan Cut Covenant.....	79
4. The New Covenant And You.....	82
Review Questions- Unit 4.....	89
5. God’s Covenant with Job.....	90
6. God’s Covenant with Abraham.....	92
7. The New Covenant Parallel.....	101
Review Questions- Unit 5.....	110
B. Abraham.....	111
1. The Call of Abram.....	111
2. The Covenant is Confirmed .....	115
Review Questions- Unit 6.....	121
C. Isaac.....	122
1. Personal History.....	122
D. Jacob.....	125
1. Personal History.....	125
2. Jacob Serves Laban.....	127
E. Joseph.....	130
1. Sold as a Slave.....	131
2. Joseph and His Brothers.....	133
Review Questions- Unit 7.....	136
III. The Birth of a Nation.....	137
A. Egypt.....	138
1. Background.....	138
2. Israel in Egypt.....	140
B. The Exodus.....	143
1. The Plagues.....	144

# Table of Contents

---

Review Questions- Unit 8.....	149
C. Passover.....	150
1. A Lamb Defeats a Serpent.....	153
2. Jesus Partook of Passover.....	156
3. The Lamb on the Cross.....	159
4. The Lamb On the Throne.....	162
Review Questions- Unit 9.....	165
D. The Red Sea.....	166
1. Pharaoh takes the Bait.....	168
E. The Law.....	171
1. Mount Sinai.....	171
2. The Ten Commandments.....	173
3. The Mosaic Law.....	176
4. The Purpose of the Law.....	180
5. The Covenant Confirmed by Blood.....	186
Review Questions- Unit 10.....	189
F. The Wilderness.....	190
1. Establishing Precedence.....	190
2. The Waters of Marah.....	191
3. Manna and Quail.....	193
4. Water from the Rock.....	196
5. The Amalekites Defeated.....	198
6. The Golden Calf.....	199
7. Miriam and Aaron Oppose Moses.....	202
8. Exploring Canaan.....	204
Review Questions- Unit 11.....	210
9. Korah's Rebellion.....	211
10. Water from the Rock.....	214
11. Balak and Balaam.....	216
12. Joshua Succeeds Moses.....	218
13. Don't Forget the Lord.....	221

# Table of Contents

---

Review Questions- Unit 12.....	224
IV. The Old Order.....	225
A. The Tabernacle.....	227
1. The Campsite.....	228
2. Entrance Gate.....	231
3. Brazen Altar.....	232
4. Brazen Laver.....	234
5. The Holy Place.....	237
6. The Holy of Holies.....	241
Review Questions- Unit 13.....	245
B. The Sacrifices.....	246
1. Background.....	247
2. The Sacrifice System.....	252
3. The Sin Offering.....	256
4. The Trespass or Guilt Offering.....	260
5. The Burnt Offering.....	263
6. The Meal or Grain Offering.....	264
7. The Peace or Fellowship Offering.....	266
Review Questions- Unit 14.....	269
C. The Priesthood.....	270
1. The Old Covenant High Priestly Garments.....	270
2. The Day of Atonement.....	271
3. The New Covenant High Priestly Garments.....	276
4. The Sin Offering for the World.....	277
5. The Perfect Priest.....	281
6. The High Priest on the Throne.....	282
Review Questions- Unit 15.....	284



# Foreword

---

*In the beginning God created the heavens and the earth.  
Genesis 1:1*

I am really excited about this comprehensive study, I believe that it will provide an excellent foundation to your Christian faith. As we study the Pentateuch together (first 5 books of the Bible), we see the origin and fall of man, blood covenant, the birth, deliverance and journey of a nation to their Promised Land- rich in typology! What makes this study particularly exciting, is seeing how much Jesus was being foretold and revealed throughout the Old Covenant, announcing the Gospel to us in advance.

## **Objectives:**

- Provide an overview and general orientation of the creation story and early encounters with God
- Use the New Covenant to link and explain the significance of Old Covenant types/shadows
- Learn from some of the successes and failures of God's people under the Old Covenant

There is an old saying, "Those who cannot remember the past are condemned to repeat it." Even though the Bible is thousands of years old, it still speaks to us today because human nature has not changed since the fall of man in the Garden of Eden. God has not changed, His nature of holiness, righteousness and love remains eternal and has great relevance in our lives today. And the devil has not changed in his schemes and tactics to deceive humanity; only his packaging has changed in how he presents his same worn out old temptations.

## **1 Corinthians 10:1-11**

**For I do not want you to be ignorant of the fact, brothers, that our forefathers were all under the cloud and that they all passed through the sea. They were all baptized into Moses in the cloud and in the sea. They all ate the same spiritual food and drank the same spiritual drink; for they drank from the spiritual rock that accompanied them, and that rock was Christ. Nevertheless, God was not pleased with most of them; their bodies were scattered over the desert. Now these things occurred as examples to keep us from setting our hearts on evil things as they did. Do not be idolaters, as some of them were; as it is written: "The people sat down to eat and drink and got up to indulge in pagan revelry." We should not commit sexual immorality, as some of them did — and in one day twenty-three thousand of them died. We should not test the Lord, as some of them did — and were killed by snakes. And do not grumble, as some of them did — and were killed by the destroying angel. These things happened to them as examples and were written down as warnings for us, on whom the fulfillment of the ages has come.**

If I was to point out one aspect of this entire series of teaching, that has the most impact upon our Christian faith, and is the most misunderstood, it's "Blood Covenant." Understanding the "Scarlet Thread" of blood covenant that is interwoven throughout the Bible is essential to understanding the awesome power of the death, burial and resurrection of Jesus Christ, and our glorious redemption. So what makes the reality of Christianity stand out way beyond all the other religions of the world, that's right, blood covenant- this revelation knowledge will greatly impact your walk with the Lord.

So without any further ado, *"now I commit you to God and to the word of his grace, which can build you up and give you an inheritance among all those who are sanctified."* Acts 20:32

# Introduction

---

## Why the Old Testament

Let's examine the place and importance of the Old Testament in the Bible. The Old Covenant writings are just as much as inspired by the Holy Spirit as the New Testament.

### Romans 15:4

**For everything that was written in the past was written to teach us, so that through endurance and the encouragement of the Scriptures we might have hope.**

Let's briefly examine the arrangement of the books of the Bible as we find them today. We shall then turn to the Scriptures of Jesus' day, and study the great story of their origin and preservation down through the ages. We will find here the answers to some of the most common questions about this very important portion of the Holy Scriptures.

The Bible is actually a library of books, 66 in number. Its name, taken from the Greek *ta biblia*, originally meant "the books." When the term passed into the Latin of the Middle Ages, it became singular in form, *biblia*, or "the Book." No other writing could be known simply as "the Book." There is a silent tribute to the uniqueness of the Bible in the very simplicity of its title. Just as for Americans the Constitution means only one document, although there are multitudes of constitutions, so for men the world around the Book means only one, although there are books almost without number.

## 1. The Structure of the Bible

The 66 books of the Bible are, of course, divided into two great sections, known familiarly as the Old and New Testaments. The term testament here carries the sense of "covenant" or "agreement." Until well into the Christian era, what we now know as the Old Testament was referred to as "the Scriptures," or "the Law and the Prophets." When the books of our New Testament were written and recognized, the title "Old Covenant" was applied to the Scriptures of that day; "New Covenant" to the works of the apostles and their companions.

## The Unity of the Bible

Approximately 40 different writers contributed to the formation of the Bible, and their work took a period of about 15 centuries, from Moses to John the Revelator. Men of every rank and station in life made their contributions: princes, kings, priests, prophets, herdsmen, farm laborers, fishermen, tax collectors, physicians, lawyers, and teachers. Some wrote without knowing what any of the others had written. Many wrote with knowledge of only a meager portion of the rest. None wrote having at hand all the other books. Yet the whole comprises a unity of theme and purpose which can be accounted for only on the basis that "men spoke from God as they were carried along by the Holy Spirit."

**2 Peter 1:19-21- And we have the word of the prophets made more certain, and you will do well to pay attention to it, as to a light shining in a dark place, until the day dawns and the morning star rises in your hearts. Above all, you must understand that no prophecy of Scripture came about by the prophet's own interpretation. For prophecy never had its origin in the will of man, but men spoke from God as they were carried along by the Holy Spirit.**

In reference to the Old Covenant Law we see some powerful references being made in the New Testament: "living words", "what is superior" and "you have in the law the embodiment of knowledge and truth."

### Acts 7:38

He was in the assembly in the desert, with the angel who spoke to him on Mount Sinai, and with our fathers; and he received living words to pass on to us.

### Romans 2:18-21

If you know his will and approve of what is superior because you are instructed by the law; if you are convinced that you are a guide for the blind, a light for those who are in the dark, an instructor of the foolish, a teacher of infants, because you have in the law the embodiment of knowledge and truth.

The grand theme of the Bible is the story of redemption, conceived in the mind of God, accomplished through the obedient life of Christ, and conveyed by the work and will of the Holy Spirit. From the creation recorded in Genesis to the consummation or fulfillment described in Revelation, the whole grand scope of human life is described.

The redemptive Cross stands at the heart of the Bible. All of the Old Testament and the bulk of the Gospels look forward to it. All of the New Testament after the Gospels looks back to it as the supreme basis of faith and confidence.

## 2. The Order of the Books

The arrangement of the books of the Bible as we have them now is in part chronological and in part logical. That is, the order is largely historical, in time sequence; and at the same time an arrangement by type of material is provided.

### Historical

The first books of the Old Testament are in the main historical, and carry the thread of narrative from creation to the return of Israel from captivity in Babylon. Traditionally, these 17 books are divided as follows:

#### **I. The Pentateuch-known as the Five Books of Moses or the Law**

Genesis	Numbers
Exodus	Deuteronomy
Leviticus	

#### **II. The Historical Books-12 in number**

##### A. The Period of Tribal Government

Joshua	Ruth
Judges	

##### B. The Rise and Fall of the Monarchy

I and II Samuel	I and II Chronicles
I and II Kings	

##### C. The Return from Exile

Ezra	Esther
Nehemiah	

### **The Pentateuch**

## Wisdom and Poetical

Following the historical books, whose record will provide the outline for most of this text, are placed the five books of wisdom and poetry. Most of these were written in, or relate to, the closing part of the period covered by the historical books which precede them, thus preserving something of a chronological order of arrangement.

### III. Wisdom and Poetical Books

Job	Ecclesiastes
Psalms	Song of Solomon
Proverbs	

## Prophetical

The last 17 books of the Old Testament are known as the prophetical books, and again are divided into two groups, as follows:

### IV. The Major Prophets

Isaiah	Ezekiel
Jeremiah	Daniel
Lamentations	

### V. The Minor Prophets

Hosea	Obadiah	Nahum	Haggai
Joel	Jonah	Habakkuk	Zechariah
Amos	Micah	Zephaniah	Malachi

## The New Testament

A similar pattern of arrangement is found in the New Testament.

## Historical

The first five books give the historical narrative and basis of fact upon which the remainder is built. These are:

### VI. The Gospels

Matthew	Luke
Mark	John

### VII. The Book of Acts

## The Epistles

Following the books of historical emphasis comes the Epistles, commonly grouped into two major divisions:

### VIII. The Epistles of Paul

Romans	Colossians
I and II Corinthians	I and II Thessalonians
Galatians	I and II Timothy
Ephesians	Titus
Philippians	Philemon

### IX. The General Epistles

Hebrews	I, II, and III John
James	Jude
I and II Peter	

## Prophetical

The New Testament closes, as does the Old, with a book of which the primary emphasis is on prophecy, directed toward the future:

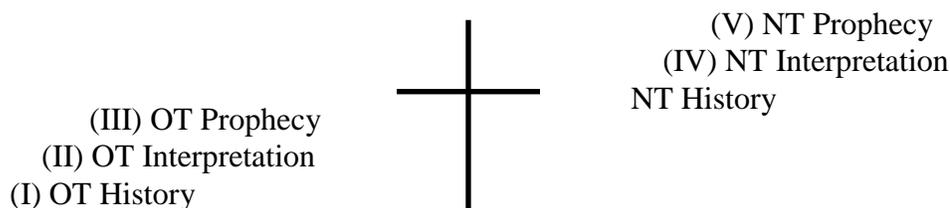
### X. The Book of Revelation

## 3. Parallelism of the Old and New Testaments

It will be noticed that there is an interesting parallel in the arrangement of the books as they stand in our Old and New Testaments:

	<b>Old Testament</b>	<b>New Testament</b>
a. History	I. The Pentateuch II. The Historical Books	I. The Gospels II. The Acts
b. Interpretation and Application	III. The Poetical and Wisdom books	III. The Pauline Epistles IV. The General Epistles
c. Prophecy	IV. The Major Prophets V. The Minor Prophets	V. Revelation

It should also be noted that the relationship between the structures of the Old and New Testaments is progressive as well as parallel. The New Testament builds upon the Old Testament. The prophecies of the Old Testament, fulfilled in Christ, become the histories of the New Testament. We have, then, a grand ascent through the ages from creation to the Cross to the crown in another great "Pentateuch" or fivefold outline.



The nexus or point of contact is the redemptive life, teachings, and atoning death of Jesus Christ.

## 4. The Importance of the Old Testament

The Scriptures used by Jesus and the apostles are what we now describe as the Old Testament. This fact alone should show the true importance of this portion of the Bible. The Old Testament can never be replaced by the New Testament. When Jesus said, "The scripture cannot be broken" (John 10: 35), and Paul asserted, "All scripture is given by inspiration of God" (2 Timothy 3: 16), they were certifying the undying value of the Old Testament.

The authority of the Old Testament is more firmly established in the Bible than is the New. The basis upon which both the teaching of our Lord and the testimony of the apostles rests is the acknowledgement of the revelation of God in the law, the prophets, and the Psalms. We destroy the New Testament if we repudiate the Old.

### **The Old Testament as the Foundation for the New**

A thoughtful Hindu was given the New Testament by a missionary friend. He read it carefully, and came back to the missionary saying, "Please give me the other half." Curious, the missionary asked him how he knew there was another half. He replied, "The first verse says that this is the book of the generation of Jesus Christ, the son of David, the son of Abraham. I need to know about David and Abraham."

The thoughtful reader of the New Testament quickly senses its dependence upon the Old. For one thing, the authors of the New Testament wrote with minds and hearts saturated with the truths and even the very words of the Old Testament. Much of what they wrote is therefore a closed book to those who are ignorant of the Scriptures so familiar to their thought and so precious to their hearts.

There are more than 250 direct quotations from the Old Testament to be found on the pages of the New. Even more important are the vast number of references and allusions which are not direct quotations, but which draw on the terminology and modes of thought and expression to be found in the Hebrew Scriptures. One scholar lists a total of 1,603 quotations, references, and allusions which link the New Testament with the Old.

The Book of Isaiah is the most frequently used Old Testament book, with a total of 308 New Testament allusions. Psalms runs a close second with 303 references. In the New Testament, Revelation makes most frequent allusions to the Old Testament with 574 references, more than one-third the total number in the entire New Testament. The Book of Acts contains 169, Luke 140, Matthew 135, Hebrews 115, and Romans 103. Only Philemon and the three Epistles of John contain no Old Testament allusions or references. Of Old Testament books, only Ruth, Ezra, Esther, Song of Solomon, Ecclesiastes, and Lamentations are not alluded to in the New Testament. However, all of these were originally joined to other books which are quoted.

All of the New Testament writers assumed that God's dealings with man in the history of redemption form a continuous whole, out of which came both the Old and New Testaments. A "New" Covenant implies an "Old" Covenant, to which it stands in relation as well as in contrast. Indeed, the idea of fulfillment of the Old Testament in the New means continuity with the past, as well as the introduction of something new and better. Neither the Old Testament nor the New is fully understandable without the other. Both form two halves of a perfect whole. The Old Testament without the New is like a head without a body- "In the Old Testament the New is concealed; in the New Testament the Old is revealed."

# I. The Creation Story

Before we discuss God's creation, it is vital to realize before there was anything in this physical material world or the spiritual world, there was God and God alone.

## A. Creation

### 1. Dateless Past

According to Christian doctrine, God alone is eternal. With the exception of God, the material universe, and everything else in all creation had a beginning. They were absolutely created, made "out of nothing," by the power of Almighty God.

Many of the pagan nations of the ancient world had their own creation stories. But in these stories, their gods evolved out of natural processes connected with the world itself. They believed the material universe was eternal, and it brought their gods into being. But Genesis declares that God existed before creation and is in full control of the physical universe. He called the physical world into existence out of nothing but by His own spoken Word. His power is absolute. He does not have to conform to nature and cannot be threatened by it. God is sovereign and does not have to share His power with other supernatural beings.

Since God created the universe out of nothing, it belongs to Him and will always serve His purpose. As He shaped creation without any interference from anyone, He will bring creation to its desired end. No power can frustrate God in His purpose to complete the process started in creation and revealed in Scripture. Our hope rests in the sovereign power of Him who created the world and then re-created us through the saving power of His Son, Jesus Christ- the new birth!

#### **Daniel 7:9-10**

**As I looked, "thrones were set in place, and the Ancient of Days took his seat. His clothing was as white as snow; the hair of his head was white like wool. His throne was flaming with fire, and its wheels were all ablaze. A river of fire was flowing, coming out from before him. Thousands upon thousands attended him; ten thousand times ten thousand stood before him. The court was seated, and the books were opened."**

#### **Isaiah 46:9-11**

**Remember the former things, those of long ago; I am God, and there is no other; I am God, and there is none like me. I make known the end from the beginning, from ancient times, what is still to come. I say: My purpose will stand, and I will do all that I please. From the east I summon a bird of prey; from a far-off land, a man to fulfill my purpose. What I have said, that will I bring about; what I have planned, that will I do.**

#### **Psalms 90:2; 93:2**

**Before the mountains were born or you brought forth the earth and the world, from everlasting to everlasting you are God. Your throne was established long ago; you are from all eternity.**

#### **1 Timothy 1:17**

**Now to the King eternal, immortal, invisible, the only God, be honor and glory forever and ever. Amen.**

## 2. God's Creative Word

God created the universe through the Word of His power. All things are sustained and have their being because of the spoken Word of Jesus. We will find throughout the Scriptures that God never did anything without saying it first. God is a faith God, His kingdom operates on faith principles. The source of God's power is found in the Word of His power. It is through that same Word that we will receive His power in our lives to frame our world. As Christians our only power is found in speaking God's Word.

**Jesus is the perfect imprint  
and very image of God's  
nature, upholding and  
maintaining and guiding and  
propelling the universe by His  
mighty word of power.  
Hebrews 1:3 (AMP)**



Jesus is the express will, and spoken Word of the Father. That is why Scripture says the universe was created from the Father **through** the Son; through God's spoken WORD (Jesus)- Colossians 1:15-16; Hebrews 1:2; 1 Corinthians 8:6; Romans 11:36.

### John 1:1-4

**In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God. He was with God in the beginning. Through him all things were made; without him nothing was made that has been made. In him was life, and that life was the light of men.**

God's Word is a living force, "*For the Word of God is living and active.*" Of course it is, because the Word of God is a person, the second person of the trinity. Man's words that are originated by himself are empty, "*Let no one deceive you with empty words*" (Ephesians 5:6), and "*For their mouth empty, boastful words...*" (2 Peter 2:18). If Jesus is full of spirit life, grace and truth, then so are His words. When we take those words, and put them in our mouths, they will release those very same substances in our spirit, and manifest His glory and provision in our lives.

### John 1:14, 16-17

**The Word became flesh and lived for a while among us. We have seen his glory, the glory of the one and only Son, who came from the Father, full of grace and truth. From the fullness of his grace we have all received one blessing after another. For the law was given through Moses; grace and truth came through Jesus Christ.**

### 1 Corinthians 8:6

**Yet for us there is but one God, the Father, from whom all things came and for whom we live; and there is but one Lord, Jesus Christ, through whom all things came and through whom we live.**

### Colossians 1:16-18

**For by him all things were created: things in heaven and on earth, visible and invisible, whether thrones or powers or rulers or authorities; all things were created by him and for him. He is before all things, and in him all things hold together.**

### 3. The First Creation

**Genesis 1:1- In the beginning God created the heavens and the earth.**

So what happened between Genesis 1:1 and 1:2?

**Genesis 1:2**

**Now the earth was formless and empty, darkness was over the surface of the deep, and the Spirit of God was hovering over the waters.**

At one point, before Genesis 1:1 there was only God the Father, the Word and the Holy Spirit; no other created beings like angels or anything else ever existed.

**God's Word is a creative force!**

God's Word that is conceived in our heart, then formed by the tongue, and spoken out of our own mouth, becomes a spiritual force releasing the ability of God within us. The spoken Word of God is creative power. The Kingdom of God responds to faith filled words. God never did anything that He didn't say first. He said it, then He did it. The power to do it was in the spoken Word. One translation of the Bible (The concordant literal NT) puts Luke 1:37 this way, "It will not be impossible with God to fulfill his every declaration."

**Hebrews 11:3**

**By faith we understand that the universe was formed at God's command, so that what is seen was not made out of what was visible.**

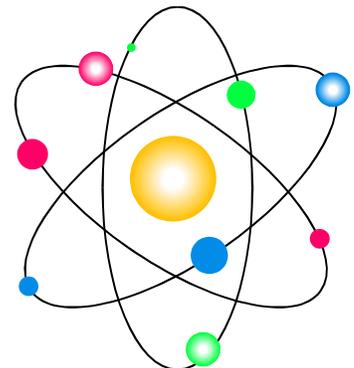
Words are unseen to the five senses but they are real. We cannot see electricity, but it has power to bless or destroy. We cannot see atoms but they are the building blocks of the universe. As human beings we get so hung up on seeing it first before we believe it. But there are a lot of things we cannot see, but we see the affect they have on us, and the world we live in. Words are unseen forces that work for faith like electrons are unseen forces that work for electricity. They are unseen, but very real, they are governed by laws, and they show no favoritism.

We see in the above passage of Scripture that the whole universe was created at, "God's command." In other words, when God spoke His faith filled words into the empty darkness, the act of creation was released. As I just shared previously, God never does anything without saying it first. This principle is absolutely essential in the operation of the Law of Faith.

**Let's look at Hebrews 11:3 in the KJV:**

**"Through Faith we understand that the worlds were framed by the word of God, so that things which are seen were not made of things which do appear."**

**Our own personal worlds that we live in is also framed and created by the words we speak!**



When God looked at the dark empty expanse of the universe, He did not say what He saw, but what He wanted.

**Psalm 33:6, 9**

**By the word of the Lord, were the heavens made, their starry host by the breath of his mouth. For he spoke, and it came to be; he commanded, and it stood firm.**

What God did during the dateless past before Genesis 1:1 is not revealed in Scripture!

**Deuteronomy 29:29**

**The secret things belong to the LORD our God, but the things revealed belong to us and to our children forever, that we may follow all the words of this law.**

Genesis chapter one verse one, depicts the creation of angels and the inhabitants of this planet in that age before Adam and Eve. This original creation is referred to as the Pre-Adamite world for reference; or simply the world before Adam and Eve- we will cover this in more detail later on.

We cannot say exactly how old the earth is because we do not know when the beginning was. God's creation of the heavens and the earth in the beginning as stated in Genesis 1:1 could have been millions and billions of years ago. If geologists can prove the age of the earth to be what they claim, we have no scriptural authority to disagree. They cannot contradict the Bible, for it does not reveal any time element in connection with the earth's original creation.

This much is certain, according to Scripture, the earth is more than 6,000 years old, and there were inhabitants on the earth before the days of Adam.

**Mankind on the Earth – Adam was created around 6,000 years ago!**

The genealogies of Luke 3:23-38 describes the godly line from Adam to Jesus.

A generation is calculated to be around 40 years- Numbers 32:13

Matthew 1:17 describes 42 generations from Abraham to Jesus-	1,680 years
Genesis chapter 5 describes the generations from Adam to Noah-	2,242 years (Septuagint)
From Jesus until today-	<u>2,000</u> years
	5,922

This explains why geologists have found fossil records dating so old by carbon dating. These creatures belonged to the Pre-Adamite age millions of years ago. Besides dinosaurs, these fossils depict ape-like Neanderthals with primitive tools they had used as hunters and gatherers.

The Bible does not have a lot to say about what happened between Genesis 1:1 and 1:2, so we cannot be dogmatic about this. However, we do get a glimpse here and there.

**Job 38:4-7**

**“Where were you when I laid the earth's foundation? Tell me, if you understand. Who marked off its dimensions? Surely you know! Who stretched a measuring line across it? On what were its footings set, or who laid its cornerstone- while the morning stars sang together and all the angels shouted for joy?”**

#### 4. The Pre-Adamite Creation

When God created the angelic hosts along with earth and the universe, earth at that time was inhabited by a Pre-Adamite creation. The fossil records of today are the only descriptions we have of those creatures.

##### **Isaiah 45:18**

**For this is what the LORD says- he who created the heavens, he is God; he who fashioned and made the earth, he founded it; he did not create it to be empty, but formed it to be inhabited- he says: “I am the LORD, and there is no other.”**

There was an Arch-Angel at that time named Lucifer- an Arch-Angel is a high ranking angel. Isaiah 14:12 (KJV), *“How art thou fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning!”* He had authority given to him upon this earth, a throne over the nations of that time. He had dominion given to him, just as God had given dominion to Adam and Eve in Genesis 1:28. At that time, the Pre-Adamite earth was referred to as “Eden, the garden of God.”

The length of this rule under God’s authority is unknown, but there were other thrones, dominions, principalities, and powers also in place over other parts of the universe.

##### **Colossians 1:16-18**

**For by him(Jesus) all things were created: things in heaven and on earth, visible and invisible, whether thrones or powers or rulers or authorities; all things were created by him and for him. He is before all things, and in him all things hold together.**

##### **Ephesians 6:12-13**

**For our struggle is not against flesh and blood, but against the rulers, against the authorities, against the powers of this dark world and against the spiritual forces of evil in the heavenly realms.**

Apparently, Lucifer the original ruler of the planet earth, conceives an idea that he can obtain the cooperation of other angelic beings, dethrone God, and become the exalted supreme ruler of the universe himself- a serious pride issue here!

**1 Timothy 3:6-7- He must not be a recent convert, or he may become conceited and fall under the same judgment as the devil.**

Lucifer carries out his plans, falls through pride, and forms a rebellion by slander and accusations against the Almighty, causing his own earth-kingdom subjects and one-third of God’s angels to rebel against Him. The earth enters its first sinful career. The length of the uprising is unknown.

##### **Ezekiel 28:12**

**You were the model of perfection, full of wisdom and perfect in beauty. You were in **Eden**, the garden of God.**

##### **Isaiah 14:12-15**

**How you have fallen from heaven, O morning star, son of the dawn! You have been cast down to the earth, you who once laid low the nations! You said in your heart, “I will ascend to heaven; I will raise my throne above the stars of God; I will sit enthroned on the mount of assembly, on the utmost heights of the sacred mountain. I will ascend above the tops of the clouds; I will make myself like the Most High.” But you are brought down to the grave, to the depths of the pit.**

**The Pentateuch**

Notice that he said, “I will raise my throne above the stars of God...” his throne being on this planet, and the “stars of God” being the other angels. Here we have an account of the original Star Wars! Lucifer’s rebellion along with 1/3 of the other angelic host, raised arms against God’s authority; a feeble attempt to de-throne God in a coup.

#### **Revelation 12:4**

**His (Satan) tail swept a third of the stars out of the sky and flung them to the earth.**

Lucifer openly breaks relations with God, leading his rebels from the appointed place of mobilization on earth into heaven in his attempt to dethrone God. He is met by Michael and the other faithful angels and is defeated. So of course this rebellion ended in utter defeat and the result was judgment on this earth and the Pre-Adamite creation of that time.

Lucifer was also defeated and hurled back down to the earth as fast as lightning flashes to the ground.

#### **Luke 10:18-20**

**Jesus replied, “I saw Satan fall like lightning from heaven. I have given you authority to trample on snakes and scorpions and to overcome all the power of the enemy; nothing will harm you. However, do not rejoice that the spirits submit to you, but rejoice that your names are written in heaven.”**

God destroys Lucifer’s kingdom on earth completely, by destroying every created thing, inhabitants, and all vegetation. He then turns the earth upside down so-to-speak, and by means of a great flood makes it empty and waste. The length of this Pre-Adamite flood on the earth is unknown, but was devastating!

#### **Jeremiah 4:23-26**

**I looked at the earth, and it was formless and empty; and at the heavens, and their light was gone. I looked at the mountains, and they were quaking; all the hills were swaying. I looked, and there were no people; every bird in the sky had flown away. I looked, and the fruitful land was a desert; all its towns lay in ruins before the LORD, before his fierce anger.**

#### **2 Peter 3:5-7**

**But they deliberately forget that long ago by God’s word the heavens existed and the earth was formed out of water and by water. By these waters also the world of that time was deluged and destroyed. By the same word the present heavens and earth are reserved for fire, being kept for the day of judgment and destruction of ungodly men.**

#### **Genesis 1:1-2**

**Now the earth was formless and empty, darkness was over the surface of the deep, and the Spirit of God was hovering over the waters. Re-Creation of the Heavens and the Earth**

The only time the earth has ever been without form and void was before the 6 days of Genesis 1:3-2:25 when it was made chaos through the fall of Lucifer and the Pre-Adamites. When God brought the first (as far as we know) great universal flood upon the earth to destroy all life. The statement without form and void means desolate and empty.

Therefore, we can take Jeremiah 4:23-26; 2 Peter 3:5-7 and Genesis 1:2 in the context as referencing a total annihilation of the earth and its inhabitants as fits the first flood. Noah’s flood does not fit this absolute scale of destruction. The purpose of God in showing Jeremiah the total destruction of life on the earth in 4:23-26, was to reveal how the land of Judah would be destroyed, and to make a comparison between the two times.

The earth was cursed and flooded in Genesis 1:2 because of sin; occurring before the 6 days of re-creation in Genesis 1:3 - 2:25. Lucifer was already a fallen creature when he came into Adam's Garden of Eden, having already ruled the earth, rebelled and caused the first flood. The word "was" in Genesis 1:2 would be better translated in the Hebrew 'hayah' as "became." So this verse should read, "Now the earth became formless and empty, darkness was over the surface of the deep..." because of rebellion and the resulting judgment. Obscuring of the sun and consequent darkness are always the result of judgment- Joel 2:31.

The word "Let" as it pertained to Genesis chapter 1 is used thirteen times; 1,464 times elsewhere, and in no case is an original creative act implied. The sense is made appear or visible, expressing permission and purpose in connection with already existing things. The light, expanse, waters, earth, darkness and all other things mentioned here were already in existence, but had been thrown into chaos and the laws which previously governed them had been made void. The very purpose of their existence had been annulled because of sin. Now, in the restoration to perfection and original usefulness, God merely commands and the sun again gives light on this planet, as it had done all through Lucifer's kingdom.

In Genesis 1:28, some translations like the King James and American Standard Version use the word "Replenish" the earth. The same thing is said of Noah after that flood in Genesis 9:1. God did not say "plenish" the earth, but to fill it up again; you can't replenish something that hasn't already been plenished with something that once existed. We cannot be dogmatic about this, because there is not enough Scripture, but the Scripture apparently gives us a glimpse into the creation before ours. Many Biblical scholars believe that millions of years may have elapsed between Genesis 1:1 and Genesis 1:2.

## 5. Our Present Creation

### Day 1- Day and Night

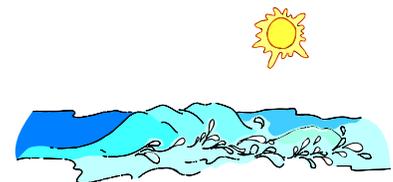
**And God said, "Let there be light," and there was light. God saw that the light was good, and he separated the light from the darkness. God called the light "day," and the darkness he called "night." And there was evening, and there was morning- the first day. Genesis 1:3-5**



Earth's second perfect state and second habitation, began with the restoration of day and night. Notice what is being said in Genesis, "God Said," He created the heavens and the earth with faith filled words. Did you ever notice that when God said "Let there be light" it did not result in something else! Suppose the Bible said, "And God said, 'Let there be light,' and dry land was formed." If we had read that, we would be confused as to what was going on. There is a principle here that God wants us to get a hold of. What God said produced exactly what He said, something else did not happen. The only way that something else could result is if we change our confession to something else. When God said, "Let there be light," He never did say after that, "Light stop." Scientists say that our universe is still expanding at the speed of light, and it will continue to expand for all eternity. Jesus said it this way in Mark 13:31, "Heaven and earth will pass away, but my words will never pass away." Those words will never go unfulfilled.

### Day 2- The Sky

**And God said, "Let there be an expanse between the waters to separate water from water." So God made the expanse and separated the water under the expanse from the water above it. And it was so. God called the expanse "sky." And there was evening, and there was morning- the second day. Genesis 1:6-8**



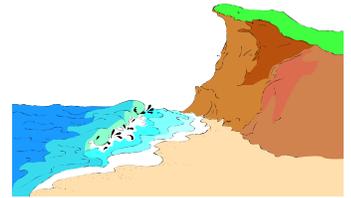
It is important to note that originally, God had created a canopy that was saturated with water, high above the earth- separated by an expanse of sky or air. This created a greenhouse effect that kept out harmful rays from the sun and allowed for conditions that would be lush and green on the whole surface of the earth. Before Noah's flood, the earth never experienced rain, but a mist (KJV) and streams came up from the earth to water the whole surface of the ground.

### Genesis 2:4-6

This is the account of the heavens and the earth when they were created. When the LORD God made the earth and the heavens and no shrub of the field had yet appeared on the earth and no plant of the field had yet sprung up, for the LORD God **had not sent rain on the earth** and there was no man to work the ground, but **streams came up from the earth and watered the whole surface of the ground.**

### Day 3- The Land, Seas & Vegetation

And God said, "Let the water under the sky be gathered to one place, and let dry ground appear." And it was so. God called the dry ground "land," and the gathered waters he called "seas." And God saw that it was good. Then God said, "Let the land produce vegetation: seed-bearing plants and trees on the land that bear fruit with seed in it, according to their various kinds." And it was so. The land produced vegetation: plants bearing seed according to their kinds and trees bearing fruit with seed in it according to their kinds. And God saw that it was good. And there was evening, and there was morning- the third day. Genesis 1:9-13



In order for the water to recede so that dry land would be uncovered and exposed, much of it returned to the bowels of the earth from which it originally came when it had assisted in causing the first flood in Lucifer's time. There, underneath the earth's surface this massive reservoir laid in wait for another global flood to occur in Noah's time.

### Genesis 7:11

In the six hundredth year of Noah's life, on the seventeenth day of the second month- on that day all the springs of the great deep burst forth...

### The Law Of Genesis

The law of Genesis was established by God as a fixed law from the very beginning of creation. This law operates in the spiritual realm as well as the natural. The law of Genesis is this, "**Everything produces after its own kind, and the seed is in itself.**" It works this way all the time, it is an absolute law.

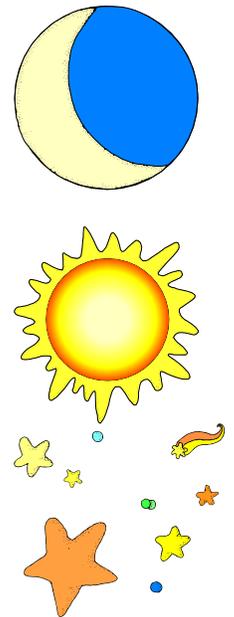
If we take vegetables for example, the seed to produce more vegetables is found in the vegetable itself. In the act of creation, God made the vegetable first with seed in it in order to perpetuate it from then on. Therefore the age old question of, "Which came first, the chicken or the egg?" This is answered by the Bible, the chicken, carrot, flower, tree, animal, fish, and the man came first. Within God's creation was the seed to re-produce itself from then on, and forever. Jesus explained in the parable of the sower that God's Word is spiritual seed, "*The seed is the Word of God*" (Luke 8:11). The ground that Jesus refers to is the human spirit, "*But the seed on good soil stands for those with a noble and good heart, who hear the word, retain it, and by persevering produce a crop*" (Luke 8:15). From this spiritual principle we can see that all words are seeds of one kind or another. The words we speak are seeds being sown in the hearts of the hearers.

Remember, everything produces after its own kind and the seed is in itself. The seed of strife is in strife itself. If we get into strife with someone by speaking strife filled words, it will create more strife- *“Starting a quarrel is like breaching a dam; so drop the matter before a dispute breaks out.”* If we give love, we will reap love. The seed is in itself to produce more. Remember how we talked about words being containers. Since words are spoken out of the abundance of a man’s heart, whatever is in his heart will fill his words when they are spoken. Those words will produce more of what we spoke in our lives, and in the lives of others- either good or bad. If someone speaks a curse over us, as a Christian we can counteract those words and destroy them with God’s Word. Hebrews 4:12 says that God’s word is, *“sharper than any double-edged sword.”*

The way in which God created and ordered our natural world is the way in which the spiritual realm was already operating. The physical realm is established upon natural laws that govern the operation of this physical universe. There are rules and principles of science that man is discovering every day in order to harness our natural resources to produce good things for mankind. When man discovered the law of electricity, it did not mean that the principles of electricity all of a sudden came into being. They were operating since the beginning of creation. In other words, the light bulb, computers, electric appliances could have been invented thousands of years ago. There are still unlimited uses for it yet to be discovered. However, discovery does not create the law, but rather harnesses it for a particular use. The law of faith has been in existence for all eternity past. Through God’s Word we will discover its operation and use in order to harness and produce our inheritance in Christ on the earth and for our lives as well. For our destiny is to be blessed in order to be a blessing.

#### **Day 4- The Sun, Moon & Stars**

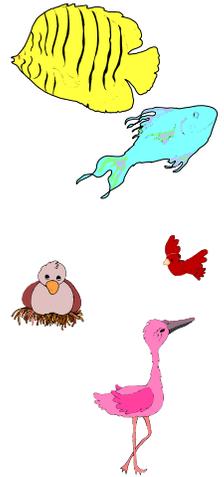
**And God said, “Let there be lights in the expanse of the sky to separate the day from the night, and let them serve as signs to mark seasons and days and years, and let them be lights in the expanse of the sky to give light on the earth.” And it was so. God made two great lights- the greater light to govern the day and the lesser light to govern the night. He also made the stars. God set them in the expanse of the sky to give light on the earth, to govern the day and the night, and to separate light from darkness. And God saw that it was good. And there was evening, and there was morning- the fourth day. Genesis 1:14-19**



There are trillions of solar systems beyond ours. Distances out there are measured by light-years. How far light travels in a year, at the rate of 186,324 miles a second or about 5,800,000,000,000 miles a year is recognized as one light-year. It takes light 400 light-years to reach us on earth from the North star; 700,000 light-years for it to reach us from the Great nebula, the galaxy nearest our own; and 500,000,000 light-years for light to reach us from the faintest galaxy seen by our telescopes.

## Day 5- Fish and Birds

And God said, “Let the water teem with living creatures, and let birds fly above the earth across the expanse of the sky.” So God created the great creatures of the sea and every living and moving thing with which the water teems, according to their kinds, and every winged bird according to its kind. And God saw that it was good. God blessed them and said, “Be fruitful and increase in number and fill the water in the seas, and let the birds increase on the earth.” And there was evening, and there was morning- the fifth day. Genesis 1:20-23

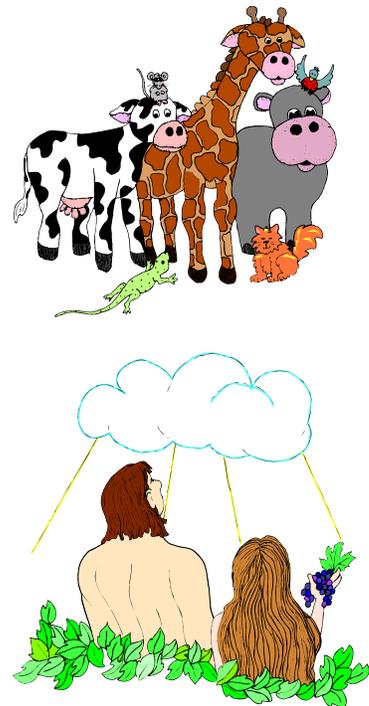


So the age old question is finally answered, which came first, “The Chicken or the Egg.” That’s right, the “Chicken” and the chicken would then produce the egg.

## Day 6- Animals and Man

### Genesis 1:24-26

And God said, “Let the land produce living creatures according to their kinds: livestock, creatures that move along the ground, and wild animals, each according to its kind.” And it was so. God made the wild animals according to their kinds, the livestock according to their kinds, and all the creatures that move along the ground according to their kinds. And God saw that it was good. Then God said, “Let us make man in our image, in our likeness, and let them rule over the fish of the sea and the birds of the air, over the livestock, over all the earth, and over all the creatures that move along the ground.”



## 6. Creation Not Evolution

The theory of evolution is just that, a theory, yet many educators act as though it is fact. The theory of evolution is that all forms of life derived by gradual modification from earlier and simpler forms or from one rudimentary form. It teaches a process in which something complex is developed by itself from a simple beginning. It accepts the existence of the cause or causes of the first substance and the force or forces working successive transformations from a lower to a higher form of matter and life.

The theory of cosmic evolution claims that from lower units of matter (atoms and molecules) the vast material suns, moons, stars, planets, and universes were formed by themselves. Organic evolution teaches that the vegetable and animal kingdoms evolved from lower forms of life to what they are today. Evolutionists do not deny the first cause. Their theory begins with matter or substance already in existence. Yet they have no explanation of how it got there. Just like the big bang theory, they have no explanation as to what started it- in other words what got the ball rolling. In this they are silent and reduced to speculation.

**True science rejects the notion:**

- The theory that the hair is but elongated scales of pre-historic animals.
- The legs of all animals developed from warts on aboriginal amphibians.
- Eyes are but accidental development of freckles on blind amphibians that responded to the sun.
- Ears came about by the air waves calling to spots on early reptiles.
- Man came from monkeys.
- The vast universe came from a few molecules.
- Nothing, working on nothing by nothing, through nothing, for nothing, begat everything.

It is the law of nature that nothing reproduces anything greater than itself. The intelligent and innumerable self-producing species of creatures, each with its own eternal and consistent traits, distinct flavors and infinite combinations of chemicals, could never be the product of unintelligent matter. Each one of the millions of creatures that reproduce their own kind by fixed and eternal laws must be the work of an all-powerful and all-wise Creator.

The Bible declares that God is the creator of everything, originally made in a perfect state all at once. Everything that was created by God was given the power to reproduce its own kind. No one thing could break this law and produce any other kind. Now, after 6,000 years the law of reproduction is still unbroken. The sponge is still a sponge and has not become an oyster, octopus, a turtle, frog, fish, or a crab. None of these have ever reproduced anything but their own kind.

No lowly earth-worm has ever turned into a spider. Crossing different species has never produced a different kind that is fertile and could produce a new kind. The crossing of a donkey and a mare will produce a mule which cannot reproduce itself. No monkey has ever produced a man and the missing – link is still missing and always will be.

The theory of evolution teaches transmutation, a change in nature, substance, form, and alteration of essence by a slow and gradual process of mutation from one species to another, and from lower to higher. This has never been done, nor can it be done. In nature we find endless variations with each species or kind, but no change from one species to another. Without a change in species there can be no evolution. God has made life so that it interbreeds in closely related variations; and when interbreeding is attempted between different kinds of species it is found that there is an impassible gulf which cannot be crossed. Try crossing a dog with a cat, it doesn't work, God made it that way in Genesis 1:25.

## B. The Origin of Man

First of all, mankind was created in the image of God. Please note that the words, “us” and “our” is used in Genesis 1:26. This supports the doctrine of the triune Godhead. God is one expressed in three distinct persons, God the Father, God the Son and God the Holy Spirit- Matthew 28:19.

### **Genesis 1:26**

**Then God said, “Let us make man in our image, in our likeness...”**

So what does it mean for us to be made in the image of God?

### 1. Created as Eternal Spirit Beings

Through the act of pro-creation our bodies are formed in the womb, but it is God who creates the human spirit. At conception, God places the human spirit within that tiny body. The real you and the conceived life at conception are united by God Almighty!

### **Psalms 139:13-14**

**For you created my inmost being; you knit me together in my mother’s womb. I praise you because I am fearfully and wonderfully made; your works are wonderful, I know that full well.**

### **Zechariah 12:1**

**“The Lord who stretches out the heavens, who lays the foundation of the earth, and who forms the spirit of man within him...”**

### **Isaiah 57:16**

**“I will not accuse forever, nor will I always be angry, for then the spirit of man would faint before me- the breath of man that I have created.”**

It’s the spirit of a man that brings animation or life to the physical body.

### **James 2:26**

**As the body without the spirit is dead, so faith without deeds is dead.**

### **God created us to live forever!**

We are created by God as eternal spirit beings. We have a beginning with no ending. We will never cease to exist, God made us to live forever, and each one of us in this life chooses our own eternal destiny to live with God or be eternally separated from Him. God created us as free moral agents with the right to exercise a free will.

### **Deuteronomy 30:19-20**

**This day I call heaven and earth as witnesses against you that I have set before you life and death, blessings and curses. Now choose life, so that you and your children may live.**

### **Matthew 25:46**

**“Then they will go away to eternal punishment, but the righteous to eternal life.”**

The value of a thing is measured by how long it lasts. We are eternal being, so that makes each one of us priceless. Heaven and earth will pass away, but God’s Word will never pass away and neither will you- Matthew 24:35. God made us as eternal spirit beings.

## God created us for His glory

God wants to commune and have a precious and priceless relationship with us. We are the objects of His affection, recipients of His love and goodness. Our obvious response is to reciprocate and offer adoration and worship unto Him. *For in Him we live and move and have our being- Acts 17:28.*

### Isaiah 43:7

**“Everyone who is called by my name, whom I created for my glory, whom I formed and made.”**

**John 4:24- God is spirit, and his worshipers must worship in spirit and in truth.”**

### You are no accident

God knew you before the creation of the world, your existence is not an accident!

### Ephesians 1:4-6

**For he chose us in him before the creation of the world to be holy and blameless in his sight. In love he predestined us to be adopted as his sons through Jesus Christ, in accordance with his pleasure and will- to the praise of his glorious grace, which he has freely given us in the One he loves.**

### Jeremiah 1:5

**Before I formed you in the womb I knew you, before you were born I set you apart.**

God determined at what time you would be born on the earth.

### Acts 17:24-27

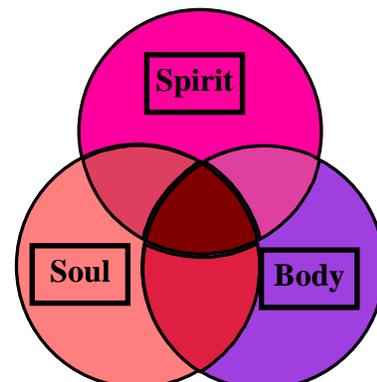
**The God who made the world and everything in it is the Lord of heaven and earth and does not live in temples built by hands. And he is not served by human hands, as if he needed anything, because he himself gives all men life and breath and everything else. From one man he made every nation of men, that they should inhabit the whole earth; and he determined the times set for them and the exact places where they should live. God did this so that men would seek him and perhaps reach out for him and find him, though he is not far from each one of us.**

## 2. Man Consists of Three Parts

Man was created a tri-cotomy just as the glorious Godhead is referred to as the Divine Trinity. We are not just a physical body just as the Godhead is not the Father God only. I am a spirit, I have a soul, and I live in a body. The Godhead is comprised of God the Father, God the Son, And God the Holy Spirit. The three parts to our identity are: spirit, soul & body.

**May God himself, the God of peace,  
sanctify you through and through.  
May your whole *spirit, soul* and *body*  
be kept blameless at the coming of  
our Lord Jesus Christ.**

**1Thessalonians 5:23**



Some are led to believe that man is only a di-cotomy. Being two parts: soul and body. They believe that the eternal aspect of man is his soul, meaning his will, intellect, and emotions. Scripture however, points out that there is as much difference between the spirit and soul of man as there is between his soul and body.

**Hebrews 4:12**

**For the word of God is living and active. Sharper than any double-edged sword, it penetrates even to dividing soul and spirit, joints and marrow; it judges the thoughts and attitudes of the heart.**

According to the above Scripture, the soul and spirit of man can be divided or distinguished as separate entities. Only through God's Word can we make that distinction. Something needs to be pointed out here, man is the only creature in this class on earth. The animal kingdom is not comprised of spirit beings. They are physical beings that are driven by instinct. Animals do have souls, because they have limited reasoning faculties, and these faculties are of the soul. Animals also display affection, and this too is part of the soul. However animals are not spirits, they are merely soul and body. When animals die, that is the end unless you can find Scripture that says otherwise.

So where is that spirit located you may ask, the Bible has the answer.

**The spirit of man is the candle of the Lord, searching all the inward parts of the belly.  
Proverbs 20:27 KJV**

**But whoever drinks of the water that I will give him, will never thirst; but the water that I will give him will be in him a well of water springing up into everlasting life. John 4:14 KJV**

**If any man thirst, let him come unto me, and drink. He that believes on me as the Scriptures have said, out of his belly shall flow rivers of living water. John 7:38 KJV**



The heart in Biblical context refers to the very center of man's being- his spirit.

It is the spirit of man that is born again- **Jn:3:3; 2Cor.5:17**

The new birth is a spiritual circumcision- **Rom.2:29; Col.2:11; Tit.3:4; Acts 7:51**

It is the spirit of man that has the life, love and nature of God in it- **Rom.5:5; 1Jn.5:12**

It is with your spirit that you believe- **Acts 16:14; 2Cor.3:3; Rom.10:10-11**

It is with your spirit that you worship God and do his will- **Eph.5:19; 6:6**

It is in your spirit that the Holy Spirit dwells, your body is the temple of your spirit- **1Cor.3:16;6:19**

Let's define the three parts of man in more detail:

<b>Man is a Spirit</b> ( <i>Conscience</i> )	- Conscience is the voice of your human spirit
<b>He has a Soul</b> ( <i>Emotions, Will, Intellect</i> )	- Reason is the voice of your soul
<b>He lives in a Body</b> ( <i>5 Senses</i> )	- Feelings is the voice of your physical body

With your spirit you contact God, with your soul you contact the intellectual realm, and with your body you contact the physical or natural world. Conscience is the voice of your spirit, it is the inner moral compass that tells what is right and wrong- Hebrews 10:22;1 Samuel 24:5;25:31; Acts 24:16; 1 Corinthians 8:7; 10:25-27. If you are born again, then your conscience is a safe guide. The conscience of an unbeliever is seared, and corrupted, permitting him to do whatever he wants- 1 Timothy 4:2; Titus 1:15.

### 3. Adam, the First Human Being

#### **Genesis 2:7**

**The LORD God formed the man from the dust of the ground and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life, and the man became a living being.**

Adam's name means in the Hebrew- Ruddy, to flush or turn rosy- red. Adam's body was formed from the dust of the earth, or red clay- so were animals and birds. Scientists say that the 16 compound ingredients found in clay make up 16 primary elements of the human body. The earth supports and transfers vitamins and minerals into plant and animal life which we consume in order to nourish our physical bodies that originated from the ground.

#### **Genesis 2:19**

**Now the LORD God had formed out of the ground all the beasts of the field and all the birds of the air.**

**Job 12:10- In his hand is the life of every creature and the breath of all mankind.**

Man alone of all created beings received the breath of God. God's spirit-life was breathed into the lump of clay called the human body and it became animated as Adam (spirit/soul) took residence in his new earth suit. As a result, he could now contact the natural world through this new physical body or house.

Our identity as human beings are as those created in God's image and likeness. However, God did not stop there, He also gave us a divine purpose, basically a job to do!

### Unit 1 Review:

What is meant by the "Dateless Past" as it relates to God?

---

---

---

By what means or method did God create the universe?

---

---

---

What is meant by “The First Creation” and who inhabited it?

---

---

---

---

What caused the earth to become formless and void in Genesis chapter 1 verse 2?

---

---

---

Why is the theory of evolution so absurd?

---

---

---

What are some reasons for God creating us?

---

---

---

---

What is meant by man being made a “tri-cotomy?”

---

---

---

---

## 4. God Gave Man Dominion

By virtue of creation, the earth and all that God has made belongs to God because He is the author of creation. God is the owner, He holds the title deed, it all belongs to Him, in this aspect He is sovereign.

### **Psalms 24:1-2**

**The earth is the LORD's, and everything in it, the world, and all who live in it; for he founded it upon the seas and established it upon the waters.**

### **Haggai 2:8**

**"The silver is mine and the gold is mine," declares the LORD Almighty.**

Yet as soon as He finished restoring the earth to an habitable state, He turned it over to Adam on a lease, to be a steward and caretaker of it. God gave Adam the keys to the car so to speak, to get in the driver's seat and take charge for a specified period of time- "Adam's Lease".

### **Genesis 1:26-28**

**"...and let them rule over the fish of the sea and the birds of the air, over the livestock, over all the earth, and over all the creatures that move along the ground." So God created man in his own image, in the image of God he created him; male and female he created them. God blessed them and said to them, "Be fruitful and increase in number; fill the earth and subdue it. Rule over the fish of the sea and the birds of the air and over every living creature that moves on the ground."**

God created mankind to rule over this creation that God had just restored from the judgment that had made the original creation formless and void.

### **Psalms 8:3-9**

**When I consider your heavens, the work of your fingers, the moon and the stars, which you have set in place, what is man that you are mindful of him, the son of man that you care for him? You made him a little lower than the heavenly beings and crowned him with glory and honor. You made him ruler over the works of your hands; you put everything under his feet: all flocks and herds, and the beasts of the field, the birds of the air, and the fish of the sea, all that swim the paths of the seas. O LORD, our Lord, how majestic is your name in all the earth!**

### **Psalm 8:3-9 AMP**

**When I view and consider your heavens, the work of your fingers, the moon and the stars which you have ordained and established. What is man, that you are mindful of him, the son of [earthborn] man, that you care for him? Yet you have made him but a little lower than God [or heavenly beings], and you have crowned him with glory and honor. You made him to have dominion over the works of your hand; you have put all things under his feet.**

Notice that God made man a little lower than Himself. Why some translators substitute "elohiym" which is the name for GOD for angels is beyond me (trying to be humble I suppose), yet other translations do use "God." God made us a little lower than Himself not a little lower than the angels.

'elohiym (el-o-heem'); plural of OT:433; gods in the ordinary sense; but specifically used (in the plural thus, especially with the article) of the supreme God; occasionally applied by way of deference to magistrates; and sometimes as a superlative: KJV - angels, X exceeding, God (gods)- dess, -ly), X (very) great, judges, X mighty.

God made Adam and Eve the gods of this world!

**Psalms 82:6**

**“I said, You are ‘gods’; you are all sons of the Most High.”**

Jesus himself attested to this fact!

**John 10:34-35**

**Jesus answered them, “Is it not written in your Law, ‘I have said you are gods’? If he called them ‘gods,’ to whom the word of God came-and the Scripture cannot be broken.”**

“Ruler”, “Dominion”, “In Charge” “gods” is what God had done for man in the beginning! Now before you get too much of a big head, remember the fall of man in the garden. However, it is imperative that we realize the significance of the position of authority that God had originally elevated man to in the beginning. This illustration of our dominion makes sense when we consider our redemption in Jesus.

When God gave dominion to Adam in the Garden, He was instructed by God to keep and watch over it. God made Adam the god of this new world He had made. Adam had authority to name all the animals God had created. The important thing to consider about Adam’s authority, is that first of all it was given to him from God. Secondly, this authority was expressed or exercised through words. Man is the only living creature on this earth who is a spirit being and dominates through the use of words. If Adam had a problem in the garden, he was expected to release faith filled words to change things just like God did through the act of creation. Physically he would not be able to subdue the whole earth. He had to do it by faith, and through the power of words.



**Genesis 1:26-28**

**Then God said, “Let us make man in our image, in our likeness, and let them rule over the fish of the sea and the birds of the air, over the livestock, over all the earth, and over all the creatures that move along the ground.” So God created man in his own image, in the image of God he created him; male and female he created them. God blessed them and said to them, “Be fruitful and increase in number; fill the earth and subdue it. Rule over the fish of the sea and the birds of the air and over every living creature that moves on the ground.”**

It’s the Father’s will for us to speak His words after Him, and thus manifest His kingdom in the earth. When Jesus taught His disciples how to pray in Matthew 6:9-13 He said, “ *Our Father in heaven, hallowed be your name, your kingdom come, your will be done on earth as it is in heaven.* ” I believe this is accomplished through speaking and acting on God’s Word. We know that God’s Word is His will, and when we speak it in faith, His Kingdom manifests on the earth in the form of salvation, healing, deliverance, love and so on. Words are powerful when released out of our mouth, because they carry spiritual forces:

**John 6:63-** Jesus said that His words were full of a substance called, “Spirit Life”.

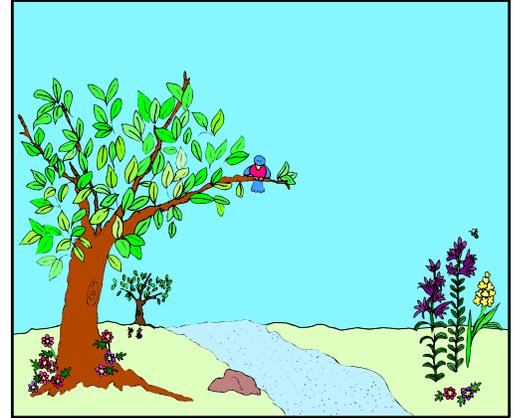
**Acts 20:32-** Paul says that God’s Word is full of a substance called, “Grace”.

**Romans 10:10-** Paul also says that God’s Word is full of a substance called, “Faith”.

## C. The Garden of Eden

### Genesis 2:8-14

Now the LORD God had planted a garden in the east, in Eden; and there he put the man he had formed. And the LORD God made all kinds of trees grow out of the ground- trees that were pleasing to the eye and good for food. In the middle of the garden were the tree of life and the tree of the knowledge of good and evil.



A river watering the garden flowed from Eden; from there it was separated into four headwaters. The name of the first is the Pishon; it winds through the entire land of Havilah, where there is gold. (The gold of that land is good; aromatic resin and onyx are also there.) The name of the second river is the Gihon; it winds through the entire land of Cush. The name of the third river is the Tigris; it runs along the east side of Asshur. And the fourth river is the Euphrates.

The garden was located in the east of Eden, which was evidently a large district. Two of the rivers had well known names- Euphrates and Tigris. The other two are not so easily identified. Gihon compassed Ethiopia and may refer to the Nile. Pison compassed Arabia. There is no known spot where these physical features point us to an exact location according to the description here. The garden has been destroyed and the surface of the earth changed.

The Garden of Eden was not a place of idleness. Adam was not only a zoologist, he was also a horticulturist. The beauty and productivity of Eden were not the result of God's creative work only; Adam kept and tended the garden, giving it touches of human handiwork. Creative occupation is positively essential for fulfillment. Work became "toil" only when sin entered the scene.

### Genesis 2:15

**The LORD God took the man and put him in the Garden of Eden to work it and take care of it.**

If God had a purpose in creating Man, He must have desired to communicate with His creation to reveal something of His will and purpose.

### Isaiah 1:18

**"Come now, let us reason together," says the LORD. "Though your sins are like scarlet, they shall be as white as snow; though they are red as crimson, they shall be like wool."**

Man is the only one of earth's creatures able to reason abstractly, to create, to innovate, to choose as a free agent, to communicate with and to worship God. The animals' activities, on the other hand, are instinctive, not free. Does man's personal and rational faculties constitute God's image? Or does man's capacity to have dominion and to rule over earth's creatures constitute the Divine image? Do we still see this image portrayed in Man's conquest of space, his control of atomic energy, his harnessing of electricity and other of nature's forces, and his employment of animals to do his work? There seems to be a hint of this in Genesis 1:28-31 and Psalms 8:4-9.

## 1. Then came Woman

Just think, Adam named all the animals, but none of them was suitable to be a helper or companion for Adam.

### **Genesis 2:19-20**

**Now the LORD God had formed out of the ground all the beasts of the field and all the birds of the air. He brought them to the man to see what he would name them; and whatever the man called each living creature, that was its name. So the man gave names to all the livestock, the birds of the air and all the beasts of the field. **But for Adam no suitable helper was found.****

A dog may be man's best friend, but it is nothing compared to the woman God had created for him!

Man is a social creature, he was made for companionship. In the garden, Adam had daily communion with the Lord. When Eve was created, he had constant companionship with a being of his own kind.

### **Genesis 2:18**

**The LORD God said, "It is not good for the man to be alone. I will make a helper suitable for him."**

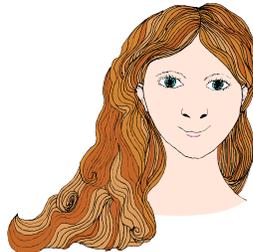
A helpmate suitable to man intellectually, morally, and physically- as his counterpart.

### **Genesis 2:21-25**

**So the LORD God caused the man to fall into a deep sleep; and while he was sleeping, he took one of the man's ribs and closed up the place with flesh. Then the LORD God made a woman from the rib he had taken out of the man, and he brought her to the man.**

The man said,

**"This is now bone of my bones  
and flesh of my flesh;  
she shall be called 'woman,'  
for she was taken out of man."**



**For this reason a man will leave his father and mother and be united to his wife, and they will become one flesh. The man and his wife were both naked, and they felt no shame.**

Woman is said not to have been taken out of man's head to be lorded-over by him, nor from his feet to be trampled on by him, but from his side to be equal with him, from under his arm to be protected by him, and from near his heart to be loved by him.

The word woman comes from the Hebrew- Ish shah, fem of Ish, of man. It literally means she-man; womb-man; man with the womb; or female-man, because she was taken out of man.

### **1 Corinthians 11:11-13**

**In the Lord, however, woman is not independent of man, nor is man independent of woman. For as woman came from man, so also man is born of woman. But everything comes from God.**

So we see the first institution of marriage presided by God when He gave woman to Adam, who called her Eve. It was God's purpose for man and woman to cleave to one another and procreate as God had commanded in Genesis 1:28 to be fruitful and multiply.

An important point needs to be made here, God made Adam and Eve, not Adam and Steve or Jane and Eve! Homosexuals cannot pro-create, it is against nature, a perversion and grievous sin in God's sight. It is an affront to God's original design when God created man and woman with a purpose to cleave to each other and create a family that would honor and serve Him.

### **Romans 1:26-27**

**Because of this, God gave them over to shameful lusts. Even their women exchanged natural relations for unnatural ones. In the same way the men also abandoned natural relations with women and were inflamed with lust for one another. Men committed indecent acts with other men, and received in themselves the due penalty for their perversion.**

Homosexuality is a sin like any other. Like God, we love the person, but hate the sinful act of homosexuality. To say that a person was born a homosexual is to contradict God's original design in making man and woman. It's not natural, it's not right and there is deliverance from this sin like any other sin.

## 2. The Probation of Man

In Genesis 2:15, God told Adam to "take care of it or to keep it." Which implies to guard and protect it from intruders. This is the first reference of an enemy to God and man. Let's look at the Hebrew meaning:

shamar (shaw-mar'); a primitive root; properly, to hedge about (as with thorns), i.e. guard; generally, to protect, attend to, etc.: KJV - beware, be circumspect, take heed (to self), keep (-erself,), mark, look narrowly, observe, preserve, regard, reserve, save (self), sure, (that lay) wait (for), watch (-man).

Why put that tree of the knowledge of good and evil in the garden in the first place anyway? What good is it to have a free will if we do not have an opportunity to make a choice to obey or disobey God's command. Adam was created with the potential of immortality. Death would occur only if Adam disobeyed the command of God relative to eating from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil.

### **Genesis 2:16-17**

**And the LORD God commanded the man, "You are free to eat from any tree in the garden; but you must not eat from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, for when you eat of it you will surely die."**

Man was created in God's image. He was endowed with intelligence, emotion and will. He was a free moral agent, therefore, he was capable of making a choice. Since man was created for God's glory (Isaiah 43:7), and since he could best glorify God by freely choosing to worship and serve Him, it was necessary that Adam be given an opportunity to make a choice.

For Adam and Eve, the Garden of Eden was not only a home in paradise; it was also a place of probation, a place to test their obedience and loyalty to God. The probation of Adam and Eve was based upon a clear direct commandment, a simple law of works. The law had two parts:

- 1) A positive part, consisting of a glorious provision
- 2) A negative part, consisting of a clear prohibition

It needs to be explained how beings who were created with holy natures could sin. Our first parents had holy natures, but they did not yet have holy characters. A holy nature is the result of creation; a holy character is the result of testing in which a choice of good is made, where a choice of evil was possible. A choice of evil results in an evil character. God desired the worship and service of beings with holy moral characters. Free choice then, was necessary for the development of mature holiness and blessedness. With free choice there is, of necessity, the possibility of a wrong choice. Adam and Eve made the wrong choice with disastrous consequences, both for themselves and for the human race.

The probationary commandment given to Adam was personal, not moral. There was no obvious wrong in eating from the forbidden tree; the Fall of Adam and Eve was the result of disobedience, not the result of a clearly immoral act. The prohibition of eating from the tree of good and evil was a testing law, because the evil was not self-evident; the evil was in the disobedience of the commandment. The fall of Adam and Eve resulted from a pure act of willful disobedience.

Yet Jesus came to earth as a man, yet still being divinely God, just without His divine abilities. This made it fair, in order for Jesus to experience the full force of temptation having a weak human body that He indwelt. Yet Jesus overcame every enticement and solicitation of sin that was thrown at Him! As a result, He was qualified to take our place and be our substitute in order to pay the penalty of sin by giving His life that canceled the sentence of death that hung over us.

#### **Hebrews 5:7-9**

**During the days of Jesus' life on earth, he offered up prayers and petitions with loud cries and tears to the one who could save him from death, and he was heard because of his reverent submission. Although he was a son, he learned obedience from what he suffered and, once made perfect, he became the source of eternal salvation for all who obey him.**

#### **Hebrews 4:15-16**

**For we do not have a high priest who is unable to sympathize with our weaknesses, but we have one (Jesus) who has been tempted in every way, just as we are--yet was without sin.**

If Adam had obeyed, resisting Satan's temptation, he would have possessed holy moral character, and would have risen to a new level of blessing and fellowship with God. There is a hint of this in the character and in the consequent translation of Enoch. Enoch developed holy character even after inheriting an Adamic nature.

#### **Genesis 5:23-24**

**Altogether, Enoch lived 365 years. Enoch walked with God; then he was no more, because God took him away.**

#### **Hebrews 11:5-6**

**By faith Enoch was taken from this life, so that he did not experience death; he could not be found, because God had taken him away. For before he was taken, he was commended as one who pleased God.**

If Adam had obeyed, he would have had heaven on earth. A loving God would not have subjected Adam to probation, had it not been necessary for Adam's highest good.

### 3. The Fall of Man

#### **Genesis 3:1**

**Now the serpent was more crafty than any of the wild animals the LORD God had made.**

In Genesis chapter three, the temptation of Adam and Eve is attributed to the serpent who is said to have been, “more crafty than any of the wild animals.” Remember, that it was Adam’s responsibility to keep and protect the Garden of Eden from intruders.

The serpent allowed Satan to manifest himself through it in order to address Adam and Eve with a proposition to rebel against God, just as he originally had done with one third of the angels. Now remember, Satan and his host of rebels (fallen angels and pre-Adamite spirits known as demons) were imprisoned on the earth without a kingdom. They had witnessed what God has done for mankind and were waiting for an opportunity to strike again at God by usurping Adam’s authority.

#### **Revelation 12:9**

**The great dragon was hurled down--that ancient serpent called the devil, or Satan, who leads the whole world astray.**

#### **2 Corinthians 11:3**

**But I am afraid that just as Eve was deceived by the serpent’s cunning, your minds may somehow be led astray from your sincere and pure devotion to Christ.**

Many scholars believe that the serpent was originally an upright animal and was the most beautiful of all the creatures. This seems likely because the curse upon the serpent reduced him to a crawling, slithering creature. Satan finally had an opportunity through the cooperation of the serpent to beguile Adam and Eve into committing high treason, thus rebelling against God through disobedience and thus turning over man’s dominion and authority over to Satan the usurper.

Jesus put it this way, the devil was not created as a part of God’s redesign of earth and the introduction of mankind into this world. Satan was an outsider, an alien wanting in, a thief and a robber- “but climbs in by some other way” through the serpent and deceit he tricked Adam and Eve to give over the keys to the kingdom. Satan’s objective was to steal man from God as a way of getting back at God. Satan wanted to rule again and set up his kingdom of darkness and dominate mankind.

But Jesus became a man, born into this world through the virgin birth. Jesus is the *“man who enters by the gate (and) is the shepherd of his sheep.”*

#### **John 10:1-3**

**I tell you the truth, the man who does not enter the sheep pen by the gate, but climbs in by some other way, is a thief and a robber. The man who enters by the gate is the shepherd of his sheep. The watchman opens the gate for him, and the sheep listen to his voice. He calls his own sheep by name and leads them out.**

### **Genesis 3:1**

**He said to the woman, “Did God really say, ‘You must not eat from any tree in the garden?’”**

Here we see the first distortion of the truth. Remember, Satan is a liar and the father of it, as Jesus stated in John 8:45, “*When he lies, he speaks his native language, for he is a liar and the father of lies.*” It is important to notice that Satan did not appeal to Eve’s desires until he first caused her to doubt the Lord. He began his temptation with the insinuating question, “Did God really say?” A question contrived to make Eve doubt God’s goodness. Yet Eve corrects Satan by quoting what God said, if only the conversation would have ended there!

### **Genesis 3:2-3**

**The woman said to the serpent, “We may eat fruit from the trees in the garden, but God did say, ‘You must not eat fruit from the tree that is in the middle of the garden, and you must not touch it, or you will die.’”**

The question was followed by a statement meant to raise doubts about God’s veracity, “You will not surely die.”

### **Genesis 3:4-5**

**“You will not surely die,” the serpent said to the woman.**

With the seed of doubt already planted, Satan showed himself to be God’s enemy by making the bold accusation that God was depriving Adam and Eve of their rightful privilege of divine status.

### **Genesis 3:5**

**“For God knows that when you eat of it your eyes will be opened, and you will be like God, knowing good and evil.”**

But they were already like God, created in His class, in His image and likeness. They already had everything, all Satan was offering them in disguise was for them to give him everything and become his slave. Here is something important that we should know, it’s a universal law, that a person becomes a slave to the person they obey. If Satan could get Adam and Eve to obey his words and do what he says, Adam and Eve would then become his slave and Satan would have Adam’s dominion in the earth.

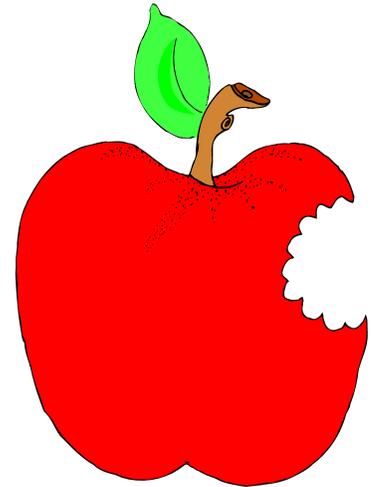
### **Romans 6:16-17**

**Don’t you know that when you offer yourselves to someone to obey him as slaves, you are slaves to the one whom you obey-whether you are slaves to sin, which leads to death, or to obedience, which leads to righteousness?**

Since words are containers, hearing God’s words produces faith. The same principle of words is true when we hear the words of the devil. Since words are containers, hearing the devil’s words produces fear, and results in death when believed and acted upon. His words are full of deadly poison. That is one reason why the Bible refers to him as a poisonous serpent. Whoever embraces and speaks his words embraces death. As free moral agents, we have a free will to choose whose words we will speak. Before we make our decision, we must realize that we will experience in our life the substance that is found in those words that we speak and obey.

### Genesis 3:6-7

**When the woman saw that the fruit of the tree was good for food and pleasing to the eye, and also desirable for gaining wisdom, she took some and ate it. She also gave some to her husband, who was with her, and he ate it.**



Once the seed of doubt had been planted and had germinated, the appeal to desire was effective. Eve may have thought, “If the Lord’s truth and goodness are suspect, one must pursue one’s own best interest.”

These were not inherently evil desires. They became evil because they were motivated by Satan, and because they constituted disobedience to God’s specific commandment. Desire becomes “lust” when it is contrary to the Spirit and the Word of God.

### James 1:13-18

**When tempted, no one should say, “God is tempting me.” For God cannot be tempted by evil, nor does he tempt anyone; but each one is tempted when, by his own evil desire, he is dragged away and enticed. Then, after desire has conceived, it gives birth to sin; and sin, when it is full-grown, gives birth to death. Don’t be deceived, my dear brothers. Every good and perfect gift is from above, coming down from the Father of the heavenly lights, who does not change like shifting shadows.**

The original sin is the same temptation used today in order to entrap people in the bondages of disobedience and slavery to the law of sin and death:

- The lust of the flesh- *Good for food*
- The lust of the eyes- *Pleasing to the eye*
- The pride of life- *Desirable for gaining wisdom*

### 1 John 2:15-17

**Do not love the world or anything in the world. If anyone loves the world, the love of the Father is not in him. For everything in the world-the cravings of sinful man, the lust of his eyes and the boasting of what he has and does-comes not from the Father but from the world. The world and its desires pass away, but the man who does the will of God lives forever.**

Note that it was on these three same levels that Satan had tempted Jesus, the last Adam.

### Luke 4:1-2

**Jesus, full of the Holy Spirit, returned from the Jordan and was led by the Spirit in the desert, where for forty days he was tempted by the devil. He ate nothing during those days, and at the end of them he was hungry.**

Satan first appealed to His flesh, trying to get Jesus to obey his words just as he had done with Adam and Eve.

### ***The Flesh***

vs. 4:3-4

The devil said to him, “If you are the Son of God, tell this stone to become bread.” Jesus answered, “It is written: ‘Man does not live on bread alone.’”

### ***The Pride of Life***

Luke 4:5-8

The devil led him up to a high place and showed him in an instant all the kingdoms of the world. And he said to him, “I will give you all their authority and splendor, for it has been given to me, and I can give it to anyone I want to. So if you worship me, it will all be yours.” Jesus answered, “It is written: ‘Worship the Lord your God and serve him only.’”

### ***The Lust of the Eyes***

Luke 4:9-12

The devil led him to Jerusalem and had him stand on the highest point of the temple. “If you are the Son of God,” he said, “throw yourself down from here. For it is written: ‘He will command his angels concerning you to guard you carefully; they will lift you up in their hands, so that you will not strike your foot against a stone.’” Jesus answered, “It says: ‘Do not put the Lord your God to the test.’”

Notice the statement that Satan made, “*I will give you all their authority and splendor, for it has been given to me, and I can give it to anyone I want to.*” That’s right sports fans, Satan stole that authority from Adam in the Garden of Eden. When Adam and Eve obeyed Satan and rebelled against God, Satan become the god of this world instead of Adam and Eve. When we say “world” we are referring to the culture, economic and political affairs of man, the world system is what Satan is god over. Creation as we said before still belongs to God. Satan is the god of this world now, that’s why it’s in such a mess!

### **2 Corinthians 4:3-4**

**And even if our gospel is veiled, it is veiled to those who are perishing. The god of this age has blinded the minds of unbelievers, so that they cannot see the light of the gospel of the glory of Christ, who is the image of God.**

### **1 John 5:19-20**

**We know that we are children of God, and that the whole world is under the control of the evil one.**

So what contributed to the fall of Adam and Eve: SELF, DOUBT and PRIDE!

Note that Adam was there the whole time, Eve was deceived, but Adam was not, he was without excuse. Adam was ultimately responsible for his God-given dominion and should of grabbed that serpent by the neck and thrown it out of the garden, and that would have been the end of that. Unfortunately that is not what happened and the rest is history. After they each took that fatal bite everything changed!

They lost God-consciousness and gained self-consciousness. They lost the power to do good, and gained the power to do evil. Thus, instead of becoming like God, they became unlike Him in that He has the power to do only good. It is morally impossible for Him to sin. Adam lost that glorious sinlessness and innocent looking countenance comparable to that of Elohim.

God had warned them back in Genesis 2:17 that when they ate the forbidden fruit, they would surely die.

### **Genesis 3:7**

**Then the eyes of both of them were opened, and they realized they were naked; so they sewed fig leaves together and made coverings for themselves.**

Adam and Eve made coverings to deal with the shameful exposure of sin. Man has been trying to cover up sin ever since. Religion is one of the worst coverings man has fabricated. Through a system of works of self-righteousness, man tries to make up for past failures. Unfortunately, when a person sins, the sentence of death is invoked and there is nothing in his/her power to reverse it. If we do the crime we must do the time, unless there is someone else worthy to take our place as a substitute- that would be Jesus!

Let's look at the results of the Fall:

### **Exposure:**

Adam and Eve were clothed with the glory of God. That was their covering before they sinned. Since God Himself is light, it is no surprise that Adam and Eve reflected God's glory, which was a covering of light.

### **Psalms 104:2**

**He wraps himself in light as with a garment.**

### **1 John 1:5-6**

**God is light; in him there is no darkness at all.**

### **Revelation 1:16**

**In his right hand he held seven stars, and out of his mouth came a sharp double-edged sword. His face was like the sun shining in all its brilliance.**

Even Moses, having been in God's presence emitted the glory of God as his face was radiant with light.

### **Exodus 34:33-35**

**When Moses finished speaking to them, he put a veil over his face. But whenever he entered the LORD's presence to speak with him, he removed the veil until he came out. And when he came out and told the Israelites what he had been commanded, they saw that his face was radiant. Then Moses would put the veil back over his face until he went in to speak with the LORD.**

When Adam and Eve sinned, the glory of God left them and they became exposed- the light went out.

### **Fear:**

The next affect that resulted from Adam and Eve's disobedience was fear. They had never experienced it before, it must have been horrible for them. 1 John 4:18, *"But perfect love drives out fear, because fear has to do with punishment. The one who fears is not made perfect in love."*

### **Genesis 3:8-10**

**Then the man and his wife heard the sound of the LORD God as he was walking in the garden in the cool of the day, and they hid from the LORD God among the trees of the garden. But the LORD God called to the man, "Where are you?" He answered, "I heard you in the garden, and I was afraid because I was naked; so I hid."**

Here comes the Lord to visit Adam and Eve as He had done every day before during the cool of the day. Obviously God had already known what had happened, Adam and Eve had an opportunity to come clean with their sin and take responsibility and admit to God that they had failed. I wonder what would have happened if they did admit their mistake to God?

But instead, we begin with the blaming game, didn't you know that passing the buck first started in the Garden of Eden?

### **Genesis 3:11-13**

**And he said, "Who told you that you were naked? Have you eaten from the tree that I commanded you not to eat from?" The man said, "The woman you put here with me- she gave me some fruit from the tree, and I ate it." Then the LORD God said to the woman, "What is this you have done?" The woman said, "The serpent deceived me, and I ate."**

The judicial results of the fall now ensued, since no one took responsibility, there was not much room for mercy, only to pass judgment on the guilty parties:

### **Judgment on the Serpent**

This apparently upright and beautiful creature was doomed to a crawling posture. The eating of "dust" was a term denoting utter humiliation- even into the millennial 1,000 year period in Isaiah 65:25.

### **Genesis 3:14**

**So the LORD God said to the serpent, "Because you have done this, Cursed are you above all the livestock and all the wild animals! You will crawl on your belly and you will eat dust all the days of your life."**

### **The Woman**

The judgment upon the woman was that of pain and sorrow in child bearing and submission to her husband. The woman's lot in pagan countries is an exaggerated manifestation of the curse. Only in lands reached by the Christian Gospel has womanhood experienced a measure of redemption.

### **Genesis 3:16**

**To the woman he said, "I will greatly increase your pains in childbearing; with pain you will give birth to children. Your desire will be for your husband, and he will rule over you."**

### **The Man**

The judgment upon the man was not that of labor, but of wearisome toil. This curse is evident throughout the world over the fear of crop failure, the fear of unemployment, labor strife, bankruptcies and relentless competition.

### **Genesis 3:17-19**

**To Adam he said, "Because you listened to your wife and ate from the tree about which I commanded you, 'You must not eat of it,' Cursed is the ground because of you; through painful toil you will eat of it all the days of your life. It will produce thorns and thistles for you, and you will eat the plants of the field. By the sweat of your brow you will eat your food..."**

The judgment upon the ground was that of lowered productivity and the introduction of thorns and thistles. Everyone knows that weeds grow easier than crops. Note, that marijuana which is a weed and other narcotics were introduced after the fall. These perverted substances are used to relinquish the control of the human mind over to evil spirits for them to take control for evil acts and purposes.

## 4. The Penalty of Death

The most disastrous consequence of the Fall was the introduction of death into the world. God had warned in Genesis 2:17b, Genesis 2:17 *“but you must not eat from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, for when you eat of it you will surely die.”*

### **Romans 6:23**

**For the wages of sin is death, but the gift of God is eternal life in Christ Jesus our Lord.**

### **Ezekiel 18:20**

**The soul who sins is the one who will die.**

Sin entered into the world through Adam and Eve’s high treason; their rebellious act of aligning themselves with Satan. As a result, death came into the world, reigning and dominating mankind.

### **Romans 5:12-14**

**Therefore, just as sin entered the world through one man, and death through sin, and in this way death came to all men, because all sinned- for before the law was given, sin was in the world. But sin is not taken into account when there is no law. Nevertheless, death reigned from the time of Adam to the time of Moses, even over those who did not sin by breaking a command, as did Adam, who was a pattern of the one to come.**

The fall of man has brought him to the depths of baseness, at times man acts like an animal. That does not mean that we are animals. Saved and unsaved, we will all have to give an account to God one day, but the Bible makes no reference to this for animals. Some false religions say that when man dies, he comes back to life as an animal or another person. Some cults say that when a man dies, he does not exist anymore. The Holy Bible does not teach any of these false doctrines. When an animal dies, there is no after life for that creature, it just ceases to exist. However, when a human being dies, only the physical body perishes, his/her spirit, and soul lives on for eternity in heaven or hell. For more Bible reading on the resurrection, please read 1 Corinthians Chapter 15; Philippians 3:20-21; 1 Thessalonians 4:13-18

**Hebrews 9:27- Just as man is destined to die once, and after that to face judgment.**

The Bible identifies three categories of death, and they are as follows:

### **Physical Death**

Adam did not immediately die physically; in fact, the Bible states that he lived nine hundred and thirty years, but the process of disease and mortality began the moment he sinned. For God said in Genesis 3:19, *“until you return to the ground, since from it you were taken; for dust you are and to dust you will return.”*

Medical science will tell you that our physical bodies were engineered to live on indefinitely. Since cell reproduction and regeneration is a part of the human anatomy. Unfortunately, they will also tell you that our DNA has an aging component built in that prevents immortality from happening.

Physical death occurs when the spirit is separated from the body and the body returns to dust. In the old dispensation only Enoch and Elijah escaped physical death (Genesis 5:24; 2 Kings 2:11). In the new dispensation, only those who are taken up in the Rapture escape physical death- 1 Thessalonians 4:16-17.

## **Spiritual Death**

Spiritual death is separation from God. Certainly, sin separates and alienates people from God, but there is more. When Adam and Eve sinned, their spiritual nature was changed into the image of that of Satan himself. Instead of the nature of God to do right, man received the spiritual nature of the devil.

### **Acts 13:10**

**You are a child of the devil and an enemy of everything that is right! You are full of all kinds of deceit and trickery. Will you never stop perverting the right ways of the Lord?**

### **1 John 3:10**

**This is how we know who the children of God are and who the children of the devil are: Anyone who does not do what is right is not a child of God; nor is anyone who does not love his brother.**

### **John 8:44-45**

**You belong to your father, the devil, and you want to carry out your father's desire. He was a murderer from the beginning, not holding to the truth, for there is no truth in him. When he lies, he speaks his native language, for he is a liar and the father of lies.**

This sinful nature did not stop with the spirit of man, but infected and corrupted the soul and mind of men and women as well.

**Romans 1:28-29- Furthermore, since they did not think it worthwhile to retain the knowledge of God, he gave them over to a depraved mind, to do what ought not to be done.**

### **Titus 1:15-16**

**To the pure, all things are pure, but to those who are corrupted and do not believe, nothing is pure. In fact, both their minds and consciences are corrupted.**

Sin made its way into our physical bodies, polluting the very blood stream with this satanic sinful nature so that it would be passed on from man to his offspring- Leviticus 17:11 *"For the life of a creature is in the blood."* Until we get a new resurrected body, this physical body we have now will always gravitate and have a propensity towards sin. We call this "Body of Sin" the "Flesh" or our carnal nature. This human dynamic is what necessitated among other reasons, Jesus' virgin birth- to keep His body from being contaminated by Adam's sinful nature through the male human seed.

### **Romans 6:6**

**We know that our old self was crucified with him so that the body of sin might be done away with, that we should no longer be slaves to sin.**

### **Romans 7:23-25**

**But I see another law at work in the members of my body, waging war against the law of my mind and making me a prisoner of the law of sin at work within my members. What a wretched man I am! Who will rescue me from this body of death?**

**Jude 22-23- Be merciful to those who doubt; snatch others from the fire and save them; to others show mercy, mixed with fear- hating even the clothing stained by corrupted flesh.**

This is why Jesus had said in John 3:3 that men and women must experience a spiritual re-birth, be born again in order to go to heaven. To become new creations in Christ Jesus as it is stated in 2 Corinthians 5:17. Also note in 1 Corinthians 15:50, our physical bodies cannot enter heaven because they are contaminated with sin. When sin enters God's presence, it always results in judgment.

## **Eternal Death**

Eternal death is the condition of those who have the spiritual nature of Satan, and depart this earthly life without repentance of sin and without faith in the Lord Jesus Christ- eternal separation from God!

### **John 8:24**

**Jesus said, "I told you that you would die in your sins; if you do not believe that I am [the one I claim to be], you will indeed die in your sins."**

### **John 3:36**

**Whoever believes in the Son has eternal life, but whoever rejects the Son will not see life, for God's wrath remains on him."**

### **2 Thessalonians 1:8-10**

**He will punish those who do not know God and do not obey the gospel of our Lord Jesus. They will be punished with everlasting destruction and shut out from the presence of the Lord and from the majesty of his power.**

### **Matthew 25:41-42**

**Then Jesus will say to those on his left, "Depart from me, you who are cursed, into the eternal fire prepared for the devil and his angels."**

Hell, Hades or Sheol is an actual place in the center of the earth. Scientists theorize that the earth's core is hot as it is because it is cooling down from its birth millions of years ago. Actually, it is the place for the departed dead awaiting judgment. It's hot because that is where hell is located, a place torment.

### **Deuteronomy 32:22 (KJV)**

**For a fire is kindled in mine anger, and shall burn unto the lowest hell, and shall consume the earth with her increase, and set on fire the foundations of the mountains.**

Let's look at the natural judicial system, when we commit a crime we go to jail. A date for a court appearance is set in the future where we will stand before the judge. Upon sentencing we are transferred from the county jail to the state or federal penitentiary for the remainder of our time. When a person dies in their sins, they are escorted to the heart of the earth, into hell for that appointed time to stand before God Almighty, the Judge of the universe. Hell is likened to a county jail, merely a temporary place.

### **Isaiah 14:9 (NKJV)**

**Hell from beneath is excited about you, To meet you at your coming; It stirs up the dead for you.**

### **2 Peter 2:9-10**

**If this is so, then the Lord knows how to rescue godly men from trials and to hold the unrighteous for the day of judgment, while continuing their punishment.**

To illustrate the above point, let's look at a real account recorded in the Bible. Jesus shared a real story that happened to two men- The rich man and Lazarus. This is not a parable like some think. A parable of Jesus would always start off with this kind of verbiage, "*What shall we say the kingdom of God is like, or what parable shall we use to describe it?*" Mar k4:30. Jesus would use "Like" or "As" as a comparison, also known in English grammar, as a simile. In the true story concerning the rich man and Lazarus, Luke 16:19-31, Jesus starts out by saying, "***There was a rich man who was dressed in purple and fine linen and lived in luxury every day. At his gate was laid a beggar named Lazarus, covered with sores...***" These were people who actually lived, and Jesus narrates the fate of both. Below, I am going to list some points I would like for us to consider:

- The two men died physically but they went to a place in the heart of the earth. The rich man went into hell, and Lazarus went into Abraham's bosom.
- One was in torment, and the other was comforted. They were even more acutely aware of their surroundings after death.
- The rich man could recognize Lazarus, and evidently knew it was Abraham at his side.
- The rich man still had his memory, and expressed emotion for his brothers who were still on the earth.

Those who were considered righteous in the Old Testament were escorted into Abraham's bosom which was a compartment adjacent to hell. There was no torment or anguish there. The Old Testament saints had a limited salvation or a conditional righteousness based on Abraham's covenant. They were looking for the promised Messiah to come and pay the ransom for their salvation. They could not enter heaven directly yet because sin was only covered not yet removed by the blood of Jesus. At the resurrection of Jesus, He preached the Gospel to these men and women and they were born again and raised with Christ to heaven. Abraham's bosom is now empty, unfortunately hell is still being filled with people every day.

#### **1 Peter 3:18-19**

**For Christ died for sins once for all, the righteous for the unrighteous, to bring you to God. He was put to death in the body but made alive by the Spirit, through whom also he went and preached to the spirits in prison.**

#### **Ephesians 4:8-10**

**"When he ascended on high, he led captives in his train and gave gifts to men." (What does "he ascended" mean except that he also descended to the lower, earthly regions? He who descended is the very one who ascended higher than all the heavens, in order to fill the whole universe.)**

The wicked dead will have their day in court before God Almighty at the great White Throne.

#### **Acts 24:15-16**

**I have the same hope in God as these men, that there will be a resurrection of both the righteous and the wicked. So I strive always to keep my conscience clear before God and man.**

#### **Daniel 7:9-10**

**"As I looked, thrones were set in place, and the Ancient of Days took his seat. His clothing was as white as snow; the hair of his head was white like wool. His throne was flaming with fire, and its wheels were all ablaze. A river of fire was flowing, coming out from before him. Thousands upon thousands attended him; ten thousand times ten thousand stood before him. The court was seated, and the books were opened."**

#### **Revelation 20:11-15**

**Then I saw a great white throne and him who was seated on it. Earth and sky fled from his presence, and there was no place for them. And I saw the dead, great and small, standing before the throne, and books were opened. Another book was opened, which is the book of life. The dead were judged according to what they had done as recorded in the books. The sea gave up the dead that were in it, and death and Hades gave up the dead that were in them, and each person was judged according to what he had done. Then death and Hades were thrown into the lake of fire. **The lake of fire is the second death.** If anyone's name was not found written in the book of life, he was thrown into the lake of fire.**

The lake of fire is not the same place as hell, because death and hell itself will be cast into this lake of fire. God rids the universe of all rebellious spirit beings, human, fallen angels, evil spirits and Satan himself. So, the Lake of Fire is their final destination or penitentiary for all eternity- quarantined.

After the resurrection of Jesus from the dead 2,000 years ago, whenever those who are born again experience physical death, they are immediately ushered into heaven. We don't go down to Abraham's bosom anymore. Jesus has obtained an eternal redemption for us, the penalty of sin is paid in full so we are at last reunited with God in His very presence in heaven.

### **2 Corinthians 5:8-10**

**We are confident, I say, and would prefer to be away from the body and at home with the Lord. So we make it our goal to please him, whether we are at home in the body or away from it. For we must all appear before the judgment seat of Christ, that each one may receive what is due him for the things done while in the body, whether good or bad.**

### **Philippians 1:20-24**

**I eagerly expect and hope that I will in no way be ashamed, but will have sufficient courage so that now as always Christ will be exalted in my body, whether by life or by death. For to me, to live is Christ and to die is gain. If I am to go on living in the body, this will mean fruitful labor for me. Yet what shall I choose? I do not know! I am torn between the two: I desire to depart and be with Christ, which is better by far; but it is more necessary for you that I remain in the body.**

## **5. The Promise of a Savior**

In the midst of God pronouncing judgment in the Garden after Adam and Eve's transgression, a promise was made that would change the destiny of mankind and undo what Satan had just done in the Garden.

### **Genesis 3:15**

**"And I will put enmity between you and the woman, and between your offspring and hers; he will crush your head, and you will strike his heel."**

The seed of the woman, meaning a man born of woman would crush Satan's authority and release mankind from the slavery of sin and death. In other words, it would bring about the eventual doom of Satan.

### **Revelation 1:18**

**I am the Living One; I was dead, and behold I am alive forever and ever! And I hold the keys of death and Hades.**

### **Hebrews 2:14-15**

**Since the children have flesh and blood, he too shared in their humanity so that by his death he might destroy him who holds the power of death-that is, the devil- and free those who all their lives were held in slavery by their fear of death.**

### **Colossians 2:15**

**And having disarmed the powers and authorities, he made a public spectacle of them, triumphing over them by the cross.**

However, in the process of crushing Satan's dominion, Satan will have the opportunity to inflict pain and suffering on Jesus via the beatings and crucifixion- Please read all of Isaiah 53 for details!

Through the fulfillment of the promised offspring or seed of the woman, Jesus Christ, we have been given back Adam's lost dominion. Through Jesus Christ we are more than conquerors and can reign in this life over Satan and the affects of death and sin- Romans 8:37. If the rapture does not take place in our life time, our bodies will experience physical death, but only after we have been satisfied with long life and enjoyed God's salvation all the days of our lives- Psalm 91:16.

### **Romans 5:17**

**For if, by the trespass of the one man, death reigned through that one man, how much more will those who receive God's abundant provision of grace and of the gift of righteousness reign in life through the one man, Jesus Christ.**

The affect of the fall of man is still seen in creation today, and the misery on this earth due to Satan being the god of this world. However, the good news is that Satan is not my god any more, Jesus is and we can enjoy abundant life here and now while we run our course on this earth with joy!

### **Romans 8:18-23**

**I consider that our present sufferings are not worth comparing with the glory that will be revealed in us. The creation waits in eager expectation for the sons of God to be revealed. For the creation was subjected to frustration, not by its own choice, but by the will of the one who subjected it, in hope that the creation itself will be liberated from its bondage to decay and brought into the glorious freedom of the children of God. We know that the whole creation has been groaning as in the pains of childbirth right up to the present time.**

### **Isaiah 65:17-18**

**"Behold, I will create new heavens and a new earth. The former things will not be remembered, nor will they come to mind. But be glad and rejoice forever in what I will create."**

### **Revelation 21:1-5**

**Then I saw a new heaven and a new earth, for the first heaven and the first earth had passed away, and there was no longer any sea. I saw the Holy City, the new Jerusalem, coming down out of heaven from God, prepared as a bride beautifully dressed for her husband. And I heard a loud voice from the throne saying, "Now the dwelling of God is with men, and he will live with them. They will be his people, and God himself will be with them and be their God. He will wipe every tear from their eyes. There will be no more death or mourning or crying or pain, for the old order of things has passed away." He who was seated on the throne said, "I am making everything new!" Then he said, "Write this down, for these words are trustworthy and true."**

Wow, the future looks so wonderful it is beyond description to comprehend. But meanwhile back at the ranch in the Garden of Eden, we have Adam and Eve not sure what to do now. The first animals are sacrificed on behalf of fallen man, and there will be many more until Jesus comes and makes the one and final sacrifice for sin. Skins of these animals are put on Adam and Eve as a covering for their apparent nakedness. Remember, formerly they had been robed in the light of the glory of God.

### **Genesis 3:21-22**

**The LORD God made garments of skin for Adam and his wife and clothed them.**

Formerly in Genesis 1:29, Adam and Eve were vegetarians, and so were the rest of the animal kingdom. However, with death in the earth, the wild animals became carnivores and so did man. But during the Millennium (explained later), these carnivores will be back on a diet of grass- Isaiah 11:7; 65:25.

Last point to be made as we leave the fall of man and continue our epic journey through the Old Testament in this lesson on Beginnings. Now that Adam and Eve had taken on Satan's spiritual nature of death, God did not want this spiritual state to become permanent. Thus He denied them access to the Tree of Life, that would have bound them into a hopeless eternal sinful condition- no chance of salvation.

### Genesis 3:22-24

And the LORD God said, "The man has now become like one of us, knowing good and evil. He must not be allowed to reach out his hand and take also from the tree of life and eat, and live forever." So the LORD God banished him from the Garden of Eden to work the ground from which he had been taken. After he drove the man out, he placed on the east side of the Garden of Eden cherubim and a flaming sword flashing back and forth to guard the way to the tree of life.



## D. Cain and Abel

The account of Cain and Abel is very significant because it points out a very important principle in regards to the means by which fallen man can be reconciled back to God. In other words, how to deal with the sin problem, in order for our relationship with God to be restored.



Adam lay with his wife Eve, and she became pregnant and gave birth to Cain. She said, "With the help of the LORD I have brought forth a man." Later she gave birth to his brother Abel. Now Abel kept flocks, and Cain worked the soil. In the course of time Cain brought some of the fruits of the soil as an offering to the LORD. **But Abel brought fat portions from some of the firstborn of his flock. The LORD looked with favor on Abel and his offering, but on Cain and his offering he did not look with favor.** So Cain was very angry, and his face was downcast. Then the LORD said to Cain, "Why are you angry? Why is your face downcast? If you do what is right, will you not be accepted? But if you do not do what is right, sin is crouching at your door; it desires to have you, but you must master it."

Genesis 4:1-7

As the story goes, Cain put his trust in his own labor as an offering to be acceptable to God, but it was rejected. Cain is a type and shadow for religion today, man's manufactured effort to come to God on his own terms. Abel on the other hand was a man of faith who obeyed God's instructions to offer a sacrifice of blood. The Lord having made for Adam and Eve coats of skin presupposes the slaying of animals; and doubtless implies that Abel's sacrifice of an animal life was an act of faith which rested on God's command (though not expressly recorded) that such were the sacrifices He required.

**Hebrews 11:4- By faith Abel offered God a better sacrifice than Cain did. By faith he was commended as a righteous man, when God spoke well of his offerings. And by faith he still speaks, even though he is dead.**

## 1. The Right Sacrifice

What Abel offered was "much more a sacrifice" according to Wycliffe in the Greek, than Cain's. "*By faith Abel offered unto God a much more sacrifice than Cain,*" i.e. one which had more of the true virtue of sacrifice. For it was an animal sacrifice of the firstlings of the flock, a token of the forfeiture of man's life by sin, and a type of the Redeemer to be bruised in the heel; in turn He would crush the serpent's head- Genesis 3:15.

The universal law of God required payment for sin, a blood sacrifice is the only acceptable way to pay the penalty of sin. Innocent blood had to be shed to redeem a guilty individual.

**Leviticus 17:11- For the life of a creature is in the blood, and I have given it to you to make atonement for yourselves on the altar; it is the blood that makes atonement for one's life.**

The blood of a living creature is a powerful thing according to the Bible, the blood of a human being is even more powerful, but the blood of Jesus is the ultimate statement. Again, our western mind looks at blood merely as a biological necessity in order to sustain life. This is a true statement, but according to the Bible, the blood has a deep spiritual meaning- a supernatural currency with great implications.

Blood sacrifice to our western thinking is a foreign concept for sure. However, from the beginning of time, it was God's method of choice in dealing with the sin problem. The best definition for sin is, "To miss the mark"; in other words, it means anything less than perfection. Sin has a horrible consequence called death as mentioned in Romans 6:23, "*For the wages of sin is death, but the gift of God is eternal life in Christ Jesus our Lord.*"

When Adam and Eve sinned in the garden, after pronouncing judgment, the first thing God did was to shed an innocent life on behalf of fallen man- Genesis 3:21, "*The LORD God made garments of skin for Adam and his wife and clothed them.*" The very first record of a life being taken from earth was the life of an animal in order to clothe man due to his sin. Evidently God had instituted the shedding of blood as a means to approach Him according to the story of Cain and Abel.

**Atonement:** The King James version uses the word "Propitiation" in Romans 3:25 and "Reconciliation" in Hebrews 2:17. Therefore the word "Atonement" means reconciliation, it was associated with sacrificial offerings to remove the affects of sin and in the New Testament, refers specifically to the reconciliation between God and humanity; by the death, burial, and resurrection of Christ. Atonement is best understood as expiation, that is removing the barrier that sin creates between God and man. Expiation emphasizes the removal of guilt through a payment of the penalty of sin, while propitiation emphasizes the appeasement or averting of God's wrath and satisfying the claims of God's justice.

Both words are related to reconciliation, since it is through Christ's death on the cross for our sins that we are reconciled to God. The place of atonement was made upon the mercy seat by the blood of Jesus, Hebrews 9:5 *"Above the ark were the cherubim of the Glory, overshadowing the atonement cover."* So mercy, forgiveness, justification and reconciliation are all wrapped up in the term atonement.

### **1 John 2:1-2**

**My dear children, I write this to you so that you will not sin. But if anybody does sin, we have one who speaks to the Father in our defense- Jesus Christ, the Righteous One. He is the atoning sacrifice for our sins, and not only for ours but also for the sins of the whole world.**

### **1 John 4:10**

**This is love: not that we loved God, but that he loved us and sent his Son as an atoning sacrifice for our sins.**

### **The Birth of Religion**

The first two brothers in history stand as types or representatives of the two main and enduring divisions of mankind, and bear witness to the absolute antithesis and eternal enmity between good and evil, grace and works. Envy of the godly was "the way of Cain."

### **Jude 11**

**Woe to them! They have taken the way of Cain.**

Unfortunately, religious Cain did what so many people do today in the name of religion and that was to murder his brother out of envy- Please read Mark 15:10; Acts 7:8-12; 13:45; Philippians 1:15 to see what I mean.

### **1 John 3:12-13**

**Do not be like Cain, who belonged to the evil one and murdered his brother. And why did he murder him? Because his own actions were evil and his brother's were righteous.**

### **Blood has a Voice**

Abel ranks as the first martyr, whose blood cried out for vengeance. Jesus spoke of "the blood of righteous Abel" and implied that Abel, the first righteous martyr, anticipated in symbol His own death on Calvary at the hands of evil, jealous men.

### **Matthew 23:35**

**And so upon you will come all the righteous blood that has been shed on earth, from the blood of righteous Abel to the blood of Zechariah son of Berekiah, whom you murdered between the temple and the altar.**

### **Genesis 4:10**

**The LORD said, "What have you done? Listen! Your brother's blood cries out to me from the ground."**

### **Genesis 9:4-6**

**But you must not eat meat that has its lifeblood still in it. And for your lifeblood I will surely demand an accounting. I will demand an accounting from every animal. And from each man, too, I will demand an accounting for the life of his fellow man. Whoever sheds the blood of man, by man shall his blood be shed; for in the image of God has God made man.**

However, the blood of Jesus appeals to God for the forgiveness of sin, and speaks of the salvation and redemption of mankind- not of vengeance.

**Hebrews 12:24**

**To Jesus the mediator of a new covenant, and to the sprinkled blood that speaks a better word than the blood of Abel.**

So for the murder of Abel, God had pronounced judgment upon Cain in Genesis 4:11-16 who became a wanderer for the rest of his days.

**Unit 2 Review:**

How was man suppose to exercise dominion on the earth and over God’s creation?

---

---

What seems to be some reasons for God creating Adam and Eve?

---

---

Why did God place the tree of the knowledge of Good and Evil in the center of the Garden?

---

---

---

Why was Satan so interested in getting Adam and Eve to eat that forbidden fruit?

---

---

What were the consequences for disobeying God’s command?

---

---

---

Why did God favor Abel’s sacrifice over Cain’s?

---

---

## E. Noah and the Flood

Noah was only nine generations removed from Adam; and his father, Lamech, was 56 years old at the time of Adam's death.

### **1 Chronicles 1:1-3**

**Adam, Seth, Enosh, Kenan, Mahalalel, Jared, Enoch, Methuselah, Lamech, Noah.**

Noah was 500 years old when he had three sons.

### **Genesis 5:32**

**After Noah was 500 years old, he became the father of Shem, Ham and Japheth.**

When Noah was around 600 years old, the flood waters came- it took him at the most 100 years to build the ark.

### **Genesis 7:6-7**

**Noah was six hundred years old when the floodwaters came on the earth.**

#### 1. The World before the Flood

So what was life like on the earth before Noah's flood. What kind of people were they? Whatever the Bible has to say is the only facts we can go by, everything else would be speculation. When God had created Adam and Eve, he told them in Genesis 1:28, "Be fruitful and increase in number; fill the earth and subdue it."

By the time Noah came on the scene the world was a very evil and wicked place. In the 1,656 years before the flood, there must have been from 150,000,000 to 500,000,000 million people on the earth.

The depravity was widespread. And it was inward, continual and habitual. Man was utterly corrupt, bad in heart and in conduct. There was no good in him. The whole bent of his thoughts and imaginations was completely out of line with the will of God. Flesh was on the throne. God was forgotten or openly defied according to the Scriptures.

### **Genesis 6:5-8**

**The LORD saw how great man's wickedness on the earth had become, and that every inclination of the thoughts of his heart was only evil all the time. The LORD was grieved that he had made man on the earth, and his heart was filled with pain. So the LORD said, "I will wipe mankind, whom I have created, from the face of the earth- men and animals, and creatures that move along the ground, and birds of the air- for I am grieved that I have made them." But Noah found favor in the eyes of the LORD.**



It is generally believed that there were only two branches of the race of man. One, a godly line through Seth (third son of Adam and Eve), and the other, an ungodly line through Cain. This perception is a result of Seth's ancestral descendants being traced from Adam to Jesus in Luke 3:23-38. Certainly, Noah and his three sons were descendants of Seth, but what about all the other descendants of Seth besides Noah, who were also alive at that time? They were destroyed by the flood along with all of Cain's descendants. The reason I have pointed this out is because of how different folks interpret the following Scripture. Particularly who the "sons of God" are referring to.

### **Genesis 6:1-2**

**When men began to increase in number on the earth and daughters were born to them, the sons of God saw that the daughters of men were beautiful, and they married any of them they chose.**

In some cases in Scripture "sons of God" may be identified with "angels" or "messengers." Jesus is the Son of God in a unique sense. Believers are called "sons of God" because of their relationship to Him. In the Old Testament however, "sons of God" are a special class of beings that make up the heavenly court- angels.

In the Old Testament, the only two references to the "sons of God" in the NIV are made in the above Scripture reference. The sons of God mentioned in Job 38:7, are an order of angelic beings existing before the creation of man, and joining in the symphony of the universe, when the earth and all things were called into being. At one time, they were all holy (before one-third followed Lucifer), for they were all called the sons of God.

**Job 38:7- While the morning stars sang together and all the angels shouted for joy?**

### **Job 38:7 (KJV)**

**When the morning stars sang together, and all the sons of God shouted for joy?**

Remember, in Genesis 3:15, when God prophetically spoke of a redeemer that would come as a man, the "seed of the woman" who would crush the head of the serpent. Speaking of Jesus, defeating Satan and taking back what he stole from Adam. So, what was Satan to do about this promise that God had decreed. Do everything in his power to keep it from coming to pass, of course!

### **Job 1:6-7**

**One day the angels came to present themselves before the LORD, and Satan also came with them. The LORD said to Satan, "Where have you come from?" Satan answered the LORD, "From roaming through the earth and going back and forth in it."**

If Satan could pollute the race of mankind, deliver them all to absolute wickedness where no one served God, then he could prolong his kingdom indefinitely. So from Cain murdering Abel until the birth of Jesus, born of a virgin, human history was comprised of the pointless pursuit of Satan trying to nullify God's Word by infecting and corrupting humanity with wickedness and somehow prevent the coming of the Messiah and Redeemer of mankind.

### **Giants in the Land**

Nephilim (Hebrew)- A bully, tyrant, or giant.

"Mighty Men" OT:1368

gibbor (ghib-bore'); or (shortened) gibbor (ghib-bore'); intensive from the same as OT:1397; powerful; by implication, warrior, tyrant: "The name is from a root, 'to fall,' i.e., on other people" KJV - champion, chief, X excel, giant, man, mighty (man, one), strong (man), valiant man.

### **Genesis 6:4**

**The Nephilim were on the earth in those days- and also afterward- when the sons of God went to the daughters of men and had children by them. They were the heroes of old, men of renown.**

### **Genesis 6:4 (AMP)**

**Concerning the “Nephilim” existed “in those days” before the flood and “also afterward” after the flood.**

There were giants on the earth before the flood, and also afterward, when the sons of God cohabitated with the daughters of men, and they bore children to them. These were the mighty men who were of old, men of renown. In other words, fallen angels cohabitated with human women- produced a race of giants.

What is also interesting is that the Bible teaches that there were giants after the flood- like the kingdom of Og, the king of Bashan and Goliath and his brothers. How could the theory of the “sons of God”, supposedly being Seth’s line be able to marry the “daughters of men,” Cain’s line to produce giants, when all of Cain’s descendents were killed during the flood?

These ancient heroes or giants became the gods of the heathen neighbors of Israel and Greek mythology. The fact that giants were partly of supernatural origin made it easy for men to regard them as gods.

Josephus, an ancient Jewish Historian said, “Many angels of God accompanied with women, and begat sons that proved unjust, and despisers of all that was good, on account of their own strength... these men did what resembled the acts of those whom the Grecians called giants.” Again he says, “There was till then left the race of giants, who had bodies so large, and countenances so entirely different from other men, that they were surprising to the sight, and terrible to the hearing. The bones of these men are still shown to this very day.

What we have here is a race of giants, the offspring of angels cohabitating with human women to produce a perverted freak of nature. These guys were twisted, wicked evil tyrants who were huge in stature. God’s law of reproduction from the beginning has been everything after its own kind. It is not possible then, that giants could be produced by men and women of ordinary size. It took the supernatural element, the purpose and power of Satan and his angels to make offspring of such extra size within the human species. They then produced others of like size instead of ordinary sized people.

The Nephilim are considered by many to be giant demigods, the unnatural offspring of the “daughters of men” (mortal women) in cohabitation with the “sons of God” (angel- Genesis 6:1-4). This utterly unnatural union, violating God’s created order of being, was such a shocking abnormality as to necessitate the worldwide judgment of the Flood.

God’s elect angels have been forbidden by God to procreate themselves- God created them as a set or fixed number, never to increase.

### **Matthew 22:30-31**

**At the resurrection people will neither marry nor be given in marriage; they will be like the angels in heaven.**

Remember the one-third of the fallen angels who had rebelled with Lucifer and the Pre-Adamite creation. It was some of these fallen angels who crossed the line and took on human form in order to produce this race of Nephilim giants in an attempt to pollute the pure human stock descended from Adam and created by God. However, God swiftly judged those angels who committed this grievous sin.

## **Jude 6**

**And the angels who did not keep their positions of authority but abandoned their own home- these he has kept in darkness, bound with everlasting chains for judgment on the great Day.**

## **2 Peter 2:4-5**

**For if God did not spare angels when they sinned, but sent them to hell, putting them into gloomy dungeons to be held for judgment; if he did not spare the ancient world when he brought the flood on its ungodly people, but protected Noah, a preacher of righteousness, and seven others...**

The world had been corrupted and contaminated, Satan had introduced a race of half-human, half-fallen angel offspring. Genesis 6:11- The world had corrupted(2 Peter 1:4) their ways and was full of violence.

ANGELS CAN STILL APPEAR IN HUMAN FORM ACCORDING TO SCRIPTURE.

## **Hebrews 13:2**

**Do not forget to entertain strangers, for by so doing some people have entertained angels without knowing it.**

The angels that went to Sodom and Gomorrah looked like regular men.

## **Genesis 19:1-2**

**The two angels arrived at Sodom in the evening, and Lot was sitting in the gateway of the city. When he saw them, he got up to meet them and bowed down with his face to the ground. “My lords,” he said, “please turn aside to your servant’s house. You can wash your feet and spend the night and then go on your way early in the morning.”**

## **2. The Profile of a Giant**

So what were these giants like? Interestingly enough, the same tactic by Satan to contaminate the purity of the human race was again repeated after the flood. It is from these post-flood references that we can build a profile of these half-angel and half-human Nephilim giants.

God made a covenant with Abraham in order to establish a nation through which the promised seed of the woman would be made manifest in order to undo Satan’s treachery in the Garden of Eden. There was a race of people called the Amorites. The Amorites were one of the major tribes or national groups, living in Canaan. The Old Testament frequently uses “Amorites” as a synonym for Canaanites in general. The Book of Genesis cites Canaan as the ancestor of the Amorites (Genesis 10:16). The sin of the Amorites reached full measure when the Nephilim giants were introduced into their race.

## **Genesis 15:12-16**

**As the sun was setting, Abram fell into a deep sleep, and a thick and dreadful darkness came over him. Then the LORD said to him, “Know for certain that your descendants will be strangers in a country not their own, and they will be enslaved and mistreated four hundred years. But I will punish the nation they serve as slaves, and afterward they will come out with great possessions. You, however, will go to your fathers in peace and be buried at a good old age. In the fourth generation your descendants will come back here, for the sin of the Amorites has not yet reached its full measure.”**

### **Genesis 15:17-21**

**When the sun had set and darkness had fallen, a smoking firepot with a blazing torch appeared and passed between the pieces. On that day the LORD made a covenant with Abram and said, “To your descendants I give this land, from the river of Egypt to the great river, the Euphrates- the land of the Kenites, Kenizzites, Kadmonites, Hittites, Perizzites, Rephaites, Amorites, Canaanites, Girgashites and Jebusites.”**

### **AMORITES**

A tribe descended from Canaan (Genesis 10:16) and one of the seven whose lands were given to Israel (Deuteronomy 7:1; Genesis 15:16). “The Amorite” means literally “the Westerner,” hence the name Amorites is generally supposed to mean “western highlanders” (Numbers 13:29; Deuteronomy 1:7-20; Joshua 10:6), or “tall ones” (Amos 2:9; Numbers 13:33; Deuteronomy 2:10).

The Israelites found east of the Jordan two Amorite kingdoms: that of Sihon, which lay along the Jordan from the Arnon (Wadi Mojib) to the Jabbok (Wadi Zerka), and from the Jordan to the desert (Judges 11:21-22); and that of Og, king of Bashan, from the valley of Arnon to Mt. Hermon (Jebel esh Sheik) (Deuteronomy 3:4,8-9). As Sihon and Og attempted to act on the offensive, Israel immediately possessed their territories (Deuteronomy 3:8-10).

God had made it very clear to the children of Israel that these giant infested nations had to be purged.

### **Deuteronomy 20:17-18**

**Completely destroy them- the Hittites, **Amorites**, Canaanites, Perizzites, Hivites and Jebusites- as the LORD your God has commanded you. Otherwise, they will teach you to follow all the detestable things they do in worshiping their gods, and you will sin against the LORD your God.**

### **Numbers 32:33**

**Then Moses gave to the Gadites, the Reubenites and the half-tribe of Manasseh son of Joseph the kingdom of Sihon king of the Amorites and the kingdom of Og king of Bashan- the whole land with its cities and the territory around them.**

### **The Giant named “OG”**

Og, King of Bashan was an Amorite chieftain

### **Deuteronomy 3:11**

**Only Og king of Bashan was left of the remnant of the Rephaites. His bed was made of iron and was more than thirteen feet long and six feet wide. It is still in Rabbah of the Ammonites.)**

An Amorite king of Bashan, ruling 60 cities, including Ashteroth Karnaim and Edrei (Joshua 13:12; 12:4; Genesis 14:5). After conquering Sihon’s land from the Arnon to the Jabbok, Israel marched by way of BASHAN which is north of the Jabbok. Og met them and perished with all his people at Edrei, and Israel took his land (Numbers 21:33-35). Og was of a different race, namely, “of the remnant of the giants,” the Rephaim before the Amorites came (Deuteronomy 3:13). The Amorites by intermarriage with the Rephaim were in “height like that of the cedars and strong as the oaks” (Amos 2:9).

### **Amos 2:9**

**“I destroyed the Amorite before them, though he was tall as the cedars and strong as the oaks. I destroyed his fruit above and his roots below.”**

He was defeated by the Israelites at Edrei, along with his children and his people- all exterminated (Numbers 21:33-35).

As we have been saying, the fact that giants are beings of abnormal size in body, having lived on earth is one of the most clearly stated truths in Scripture.

Rapha, was the name of a giant, the father of all the giants mentioned in these passages. From the original Rapha descended the Rephaims. Thus ended the mighty races of giants that were born of a union of the daughters of men and fallen angels after the flood of Noah.

#### REPHAIM

ref'-a-im), (re-fa'-im) (repha'-im, from rapha', "a terrible one 'hence' giant," in 1 Chronicles 20:4, "sons of the giant"; the King James Version, Rephaims: A race of aboriginal or early inhabitants East of the Jordan in Ashterothkarnaim (Genesis 14:5) and in the valley of Rephaim Southwest of Jerusalem (Joshua 15:8). They associated with other giant races, as the Emim and Anakim (Deuteronomy 2:10-11) and the Zamzummim (verse 20). It is probable that they were all of the same stock, being given different names by the different tribes who came in contact with them.

#### ANAK

A'NAK (a'nak; "long-necked," i.e., "a giant"). Pronounced [A knack] (giant). The son of Arba, the founder of Kiriath-arba. He was the progenitor of a race of giants called Anakim. These Anakim were a terror to the children of Israel (Numbers 13:22,28) but were driven out by Caleb, who came into possession of Hebron (Joshua 15:13-14). Anak had three sons, whose descendants were giants, the ANAKIM.

#### ANAKIM

[AN uh kim] (giants)-a race of fierce giants (Deuteronomy 1:28; 2:10-11; Joshua 14:12,15) descended from ANAK. Descended from Arba (Joshua 15:13; 21:11), dwelling in the South of Canaan. Hebron was called from him Kirjath Arba, i.e. city of Arba. Anak is the name of the race rather than an individual (Joshua 14:15). The three tribes bore the names of Sheshai, Ahiman, and Talmai.

In Numbers 13 we have an account of the children of Israel spying out the Promised Land that God had given them as their inheritance. However, there were occupants of that land, and not just any group of ordinary people.

#### Numbers 13:31-33

**But the men who had gone up with him said, "We can't attack those people; they are stronger than we are." And they spread among the Israelites a bad report about the land they had explored. They said, "The land we explored devours those living in it. All the people we saw there are of great size. We saw the Nephilim there (the descendants of Anak come from the Nephilim). We seemed like grasshoppers in our own eyes, and we looked the same to them."**

Notice the statement, "We seemed like grasshoppers in our own eyes, and we looked the same to them." An ordinary sized man of 5 foot 8 inches next to a giant of over 10 feet tall and at least 5 feet wide looks kind of small in comparison.

So gigantic were they that the spies sent out by Moses considered themselves as mere grasshoppers compared to the Anakim (Numbers 13:28 ,33). Under Joshua, however, the Israelites destroyed many of the Anakim. A remnant of these giants took refuge among the Philistines in the cities of Gaza, Gath, and Ashdod (Joshua 11:21-22). Caleb, who brought news as a spy concerning them was eventually their destroyer (Joshua 15:14).

It was necessary for this race of giants to be completely destroyed in order to remove Satan's corrupt race of giants that stood in the way of God's people and their Promised Land. This was necessary in order to establish the children of Israel in their land in preparation for the coming Messiah.

#### **Joshua 10:40-42**

**So Joshua subdued the whole region, including the hill country, the Negev, the western foothills and the mountain slopes, together with all their kings. He left no survivors. He totally destroyed all who breathed, just as the LORD, the God of Israel, had commanded. Joshua subdued them from Kadesh Barnea to Gaza and from the whole region of Goshen to Gibeon. All these kings and their lands Joshua conquered in one campaign, because the LORD, the God of Israel, fought for Israel.**

Yet there were still some remaining giants that escaped and found refuge in the land of the Philistines. A few hundred years later David and his mighty men would once and for all do away with these giants.

Hence, we find a giant race among the Philistines and in Gath, in David's days (1 Samuel 17; 2 Samuel 21:15-22); an undesigned coincidence between the independent histories Joshua and 1 and 2 Samuel, confirming the truth of both. Their chief city Hebron became Caleb's possession for his faith, shown in having no fear of their giant stature since the Lord was on Israel's side (Joshua 15:14; Judges 1:20; compare Numbers 13:22,28,30-33; 14:24). They are represented on Egyptian monuments as tall and fair. The hieroglyphic Tanmahu represents Talmai, and one of his tribe is depicted on the tomb of Oimenaphthah I.

#### **1 Samuel 17:4-7**

**A champion named Goliath, who was from Gath, came out of the Philistine camp. He was over nine feet tall. He had a bronze helmet on his head and wore a coat of scale armor of bronze weighing five thousand shekels(194 lbs); on his legs he wore bronze greaves, and a bronze javelin was slung on his back. His spear shaft was like a weaver's rod, and its iron point weighed six hundred shekels(23 lbs). His shield bearer went ahead of him.**

Goliath was 6 cubits and a span in height, which is around 9 feet and 9 inches tall- 18 inches in a cubit and 9 inches in a span)

#### **2 Samuel 21:15-22**

**Once again there was a battle between the Philistines and Israel. David went down with his men to fight against the Philistines, and he became exhausted. And Ishbi-Benob, one of the descendants of Rapha, whose bronze spearhead weighed three hundred shekels(11 lbs) and who was armed with a new [sword], said he would kill David. But Abishai son of Zeruiah came to David's rescue; he struck the Philistine down and killed him. Then David's men swore to him, saying, "Never again will you go out with us to battle, so that the lamp of Israel will not be extinguished." In the course of time, there was another battle with the Philistines, at Gob. At that time Sibbecai the Hushathite killed Saph, one of the descendants of Rapha. In another battle with the Philistines at Gob, Elhanan son of Jaare-Oregim the Bethlehemite killed Goliath the Gittite, who had a spear with a shaft like a weaver's rod. In still another battle, which took place at Gath, there was a huge man with six fingers on each hand and six toes on each foot-twenty-four in all. He also was descended from Rapha. When he taunted Israel, Jonathan son of Shimeah, David's brother, killed him. These four were descendants of Rapha in Gath, and they fell at the hands of David and his men.**

## **1 Chronicles 20:4-8**

**In the course of time, war broke out with the Philistines, at Gezer. At that time Sibbecai the Hushathite killed Sippai, one of the descendants of the Rephaites, and the Philistines were subjugated. In another battle with the Philistines, Elhanan son of Jair killed Lahmi the brother of Goliath the Gittite, who had a spear with a shaft like a weaver's rod. In still another battle, which took place at Gath, **there was a huge man with six fingers on each hand and six toes on each foot-twenty-four in all.** He also was descended from Rapha. When he taunted Israel, Jonathan son of Shimea, David's brother, killed him. These were descendants of Rapha in Gath, and they fell at the hands of David and his men.**

### **A Probable Purpose of Satan Producing Giants**

It was the purpose of Satan and his fallen angels to corrupt the human race and thereby do away with pure Adamite stock through whom the seed of the woman should come. This would avert their own doom and make it possible for Satan and his kingdom to keep control of the planet earth indefinitely. It was said to Adam and Eve that the seed of the woman should defeat Satan and restore man's dominion-Genesis 3:15. The only way then for Satan to avoid the predicted defeat was to corrupt the pure Adamite line so that the coming of the seed of the woman into the world would be impossible. This, he tried to accomplish by sending some of his fallen angels to marry the daughters of men in (Genesis 6:1-4), and produce a nation of giants through them.

There are two such eruptions of fallen angels taught in (Genesis 6:4): There were giants in the earth in those days (before the flood); and also after that (after the flood), when the sons of God (fallen angels) came in unto the daughters of men, and they bore children to them (to the angels).

Satan almost succeeded in his plan during the first eruption, for all flesh had corrupted their ways upon the earth; and of all the multitudes, Noah and his sons were the only godly, righteous men who sought after God and were of pure Adamite lineage to be preserved by the ark- Genesis 6:8-13. The main object of the flood was to do away with all this satanic corruption, destroy the giants and ungodly people, and preserve the pure Adamite stock so as to make good the guarantee of the coming of the Seed of the woman as set forth in the plan of God.

Being defeated before the flood did not stop Satan from making another attempt to prevent the coming of the Redeemer, who was to be his final downfall. It was to his advantage that God had promised never to send another universal flood upon the earth. Satan therefore probably reasoned that he should make a second attempt to do away with Adamite stock. With the promise that God will never send another universal flood upon the earth. This is a probable explanation for the second group of fallen angels being sent to marry the daughters of men. Once again, the unions produced giants called REPHAIM or NEPHILIM, and races of them occupied the land of promise where the promised Seed of the woman should be born- promised in advance to Abraham. If Satan could establish a stronghold of these perverted giants in the Promised Land of Israel, the hope was that God could not bring the Seed of the woman through Abraham's lineage in that region occupied by the Nephilim.

God could not send another world wide flood to eliminate the giant races- not problem for the Lord. This explains why God had commanded Israel to kill them all, every last one of them, even to the last man, woman and child. Just as in the time of Noah, every man, woman and child with the exception of Noah and his family was destroyed by the flood. This ungodly corruption and contamination of sin had to be completely exterminated in order for God to fulfill His eternal plan and give the world its promised redeemer.

Now that the Redeemer has come, it appears that Satan is reserving his forces for a last stand at the second coming of Jesus Christ (Revelation 12:7-9). Remember, according to Jude 6 and 2 Peter 2:4-5, when fallen angels crossed the line to intermarry and produce these races of giants, they were judged by God and sent to the Abyss to await final judgment. Thus it was clear from Scripture that there were giants in the earth before and after the flood and that they came from an unholy union of fallen angels with the daughters of men.

So why is it important to know all of this:

- Satan adversely opposes the purpose of God and will do all he can to thwart it, to cause God's Word to become null and void- which is an impossible task by the way!
- One of the enemy's chief tactics is to introduce ungodly influences in order to contaminate, pollute, defile and corrupt people.
- God will judge and amputate such leprous corruption in the human race in order to preserve godliness. The Flood, Sodom and Gomorrah and the Canaanite nations that Israel exterminated. It is really the mercy of God to judge and purge such reprobate and irrevocable evil from the earth, in order to preserve future generations from being born in such lands, to be made subject to such evil that basically dooms their existence to wickedness. Though God gave them all an opportunity to repent, they choose not to, unlike Nineveh when Jonah preached a message of repentance to them, they repented and avoided God's judgment. That was how God dealt with the nations of the Old Testament. Now that we live in a dispensation of Grace, God deals with people and nations in quite a different manner.

Getting back to Noah, we see why God had decided to purge the earth of this race of Nephilim as a result of Satan poisoning the pure blood line of Adam's original pedigree lineage. With the exception of Noah and his family, it appears that the entire race at that time may have entirely become a mixture of fallen angels and men, having produced giants. God choose representative pairs of animals to perpetuate their species and God chose Noah and his family, to give mankind a new clean start after the flood.

#### **Genesis 6:12-14**

**God saw how corrupt the earth had become, for all the people on earth had corrupted their ways. So God said to Noah, "I am going to put an end to all people, for the earth is filled with violence because of them. I am surely going to destroy both them and the earth."**

#### **Job 22:15-17**

**"Will you keep to the old path that evil men have trod? They were carried off before their time, their foundations washed away by a flood. They said to God, 'Leave us alone! What can the Almighty do to us?'"**

In Genesis 6:9 we see that Noah was a righteous man and that he walked with God. This speaks of his moral character and godliness in following after the Lord. But this verse also states that he was, “blameless among the people of his time.”

The Hebrew word for “blameless” is *tamiym*, which means without blemish. It is a technical word for bodily perfection. Hence it is used of the sacrificial animals of the Old Covenant which had to be of pure stock without blemish (Exodus 12:5; 29:1; Leviticus 1-3; 3:1-6); without spot (Numbers 19:2; 28:3-11); and undefiled (Psalms 119:1).

OT:8549

*tamiym* (taw-meem’); from OT:8552; entire (literally, figuratively or morally); also (as noun) integrity, truth.

KJV - without blemish, complete, full, perfect, sincerely (-ity), sound, without spot, undefiled, upright (-ly), whole.

So bottom line, Noah and his family were both godly in character and of pure Adamite stock, unspoiled by the introduction of half-human and half-angelic Nephilim.

### 3. Ark Building Time

Up to 1850 A.D. there was no ship in the history of the world as large as the ark. The capacity of the ark was equivalent in tonnage to more than 600 freight cars, which would form a train about 4 miles long capable of handling over 90,000,000 pounds. The ark was easily big enough for all it was to hold. The fish and other sea creatures stayed in the sea. Insects were small as well as snakes and lizards. The average size of most mammals was no larger than a dog. The birds could have easily lodged in ceilings or been hung in cages. An ox is allowed 20 sq. ft. on a modern vessel. If this much room was allowed in the ark for each of the larger mammals there would have been ample room for all including food for a year and 17 days. Recent archaeological findings at Nippur disclose that the ark had a sewage system unsurpassed by that of any modern city and that there were openings for light and ventilation in each story.



#### Genesis 6:14-16

**So make yourself an ark of cypress wood; make rooms in it and coat it with pitch inside and out. This is how you are to build it: The ark is to be 450 feet long, 75 feet wide and 45 feet high. Make a roof for it and finish the ark to within 18 inches of the top. Put a door in the side of the ark and make lower, middle and upper decks.**

Remember Enoch, who walked with God and then was taken to heaven when he was 365 years old in Genesis 5:24. Before he was taken he had a son named Methuselah, which means “when he is dead it (the deluge) shall come.” He spoke prophetically of the flood, his son lived to a ripe old age of 969 years old. When he finally died, the flood came.

#### **Hebrews 11:5-6**

**By faith Enoch was taken from this life, so that he did not experience death; he could not be found, because God had taken him away. For before he was taken, he was commended as one who pleased God.**

#### **Jude 14-16**

**Enoch, the seventh from Adam, prophesied about these men: “See, the Lord is coming with thousands upon thousands of his holy ones to judge everyone, and to convict all the ungodly of all the ungodly acts they have done in the ungodly way, and of all the harsh words ungodly sinners have spoken against him.”**

Noah was also a preacher of righteousness, so, throughout the 100 years Noah and his family were building the ark, they were warning the people of the coming judgment if they did not repent. You can just imagine that word must have gotten around that a huge boat was being constructed far inland. In spite of how it looked and sounded at the time, Noah took God at His word and obeyed. Even though up to that time it had not yet rained on the earth. The whole earth was surrounded by a canopy of water in the sky that created a greenhouse affect globally- Genesis 1:7. Genesis 2:6 spoke of streams and a mist coming up from the earth and watering the whole surface of the ground.

#### **Hebrews 11:7**

**By faith Noah, when warned about things not yet seen, in holy fear built an ark to save his family. By his faith he condemned the world and became heir of the righteousness that comes by faith.**

The ark is a type of Jesus, when we are in him, we are saved from the judgment of sin!

#### **Genesis 6:18-19**

**“But I will establish my covenant with you, and you will enter the ark- you and your sons and your wife and your sons’ wives with you.”**

Imagine the miracle of being able to secure a pair of every animal, male and female that God had created and place them all in the ark.

#### **Genesis 6:19-22**

**“You are to bring into the ark two of all living creatures, male and female, to keep them alive with you. Two of every kind of bird, of every kind of animal and of every kind of creature that moves along the ground will come to you to be kept alive. You are to take every kind of food that is to be eaten and store it away as food for you and for them.” Noah did everything just as God commanded him.**

According to Scripture, God caused all these animals to come on their own accord in order to preserve their own species.

#### **Genesis 7:8-10**

**Pairs of clean and unclean animals, of birds and of all creatures that move along the ground, male and female, came to Noah and entered the ark, as God had commanded Noah.**

## 4. The Deluge

In Genesis 7:1, *“The LORD then said to Noah, “Go into the ark, you and your whole family, because I have found you righteous in this generation.”* Around 100 years had passed and apparently no one listened or were interested in Noah’s pleas to escape the coming judgment.

### **Genesis 7:6-8**

**Noah was six hundred years old when the floodwaters came on the earth. And Noah and his sons and his wife and his son’s wives entered the ark to escape the waters of the flood.**

When the time came for the flood to begin, Genesis 7:16 states, *“Then the Lord shut Noah in.”* When Noah and his family and all the animals entered the ark, God himself shut its door to insure their safety against the raging flood in Genesis 7:16. In this way God sealed the judgment against the ungodly who had refused to heed Noah’s warnings.

### **Matthew 24:37-41**

**As it was in the days of Noah, so it will be at the coming of the Son of Man. For in the days before the flood, people were eating and drinking, marrying and giving in marriage, up to the day Noah entered the ark; and they knew nothing about what would happen until the flood came and took them all away. That is how it will be at the coming of the Son of Man. Two men will be in the field; one will be taken and the other left. Two women will be grinding with a hand mill; one will be taken and the other left.**

### **1 Peter 3:20**

**Who disobeyed long ago when God waited patiently in the days of Noah while the ark was being built. In it only a few people, eight in all, were saved through water,**

When the catastrophe came, the physical means employed were twofold, namely the breaking up of the “springs of the great deep” and the opening of “the flood gates of heaven” in Genesis 7:11. But the rain is spoken of as continuing as a main cause for only 40 days, while the waters continued to prevail for 150 days in Genesis 7:24. The ark rose to a height of 20 feet above the highest mountain, Mount Everest.

### **Genesis 7:17-24**

**For forty days the flood kept coming on the earth, and as the waters increased they lifted the ark high above the earth. The waters rose and increased greatly on the earth, and the ark floated on the surface of the water. They rose greatly on the earth, and all the high mountains under the entire heavens were covered. The waters rose and covered the mountains to a depth of more than twenty feet. Every living thing that moved on the earth perished--birds, livestock, wild animals, all the creatures that swarm over the earth, and all mankind. Everything on dry land that had the breath of life in its nostrils died. Every living thing on the face of the earth was wiped out; men and animals and the creatures that move along the ground and the birds of the air were wiped from the earth. Only Noah was left, and those with him in the ark. The waters flooded the earth for a hundred and fifty days.**

God had sent a wind over the earth, and the waters receded. Also the springs of the deep and the floodgates (canopy) of the heavens had been closed, and the rain stopped. Eventually, the Ark came to rest on Mount Ararat.

## **Genesis 8:1-4**

**But God remembered Noah and all the wild animals and the livestock that were with him in the ark, and he sent a wind over the earth, and the waters receded. Now the springs of the deep and the floodgates of the heavens had been closed, and the rain had stopped falling from the sky. The water receded steadily from the earth. At the end of the hundred and fifty days the water had gone down, and on the seventeenth day of the seventh month the ark came to rest on the mountains of Ararat.**

## **ARARAT**

[AIR uh rat]-the mountainous region between the Black Sea and the Caspian Sea where Noah's ark rested when the Flood subsided (Genesis 8:4). From this region streams converge to form the Tigris and the Euphrates Rivers. Originally, Ararat referred to the whole mountainous area; its use, however has gradually come to be restricted to the huge volcanic mountain at the borders of Turkey, Iran, and the Soviet Union. This volcanic mountain includes two peaks, 5,600 meters (17,000 feet) and 4,200 meters (13,000 feet) above sea level. The taller peak rises 920 meters (3,000 feet) above the line of perpetual snow. Some people believe that Noah's ark still rests on Mount Ararat, and occasional expeditions have been launched to find it. However, shifting glaciers, avalanches, hidden crevices, and sudden storms make the mountain so difficult to climb that it is referred to by the native inhabitants of that region as "the Painful Mountain."

Here it rested 40 days before the water subsided sufficiently to suggest disembarking when a raven (which could easily find its food on the carcasses of the animals which had been destroyed) was sent forth, and did not return (verse 7); but a dove sent out at the same time found no rest and returned empty to the ark (verse 9). After 7 days, however, it was sent out again and returned with a fresh olive leaf (verse 11). After 7 days more the dove was sent forth again and did not return.

After 56 days of more waiting Noah and his family departed from the ark. Noah, his family and all the animals were in the ark for 1 year and 17 days. First God told them to enter the ark 7 days before the flood would come- Genesis 7:4-10. The deluge began on the 17<sup>th</sup> day of the 2<sup>nd</sup> month- Genesis 7:11. They left the ark on the 27<sup>th</sup> day of the second month the following year- Genesis 8:14.

Compared with other traditions of the Deluge the resemblances are striking; however, the Biblical account is obviously most credible. It is most interesting that there is a general knowledge throughout the ancient world of a global flood long ago. Certainly the general prevalence of such traditions strongly confirms the reality of the Biblical story.

The Egyptian Tradition: An Egyptian legend of the Deluge is referred to in Plato's Timaeus, where the gods are said to have purified the earth by a great flood of water from which only a few shepherds escaped by climbing to the summit of a high mountain.

The Indian Tradition: In Indian mythology there is no reference to the Flood in the Rig Veda, but in the laws of Manu we are told that a fish said to Manu, "A deluge will sweep all creatures away ..... Build a vessel and worship me. When the waters rise enter the vessel and I will save thee."

The Chinese Tradition: The Chinese tradition is embodied in sublime language in their book of Li-Ki: "And now the pillars of heaven were broken, the earth shook to its very foundation; the sun and the stars changed their motions; the earth fell to pieces, and the waters enclosed within its bosom burst forth with violence, and overflowed. Man having rebelled against heaven, the system of the universe was totally disordered, and the grand harmony of nature destroyed.

The Greek Tradition: The Greeks, according to Plutarch, had five different traditions of the Deluge, that of Deucalion being the most important. According to this, Prometheus warned his son Deucalion of the flood which Zeus had resolved to bring upon the earth by reason of its wickedness.

The British Tradition: In Britain there is a Druid legend that on account of the profligacy of mankind, the Supreme Being sent a flood upon the earth when “the waves of the sea lifted themselves on high round the border of Britain. The rain poured down from heaven and the waters covered the earth.”

American Indian Traditions: Among the American Indians traditions of the Deluge were found by travelers to be widely disseminated. Mr. Catlin says, “Among the 120 different tribes which I visited in North, South, and Central America, not a tribe exists that has not related to me distinct or vague traditions of such a calamity, in which one, or three, or eight persons were saved above the waters upon the top of a high mountain.”

The Babylonian Tradition: The most instructive of these traditions are those which have come down to us from Babylonia, which until recently were known to us only through the Greek historian Berosus of the 4th century BC, who narrates that a great deluge happened at some indefinite time in the past during the reign of Xisuthrus, son of Ardates. Xisuthrus was warned beforehand by the deity Cronos, and told to build a ship and take with him his friends and relations and all the different animals with all necessary food and trust himself fearlessly to the deep, whereupon he built “a vessel 5 stadia (3,000 ft.) long and 2 stadia (1,200 ft.) broad.” After the flood subsided Xisuthrus, like Noah, sent out birds which returned to him again. After waiting some days and sending them out a second time, they returned with their feet tinged with mud.

### **Dry Ground**

Once it was safe for Noah and the animals to emerge from the ark onto dry ground, God gave them the green light. They must have been so grateful to step on dry ground after being on the ark for just over a year. Noah was grateful to the Lord who had delivered him from the Flood. After the Flood he built an altar to God and made a sacrifice. Just as Abel offered a blood sacrifice for the atonement of sin, Noah also followed in those godly footsteps- this was God’s method of dealing with sin and restoring fellowship. Certainly it contributed to God making a covenant with Noah and his sons, to never flood the earth again.

**Genesis 8:20- Then Noah built an altar to the LORD and, taking some of all the clean animals and clean birds, he sacrificed burnt offerings on it.**

### **Genesis 8:21-22**

**The LORD smelled the pleasing aroma and said in his heart: “Never again will I curse the ground because of man, even though every inclination of his heart is evil from childhood. And never again will I destroy all living creatures, as I have done. As long as the earth endures, seedtime and harvest, cold and heat, summer and winter, day and night will never cease.”**



## 5. God's Covenant with Noah

God's Blessing and Directives for Mankind after the Flood:

- Genesis 9:1: The Lord also blessed Noah and restored the creation command, "Be fruitful and increase in number and fill the earth." These were the same words He had spoken earlier to Adam in Genesis 1:28.
- Genesis 9:2: The animals pre-flood evidently had a certain relationship with man, they had come calmly to the ark in close proximity with each other and with Noah and his family. After the flood, in order to protect mankind, God sovereignly put the fear of man into animals.
- Genesis 9:3: After the flood, man's diet changes to include the consumption of animals and animals eating other animals. Before the flood in Genesis 1:29-30, man was given fruit from trees to eat, and all the animals on the ground were given every green plant for food- they were all vegetarians, but no longer.
- Genesis 9:4-6: We are instructed not to consume blood, for the life of the flesh is in the blood. Blood is sacred to God back then and today. If a person murders another person, according to God's universal law, his/her life should be made forfeit for the life that was taken from the earth.

### **Genesis 9:6**

**"Whoever sheds the blood of man, by man shall his blood be shed; for in the image of God has God made man."**

### **Leviticus 17:11 (KJV)**

**For the life of the flesh is in the blood: and I have given it to you upon the altar to make an atonement for your souls: for it is the blood that maketh an atonement for the soul.**

This is how God views murder, of people walking on the earth or in the womb, blood is spilled in both cases, and in God's eyes, abortion is murder too.

God makes an everlasting covenant with all life on the earth to last throughout all generations; He will never again destroy all life on the earth by a flood. As a sign of this covenant, the presence of a rainbow appears for the first time and becomes a perpetual reminder for us and God that even though man is wicked and deserves to be wiped out, God will honor His covenant with mankind and will not destroy the earth with another flood.

### **Psalms 104:6-9**

**You covered it with the deep as with a garment; the waters stood above the mountains. But at your rebuke the waters fled, at the sound of your thunder they took to flight; they flowed over the mountains, they went down into the valleys, to the place you assigned for them. You set a boundary they cannot cross; never again will they cover the earth.**

Remember, up to that point there was a canopy of water that encircled the entire globe with a layer of water vapor- Genesis 1:7. This protected life on earth from harmful ultra-violet rays from the sun and created a lush greenhouse effect. This canopy acted as a shield from the sun's harmful rays and prolonged man's life to many hundreds of years. Remember, Methuselah lived to almost 1000 years. Without direct sunlight passing through and no rain, there was never a rainbow to be seen. When the flood took place, the canopy collapsed, contributing to the flood, but also creating the current weather systems and patterns we now experience today.

After the flood, the introduction of “cold and heat, summer and winter” in Genesis 8:22 is mentioned by God as a perpetuating experience. Without the protective canopy, life on earth changed dramatically after the flood, deserts and polar caps developed, distinct seasons of the year came into being.

In Genesis 6:3, God spoke prophetically that the days of man’s life would be shortened to 120 years. This became a reality after the flood. With the protective canopy removed, the harmful rays of the sun accelerated the aging process of mankind. It was probably a good thing if you can imagine an evil person becoming increasingly evil for hundreds of years due to such a long life. That kind of perfected wickedness is what probably resulted in God’s judgment back then. This is also why God prevented man from eating from the tree of life in Genesis 3:22, to live a natural life forever in a sinful fallen state.

### **Genesis 6:3**

**Then the LORD said, “My Spirit will not contend with man forever, for he is mortal; his days will be a hundred and twenty years.”**

Now Noah had three sons and through these three men came the current nations of the earth. Every human being alive today is a descendant of Adam and Eve, all the way through Noah and then one of the three sons of Noah.

### **Genesis 9:18-19**

**The sons of Noah who came out of the ark were Shem, Ham and Japheth. (Ham was the father of Canaan.) These were the three sons of Noah, and from them came the people who were scattered over the earth.**

Noah became the first tiller of the soil and keeper of vineyards after the Flood. Then came the element of intoxication. Noah entered upon agricultural pursuits and began to cultivate the vine. Whether in ignorance of its properties or the post-flood climate changes, we do not know, but Noah drank wine until intoxicated and shamefully exposed himself in his tent. Ham, seeing the nakedness of his father, displayed a lascivious bent of character and told his brothers, who reverently covered their father with a garment, walking backward that they might not see his nakedness. For this they received their father’s blessing, whereas Ham reaped for his son Canaan a prophetic curse.

### **Genesis 9:20-27**

**Noah, a man of the soil, proceeded to plant a vineyard. When he drank some of its wine, he became drunk and lay uncovered inside his tent. Ham, the father of Canaan, saw his father’s nakedness and told his two brothers outside. But Shem and Japheth took a garment and laid it across their shoulders; then they walked in backward and covered their father’s nakedness. Their faces were turned the other way so that they would not see their father’s nakedness. When Noah awoke from his wine and found out what his youngest son had done to him, he said, “Cursed be Canaan! The lowest of slaves will he be to his brothers.” He also said, “Blessed be the LORD, the God of Shem! May Canaan be the slave of Shem. May God extend the territory of Japheth; may Japheth live in the tents of Shem, and may Canaan be his slave.”**

After this we hear no more of the patriarch but the sum of his years.

### **Genesis 9:28-29**

**After the flood Noah lived 350 years. Altogether, Noah lived 950 years, and then he died.**

## F. Table of Nations

It is interesting to note that all races, colors, and distinct physical characteristics of men came into being after the flood. Since Noah and his three sons and their wives were the only survivors of the great deluge. Even though today we have many distinct ethnic groups, we must remember we all came from the same family tree! Now that we are in Christ, the Bible makes it clear that race and gender is not a spiritual characteristic. We all have the same equal standing before God through Jesus Christ!

### **Galatians 3:28-29**

**There is neither Jew nor Greek, slave nor free, male nor female, for you are all one in Christ Jesus.**

### **Genesis 10:1**

**This is the account of Shem, Ham and Japheth, Noah's sons, who themselves had sons after the flood.**

In general, Japheth settled in the north, west and east Europe and in Asia; Ham settled in Africa, parts of Arabia and the land God promised to Abraham; Shem settled in the countries surrounding Palestine to the east. There are evidences they say, that Hebrew was the original language of the whole earth. It is noteworthy that it was the one God used to give His revelation of the Old Testament to man.

### **The Descendants of Shem:** Genesis 10:22-30

The sons of Shem: Elam, Asshur, Arphaxad, Lud and Aram. The sons of Aram: Uz, Hul, Gether and Meshech. Arphaxad was the father of Shelah, and Shelah the father of Eber. Two sons were born to Eber: One was named Peleg, because in his time the earth was divided; his brother was named Joktan. Joktan was the father of Almodad, Sheleph, Hazarmaveth, Jerah, Hadoram, Uzal, Diklah, Obal, Abimael, Sheba, Ophir, Havilah and Jobab. All these were sons of Joktan. The region where they lived stretched from Mesha toward Sephar, in the eastern hill country.

Strong's Concordance OT:8035

Shem (shame); the same as OT:8034; name; Shem, a son of Noah (often includ. his posterity) implication honor, authority, character: KJV - Sem, Shem.

The descendents of Shem are very important in the Old Testament, because it was through his lineage that Abraham, the nation of Israel and Jesus Christ, born of the virgin Mary, were all descendants of Shem- Genesis 11:10-32; Luke 3:23-38; Romans 9:4-5.

### **The Descendents of Ham:** Genesis 10:6-7, 13-19

The sons of Ham: Cush, Mizraim, Put and Canaan. The sons of Cush: Seba, Havilah, Sabtah, Raamah and Sabteca. The sons of Raamah: Sheba and Dedan. Mizraim was the father of the Ludites, Anamites, Lehabites, Naphtuhites, Pathrusites, Casluhites (from whom the Philistines came) and Caphtorites. Canaan was the father of Sidon his firstborn, and of the Hittites, Jebusites, Amorites, Girgashites, Hivites, Arkites, Sinites, Arvadites, Zemarites and Hamathites. Later the Canaanite clans scattered and the borders of Canaan reached from Sidon toward Gerar as far as Gaza, and then toward Sodom, Gomorrah, Admah and Zeboiim, as far as Lasha.

Strong's Concordance OT:2526

Cham (khawm); the same as OT:2525; hot (from the tropical habitat); Cham, a son of Noah; also (as a patronymic) his descendants or their country: KJV - Ham.

Of the nationalities regarded as descending from Ham, none can be described as really black. First on the list as being the darkest is Cush or Ethiopia Genesis 10:6, after which comes Mitsrayim or Egypt, then Put or Libya and Canaan last. The sons or descendants of each of these are then taken in turn and it is noteworthy that some of them, like the Ethiopians and the Canaanites, spoke Sem, and not Hamitic.

The Egyptian KEM (Egypt is singularly the land of Ham, Psalms 78:51; 105:23), “black”; the sun-burnt and those whose soil is black, as Ethiopia means. Father (i.e. ancestor) of Cush (Ethiopia), Mizraim (EGYPT), Phut (Libya) and Canaan. These refer to races, not individuals. Egypt being the first civilized was singled out as the chief country of Hamite settlements. Solid grandeur characterizes the Hamitic architecture, as in the earliest of Egypt, Babylonia, and southern Arabia. The first steps in the arts and sciences seemingly are due to the Hamites. The earliest empires were theirs, their power of organization being great. Material rather than moral greatness was theirs. Hence their civilization, though early, decayed sooner than that of the Semitic and Japhetic races.

**The Descendants of Japheth:** Genesis 10:2-5

The sons of Japheth: Gomer, Magog, Madai, Javan, Tubal, Meshech and Tiras. The sons of Gomer: Ashkenaz, Riphath and Togarmah. The sons of Javan: Elishah, Tarshish, the Kittim and the Rodanim. (From these the maritime peoples spread out into their territories by their clans within their nations, each with its own language.)

Strong’s Concordance OT:3315

Yepheth (yeh’-feth); from OT:6601; expansion; Jepheth, a son of Noah; also his posterity: KJV - Japheth.



### **Sons of Shem:**

**Elam-** Progenitor of the Elamites who settled near the Persian Gulf- (1 Chr. 1:17; Jer. 49:34-39).

**Assur-** Progenitor of the Assyrians- (Num. 24:22-24; Hos. 14:3).

**Arphaxad-** Progenitor of the Israelites, Edomites, Moabites, Ammonites, Ishmaelites, Midianites, and other tribes of Asia- (Gen. 11:10-32; 17:20; 25:1-18; 36:1-43).

**Joktan-** Progenitor of the Arabians.

**Lud-** Progenitor of the Lydians of Asia Minor, and the Ludim of Chaledea and Persia.

**Aram-** Progenitor of the Aramaeans, later called Syrians.

### **Sons of Ham:**

**Cush-** Progenitor of various Ethiopian tribes that settled down south of Egypt and also overran Arabia, Babylonia, and India.- (1 Chr. 1:8-10).

**Mizraim-** Progenitor of various Egyptian tribes. Mizraim means double. Tribes of the double Egypt (upper and lower Egypt)- (Ps. 78:51; 105:23-27; 106:22).

**Put-** Progenitor of the Libyans and other tribes of northern Africa- (Ezekiel 27:10; 30:5; 38:5).

**Canaan-** Progenitor of the Philistines, Amorites and Hittites, and the people who settled mainly in Palestine, Arabia, Tyre, Sidon, and other parts of the land promised to Abraham- (Gen. 15:18-21; Josh. 12).

### **Sons of Japheth:**

Japheth means enlargement or extension. This was true of him, for his posterity spread over all the earth.

**Gomer-** Progenitor of the ancient Galatians and Phrygians, from which came the natives of northern Europe known as the Gauls and Celts, and in later times as the Germans, French, Welsh, Irish, Britons and various Anglo-Saxon races. These all came from the three sons of Gomer: Ashkenaz, Riphath, and Togarmah.

**Magog-** Progenitor of the Scythians and Tartars, whose descendents predominate in modern Russia. Was also a general name of the country north of the Caucasus mountains which are between the Black and Caspian seas- (1 Chr. 1:5; Ezek. 38:2; 39:6; Rev. 20:8).

**Madai-** Progenitor of the ancient Medes, Persians, and perhaps the Hindoos- (1 Chr. 1:5).

**Javan-** Progenitor of the Greeks, Italians, Spaniards, Portuguese and other nations through Elishah, Tarshish, and Dodanim- (Isa. 66:19; Ezk. 27:13, 19).

**Kittim-** Progenitor of those from Cyprus and Mediterranean coasts- (Num. 24:24; Isa. 23:1, 12).

**Tubal-** Progenitor of the Iberians, Georgians, Cappadocians, and other Asiatic and European races.

**Meshech-** Progenitor of Muscovite tribes that now inhabit Russia.

**Tiras-** Progenitor of the Thracians and perhaps the Etruscans who migrated to Italy.

**Genesis 10:32- These are the clans of Noah's sons, according to their lines of descent, within their nations. From these the nations spread out over the earth after the flood.**

### **Nimrod**

The Hebrew name Nimrod means "let us rebel," given by his contemporaries to Nimrod as one who ever had in his mouth such words to stir up his band to rebellion. Nimrod subverted the existing patriarchal order of society by setting up a chieftainship based on personal valor and maintained by aggression.

### **Genesis 10:8-12**

**Cush was the father of Nimrod, who grew to be a mighty warrior on the earth. He was a mighty hunter before the LORD; that is why it is said, "Like Nimrod, a mighty hunter before the LORD." The first centers of his kingdom were Babylon, Erech, Akkad and Calneh, in Shinar. From that land he went to Assyria, where he built Nineveh, Rehoboth Ir, Calah and Resen, which is between Nineveh and Calah; that is the great city.**

Nimrod's designation as a "hunter" of men, clearly connects him with the founding of the military state based on absolute force and tyranny. He lorded it over others, hunting and destroying all who opposed him in his despotic rule over men. This is the meaning understood by Josephus. Josephus says that Nimrod persuaded men not to ascribe their happiness to God, but to him as the cause of it. He became a great leader; taught men to centralize; and defied God to send another flood, hence the tower of Babel was built for the purpose of astrology and a means of protection from another flood.

Nimrod, a Hamite intruded into Shem's territory, violently set up an empire of conquest, beginning with Babel, built in present day Iraq. Babel was a symbol of world power in hostility to God.

It is said that Nimrod hunted down wild beasts also, which were killing many people, and taught men to build walls around cities for protection against them. He established the first kingdom and the first great universal false religion opposing God, since the flood of Noah. This was done "before the Lord," that is, openly in the presence of God, with all defiance. That is why God came down to see Babel and then took action to counteract the rebellion of Nimrod.

The later Babylonians spoke Semitic, but the oldest inscriptions are Turanian or Cushite. Tradition points to Babylon's Cushite origin by making Belus son of Poseidon (the sea) and Libya (Ethiopia). Nimrod was the Bel, Belus, or Baal, i.e. lord of Babel, its founder. Worshipped (as the monuments testify) as Bilu Nipra or Bel Nimrod, i.e, the god of the chase. He abandoned Babel for a time after the miraculous confusion of tongues, and went and founded Asshur and Nineveh.

## 1. The Tower of Babel

In the 100 years after the flood, mankind traveled from Mt. Ararat in Armenia to the east of the Euphrates where they settled.

### **Genesis 11:1-4**

**Now the whole world had one language and a common speech. As men moved eastward, they found a plain in Shinar and settled there. They said to each other, "Come, let's make bricks and bake them thoroughly." They used brick instead of stone, and tar for mortar. Then they said, "Come, let us build ourselves a city, with a tower that reaches to the heavens, so that we may make a name for ourselves and not be scattered over the face of the whole earth."**

A Babylonian description of the tower of Babel discovered in 1876 indicates there was a grand court 900 x 1,156 ft. and a smaller one, 450 x 1,056 ft., inside of which was a platform with walls about it having four gates on each side. In the center stood the tower with many small shrines at the base dedicated to various gods. The tower itself was 300 ft. high with decreased width in stages from the lowest to the highest point. Each was a square. On the very top platform measuring 60 x 80 ft. was a sanctuary for the god Bel-Merodach and signs of the Zodiac. The builders evidently finished the tower, for the work was stopped on the city only.

### **Genesis 11:5-9**

**But the LORD came down to see the city and the tower that the men were building. The LORD said, "If as one people speaking the same language they have begun to do this, then nothing they plan to do will be impossible for them. Come, let us go down and confuse their language so they will not understand each other." So the LORD scattered them from there over all the earth, and they stopped building the city. That is why it was called Babel- because there the LORD confused the language of the whole world. From there the LORD scattered them over the face of the whole earth.**

That is saying something when God made the statement, *“If as one people speaking the same language they have begun to do this, then nothing they plan to do will be impossible for them.”* The power of unity, for good or for evil!

Supernaturally, God caused all the people to take on different languages so they could no longer understand each other. As a result, the people were scattered as was God’s intent. History has shown that when men come together in large groups, Satan gets in there and perverts it for evil. By God scattering the people of the earth, there is a greater likelihood they will seek God instead of building a secular world empire that can magnify sin.

### **Acts 17:26-28**

**From one man he made every nation of men, that they should inhabit the whole earth; and he determined the times set for them and the exact places where they should live. God did this so that men would seek him and perhaps reach out for him and find him, though he is not far from each one of us.**

## 2. The Division of the Earth

Men were not divided as to tongues and nations until after the event of Genesis 11:1-9. Hence, Genesis 10 gives the earliest division of men after the confusion of tongues and before the division of the earth into continents and islands which took place in the days of Peleg.

### **Genesis 10:25**

**Two sons were born to Eber: One was named Peleg, because in his time the earth was divided; his brother was named Joktan.**

OT:6389

Peleg (peh’-leg); the same as OT:6388; earthquake; Peleg, a son of Shem: KJV - Peleg.

This explains the word Peleg. In his days the earth was divided into continents and islands, after the various nations were scattered abroad on all the one land mass at the time of the divine judgment of Genesis 11:1-9. When you consider the sons of Shem, Ham and Japheth, it gives one an idea of the origin of the various races of men and shows clearly God’s original plan was to have separate races of various colors and distinct types after the flood. It is plainly evident that God segregated and scattered the people abroad on the face of the earth and then divided the one land mass into islands and continents as it is today so they might seek after God and find Him.

Bottom line, God wants every human being to be reconciled back to him- 1 Timothy 2:4, *“God who wants all men to be saved and to come to a knowledge of the truth.”* God is the judge of all men- Hebrews 12:23, *“You have come to God, the judge of all men.”*

Before Jesus came to earth, God set a standard of salvation that used the human conscience as the judge. If men sought after God and followed their conscience as God revealed himself, God would be the judge of their hearts after death.

### **Romans 2:14-16**

**Indeed, when Gentiles, who do not have the law, do by nature things required by the law, they are a law for themselves, even though they do not have the law, since they show that the requirements of the law are written on their hearts, their consciences also bearing witness, and their thoughts now accusing, now even defending them. This will take place on the day when God will judge men’s secrets through Jesus Christ, as my gospel declares.**

**The Pentateuch**

But now that Jesus has come, God expects all mankind to put their faith in his Son in order to receive salvation. Jesus said in John 14:6-7, *“I am the way and the truth and the life. No one comes to the Father except through me.”*

**Acts 4:12**

**“Salvation is found in no one else, for there is no other name under heaven given to men by which we must be saved.”**

**Acts 17:28-31**

**“For in him we live and move and have our being. As some of your own poets have said, ‘We are his offspring.’ Therefore since we are God’s offspring, we should not think that the divine being is like gold or silver or stone- an image made by man’s design and skill. In the past God overlooked such ignorance, **but now he commands all people everywhere to repent.** For he has set a day when he will judge the world with justice by the man he has appointed. He has given proof of this to all men by raising him from the dead.”**

**Unit 3 Review:**

What was going on in the earth that brought about its eventual destruction through the flood?

---

---

---

What were the Nephilim and why were they introduced into the earth?

---

---

---

Why was Joshua and the children of Israel instructed to completely destroy all of the Canaanites?

---

---

---

What aspects concerning God’s use for the ark and/or its construction is amazing to you?

---

---

So, how was God able to bring such a flood that the entire earth was submerged, including the highest mountain?

---

---

---

What was the first thing Noah did once God let them out of the ark?

---

---

How did life for mankind change after the flood?

---

---

---

Generally, where did the descendants of Noah's three sons migrate to?

---

---

What makes Shem's descendants unique over his other brothers?

---

---

Who was Nimrod, what did he build, and what did God do about it and why?

---

---

---

What significant event occurred during the days of a man named "Peleg" and why?

---

---

---

## II. The Patriarchs

Before we talk about Abraham and the patriarchs, we need to lay a foundation concerning blood covenant. The basis by which God and the ancient civilizations entered into agreement with one another. If we go to certain parts of the world today, the practice of covenants in blood are still as active as they were thousands of years ago.

To our western mindset, the subject of blood covenant may conjure up images of barbaric primitives or aboriginal practices of ignorant peoples. Yet the whole concept of covenant was established by God Himself as a solemn legal contract or agreement. Even today we practice many forms of covenant in our society and do not even realize it. We will discuss these things in greater depth in the proceeding pages.

I am absolutely convinced that the subject of blood covenant is one of the most important and misunderstood subjects in the Bible. When the child of God fully grasps in his/her spirit the ramifications of these powerful truths, all things truly become possible to them who believe as Jesus said in Mark 9:23.

### A. The Covenant

The Bible is divided into two divisions: the Old Testament and the New Testament. The word testament comes from a Latin word, *testamentum*. The more proper name for these two divisions; however, is “covenant.” So the Bible is really the story of an Old Covenant and a New Covenant. So from now on, I’ll be using the word covenant rather than testament.

Now, in the Bible, the word covenant means a binding agreement between two parties. The Hebrew word for covenant is *Berith*. The Greek word is *Diatheke*. It actually means to “cut covenant.” By definition, it is an agreement to:

**“Cut a covenant by the shedding of blood and walking between pieces of flesh.”**

So the two divisions in the Bible are about an Old Blood Covenant and a New Blood Covenant!

**A blood covenant between two parties is the closest, the most enduring, the most solemn and the most sacred of all contracts!**

The first covenant recorded in the Bible was between God and Adam and Eve when an animal was slain and its skin used as a covering for them in Genesis 3:21. Job had a covenant with God, a life keeping Covenant, when he finally got his mind on his Covenant instead of his problems. We can’t get anything from God with self-pity which is selfishness in manifestation. God cut the Covenant with Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, and Moses. The subject of blood covenant is huge in the Bible, without it there would be no salvation for mankind- PERIOD!

Let's now look at a covenant of blood, or the covenant of strong friendship; for example, Abraham through blood covenant become the friend of God. The covenant God cut with Abraham was a covenant of strong friendship, but the New Covenant Jesus cut on our behalf was a covenant of adoption into the family of God- a much stronger covenant relationship.

## 1. Covenant Dynamics

So what are some reasons people enter into covenant?

**Protection-** A covenant partner is bound to come to your aid when in trouble.

**Provision-** What is yours is mine and what is mine is yours.

**Posterity-** Descendants are covered and benefit from the relationship.

**Relationship-** A deep love, devotion and respect for each other.

The blood covenant is a very sacred covenant. It is the most sacred covenant that mankind has ever known or has ever adhered to. Dr. Livingstone and Mr. Stanley were in Africa for many years as missionaries, and in all that time, they never heard of a covenant being broken.

If someone in Africa broke the covenant, then his own wife, brother, and relatives would hunt him down and kill him. He would not be able to go very far. Everybody would be on his trail if he broke the covenant. That is how sacred the blood covenant was. It could not be annulled and the children of the persons who entered unto the covenant, right through to the third or fourth generations, would uphold the covenant. They would keep the covenant with the children of the other covenant partners. That covenant could never be annulled. If the grand child of a covenant person met up with the grand child of a covenant partner hundreds of years later, then he and that person would own and share everything that they owned. That covenant would never be cancelled. This is the basic structure of a covenant.

Blood covenant is also known as a covenant of strong friendship, it is the strongest relationship known to man, to become blood brothers. A red thread woven through clothing or a head dress signified that individual has entered into blood covenant with someone else or another tribe.

It absolutely cannot be broken. If we were to enter into blood covenant with someone, we promise to give them our life, our love and our protection forever, "till death do we part." Just like marriage, which is also a blood covenant. When a man consummates his marriage with his virgin wife, blood is emitted from the act of sexual intercourse. The blood covenant is consummated when the hymen is broken. Now we can see why God says pre and extra-marital physical intercourse is a sin- Exodus 20:14; Matthew 5:27; 1 Corinthians 6:18; 10:8; Galatians 5:19. Sexual immorality is an offense to the covenant of marriage that God has instituted.

### **Hebrews 13:4**

**Marriage should be honored by all, and the marriage bed kept pure, for God will judge the adulterer and all the sexually immoral.**

Many Christians who are saved and filled with the Holy Spirit and do not realize they have a Covenant with God. We have covenant with God and it is a blood covenant. God used the vehicle of blood because of its sacredness, the life of the flesh is in the blood. The blood is the sign of what is sacred, blood is not what makes the covenant sacred however. The sacred thing is the covenant itself, WORDS, are the most sacred things that exist. The power of life and death are in the tongue. God and His Word are one! The universe was created and is governed by the Word of God. Words are eternal, and every word that is spoken on earth is recorded in heaven and written in books.

Jesus said every idle word that is spoken we will give an account, by our words we are saved or condemned. We reap what we sow. WORDS are HOLY !!!

### **Matthew 12:36-37**

**But I tell you that men will have to give account on the day of judgment for every careless word they have spoken. For by your words you will be acquitted, and by your words you will be condemned.”**

The Word of the Living contact is a contract that can be interpreted only one way. Lawyers spend hours choosing words that will describe and explain the contract so it is not interpreted incorrectly. The Bible is a Covenant contract (OLD and NEW)- sacred and legal in the court of heaven.

### **Malachi 3:16**

**Then those who feared the LORD talked with each other, and the LORD listened and heard. A scroll of remembrance was written in his presence concerning those who feared the LORD and honored his name.**

There is a blessing and a curse to a covenant. When it comes to establishing a covenant, they first sit down and negotiate the conditions of the covenant, what is it going to address. For instance there are two tribes, one is weaker than the other. So the weaker goes to the stronger and strikes a covenant saying if our enemy comes against us, your tribe will come and fight with us. But the stronger tribe will say what will we get out of it. The weaker may say we are good farmers, so we will feed your tribe if you fight for us. Those are the articles of the covenant, that is the LAW of that covenant. You help us fight and I will help you with your food, now we have established a law concerning this covenant, a covenant of war and of provision.

So now we have a covenant with one another and a Law concerning this covenant. Next, we establish a curse that is associated with the covenant. We would go through all the curses if you do not feed me like you are suppose to or fight for me against an enemy tribe; for instance, may you die of the ring worm of the nose. Now we have a covenant, a Law and a Curse. You would think twice about breaking that covenant. They will exchange gifts with one another and now there is a blessing on this covenant. We enter into the agreement, the cup is raised and the covenant is cut. They would never steal or hurt one another. Now one of them may come over and steal one of your wives, but that was not mentioned in the Law of the Covenant- nothing wrong with that. So no ring worm of the nose because it was not mentioned in the law. But when the conditions of the covenant come to be fulfilled, we better do it.

Obviously with the divorce rate so high in our nation, people are ignorant of the marriage covenant. Particularly in the case of Christian couples entering into marriage covenant before God, it is a covenant in blood- Malachi 2:14; Proverbs 2:17.

When the bride and groom feed each other the wedding cake, this is an ancient act of covenant, though it has been watered down to a tradition. However, originally it meant they were saying symbolically, “I’m coming into you and you into me. The two of us are becoming one.” The reason we wear the wedding ring on the third finger is because man believed that the third finger had a nerve leading to the heart. Since the heart is the central part of the body that keeps blood circulating, it became the symbol of life.

We use the word “heart” to represent the total person. It stands for our whole being, our whole nature, our whole life. When we love someone with all our heart, we love them with all our being. When we give our heart to someone, we are giving them our total life. This is the essence and spirit of the blood covenant which God ordains in the Bible and that man has always recognized.

If we as believers would get a full revelation of the blood covenant that we have with God and each other, we would never speak evil of another brother or sister in Christ. Our faith would explode, since God has bound Himself to His Word to fulfill it, the Bible has to work. No more faith accidents when it comes to receiving from God, we have a new confidence. This is why David ran at Goliath, he knew that he had a blood covenant with God. So bold faith comes from a revelation knowledge of the covenant.

## 2. The Hebrew Ritual

The Hebrews had a blood covenant ritual that was similar to the other nations around them. All nations practiced blood covenant because man instinctively sought this relationship. So this practice was not unique to the Hebrews.

Something very important to note right now. Any blood covenant that involves the drinking of blood is not of God, but is a perversion of the real thing.

### **Genesis 9:4-5**

**But you must not eat meat that has its lifeblood still in it. And for your lifeblood I will surely demand an accounting.**

When two Hebrew males entered into a blood covenant, they went through a very specific ceremony. To explain it to you, I want to enter into this covenant with you. You and I are now going to enter into a blood covenant as two Hebrew males would do it. There are nine steps.

### **Step 1. Take off Coat or Robe**

The first thing I do is take off my coat or robe and give it to you. Now to the Hebrew, a person's robe represents the person- that is why Joseph's coat of many colors was so important. By taking of my robe and giving it to you. I'm symbolically saying, *"I'm giving you all myself. My total being and my life, I pledge to you."* And then you would do the same to me.

### **Step 2. Take off Belt**

The next thing I do is take off my belt and give it to you. Now I don't use my belt to hold up my pants, but to hold up my weapons. My belt holds my armor together; my dagger, my bow and arrow, my sword. So symbolically I'm giving you all my strength and pledging you all my support and protection. And as I give you my belt, I'm saying, *"Here is my strength and all my ability to fight. If anybody attacks you, they are also attacking me. Your battles are my battles and mine are yours. I will fight with you. I will help defend you and protect you."* And you do the same to me. This is similar to a compact nations might make today. But since it is a blood covenant, it cannot be broken.

### **Step 3. Cut the Covenant**

The next step is to actually "cut the covenant" by taking an animal and splitting it right down the middle. In the Bible, an animal is only cut down the middle and split in two in a covenant ceremony. After we split the animal, we lay each half to the side of us and stand in between the two bloody halves of flesh, with our backs to each other. Then we walk right through the bloody halves, making a figure eight, and come back to a stop facing each other.

In doing so we are saying two things. First, we are saying that we are dying to ourselves, giving up the rights to our own life and beginning a new walk with our covenant partner unto death.

## **2 Corinthians 5:14-15**

**For Christ's love compels us, because we are convinced that one died for all, and therefore all died. And he died for all, that those who live should no longer live for themselves but for him who died for them and was raised again.**

You see, in this covenant, each half of the dead animal represent us. And second, since the blood covenant is the most solemn pact, we each point down to the bloody animal split in two and say, "God do so to me and more if I ever try to break this covenant. Just split me right down the middle and feed me to the vultures because I tried to break the most sacred of all compacts."

## **Step 4. Raise the Right Arm and Mix Blood**

Then we raise our right arms, cut our palms and bring them together. As we do, our blood intermingles. Then we swear allegiance to each other. Remember how you did that as a kid? With eye probably half closed, you and your closest friend pricked your finger and brought them together swearing allegiance forever until mom broke the covenant for you.

*As our blood intermingles, we believe our lives are intermingling and becoming one life.* This is because our blood is our life and to intermingle blood is to intermingle life. So we are putting off our old nature and putting on the nature of our blood covenant partner. We two are becoming one. Man has always believed that intermingling blood is intermingling life. This symbolically shows the two of us becoming one.

## **2 Corinthians 5:17-18**

**Therefore, if anyone is in Christ, he is a new creation; the old has gone, the new has come!**

## **Step 5. Exchange Names**

Then as we stand there with our blood intermingling, we *exchange names*. I take your last name as part of my name and you take my last name as part of your name.

**Acts 11:26- The disciples were called Christians first at Antioch.**

In the following Scripture in the Book of Revelation, Jesus was and still is addressing believers, it speaks of covenant, and the fellowship associated with it.

**Revelation 3:20- Here I am! I stand at the door and knock. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come in and eat with him, and he with me.**

## **Step 6. Make a Scar**

*The next step is to rub our blood together and make a scar as a permanent testimony to the covenant.* The scar will bear witness to the covenant we have made. It will always be there to remind us of our covenant responsibilities. It is the guarantee of our covenant.

## **Ephesians 1:13-14**

**And you also were included in Christ when you heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation. Having believed, you were marked in him with a seal, the promised Holy Spirit, who is a deposit guaranteeing our inheritance until the redemption of those who are God's possession-to the praise of his glory.**

## **2 Corinthians 1:21-22**

**Now it is God who makes both us and you stand firm in Christ. He anointed us, set his seal of ownership on us, and put his Spirit in our hearts as a deposit, guaranteeing what is to come.**

If anyone tries to harm us, all we have to do is raise up that right arm and show our scar. By that we are saying, "There's more to me than meets the eye. If you're coming after me, you're also going to have to fight my blood covenant partner. And you don't know how big he is. So what are you going to do? Are you going to take your chances or back off." If the would be attacker has any sense, he's going to back off. So the scar is our seal that testifies to the covenant.

## **Matthew 25:40**

**"The King will reply, 'I tell you the truth, whatever you did for one of the least of these brothers of mine, you did for me.'"**

## **Acts 26:14-15**

**We all fell to the ground, and I heard a voice saying to me in Aramaic, "Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick against the goads." Then I asked, "Who are you, Lord?" "I am Jesus, whom you are persecuting," the Lord replied.**

## **1 John 4:4**

**You, dear children, are from God and have overcome them, because the one who is in you is greater than the one who is in the world.**

## **James 4:7**

**Submit yourselves, then, to God. Resist the devil, and he will flee from you.**

Henry Stanley, on his explorations through Africa, cut covenant 50 times with various chieftains. And we can certainly understand why. Anytime he would come across an unfriendly tribe, he would just hold up that right arm with those 50 scars and any would be attacker would take off running in the other direction. Today, when we meet friends, we don't show scars, we shake hands. There are many gestures of blood covenant in our modern society, we've just eliminated the blood.

## **John 10:28-30**

**"I give them eternal life, and they shall never perish; no one can snatch them out of my hand. My Father, who has given them to me, is greater than all; no one can snatch them out of my Father's hand. I and the Father are one."**

Hands are also symbols of a covenant that was struck. When the Bible refers to "being taken by the hand" it is talking about honoring the covenant. This is why we lift up holy hands unto God, it is a visible sign that we are acknowledging the covenant that we have in Jesus. The raising and extension of our hands is an act of friendship, loyalty and surrender to God. To not raise our hands to God is like us extending our hand out to someone in friendship, but they withhold their hand.

The hand shake is reminiscent of the covenant, the hand of fellowship or the hand of friendship.

## **1 Timothy 2:8**

**I want men everywhere to lift up holy hands in prayer, without anger or disputing.**

### **Isaiah 49:14-16**

**But Zion said, “The LORD has forsaken me, the Lord has forgotten me.” “Can a mother forget the baby at her breast and have no compassion on the child she has borne? Though she may forget, I will not forget you! See, I have engraved you on the palms of my hands; your walls are ever before me.”**

## **Step 7. Give Covenant Terms**

Then we stand before witnesses and give the *terms of the covenant*. I say, “All my assets are yours. All my money, all my property and all my possessions are yours. If you need any of them, you don’t even have to ask. Just come and get it. These terms are referred to as the Law of the Covenant.

### **1 Corinthians 3:21-23**

**So then, no more boasting about men! All things are yours, whether Paul or Apollos or Cephas or the world or life or death or the present or the future—all are yours, and you are of Christ, and Christ is of God.**

What’s mine is yours and what’s yours is mine. And if I die, all my children are yours by adoption and you are responsible for my family. But at the same time, you also get my liabilities. If I ever get in trouble financially, I don’t come ask you for money. Rather, I will come to you and say, “Where’s our checkbook?” We are in covenant. Everything I have is yours and what’s yours is mine, both assets and liabilities. So we stand there and read off before witnesses, our list of assets and liabilities.

## **Step 8. Eat A Memorial Meal**

Then we have a *memorial meal* to complete the covenant union. In place of the animal and blood, we have bread and wine. In the Bible, wine is called the blood of the grapes (Genesis 49:11) and it represents our own life blood. The bread represents our flesh.

We take a loaf of bread and break it in two and feed it to each other saying, “This is symbolic of my body and I’m now putting it in you.” Then we serve each other wine and say, “This is symbolic of my life blood which is now your blood.” And now, symbolically, I’m in you and you’re in me. We are now one together with a new nature.

### **1 Corinthians 11:23-32**

**For I received from the Lord what I also passed on to you: The Lord Jesus, on the night he was betrayed, took bread, and when he had given thanks, he broke it and said, “This is my body, which is for you; do this in remembrance of me.” In the same way, after supper he took the cup, saying, “This cup is the new covenant in my blood; do this, whenever you drink it, in remembrance of me.” For whenever you eat this bread and drink this cup, you proclaim the Lord’s death until he comes. Therefore, whoever eats the bread or drinks the cup of the Lord in an unworthy manner will be guilty of sinning against the body and blood of the Lord. A man ought to examine himself before he eats of the bread and drinks of the cup. For anyone who eats and drinks without recognizing the body of the Lord eats and drinks judgment on himself. That is why many among you are weak and sick, and a number of you have fallen asleep. But if we judged ourselves, we would not come under judgment. When we are judged by the Lord, we are being disciplined so that we will not be condemned with the world.**

## Step 9. Plant a Memorial

We now leave a *memorial to the covenant*. We want to always remember it. We do this by planting a tree that we have sprinkled with the blood of the animal. The blood sprinkled tree, along with our scar, will always be a testimony to our covenant.

Well, this completes the ceremony. From now on, the world will know us as friends. In Bible times, one didn't use the word friend loosely as we do today. We became friends only after we had cut covenant. And all our children are included in this covenant, even unborn ones. They are in covenant because they are in us. Later, when they are born and come to an age of understanding about our covenant, they can choose to stay in it or reject it.

### John 15:12-17

**My command is this: Love each other as I have loved you. Greater love has no one than this, that he lay down his life for his friends. You are my friends if you do what I command. I no longer call you servants, because a servant does not know his master's business. Instead, I have called you friends, for everything that I learned from my Father I have made known to you. You did not choose me, but I chose you and appointed you to go and bear fruit-fruit that will last. Then the Father will give you whatever you ask in my name. This is my command: Love each other.**

Now we can understand how Judas was cut to the heart when after he had betrayed Jesus, the Lord had called him "Friend."

### Matthew 26:48-50

**Now the betrayer had arranged a signal with them: "The one I kiss is the man; arrest him." Going at once to Jesus, Judas said, "Greetings, Rabbi!" and kissed him. Jesus replied, "**Friend**, do what you came for."**

Jesus called Judas, "Friend" because a few hours before, Jesus had taken communion with His twelve disciples, Judas having been one of them.

### Identifying the Covenant

Now, anytime we see these events happenings or these words referenced in the Bible, either actually or symbolically, we now know the parties were entering into a blood covenant. We won't find all the details spelled out step by step as they are here, because back then, everyone knew all the details and it wasn't necessary to record it all.

## 3. David and Jonathan Cut Covenant

The covenant that was made between these two men is significant in that it illustrates the far reaching power that covenant has on the lives of those it affects. The story begins in 1 Samuel 18:1-9:

### 1 Samuel 18:1-9

**After David had finished talking with Saul, Jonathan became one in spirit with David, and he loved him as himself. From that day Saul kept David with him and did not let him return to his father's house. And Jonathan made a covenant with David because he loved him as himself. Jonathan took off the robe he was wearing and gave it to David, along with his tunic, and even his sword, his bow and his belt.**

**Whatever Saul sent him to do, David did it so successfully that Saul gave him a high rank in the army. This pleased all the people, and Saul's officers as well. When the men were returning home after David had killed the Philistine, the women came out from all the towns of Israel to meet King Saul with singing and dancing, with joyful songs and with tambourines and lutes. As they danced, they sang:**

**“Saul has slain his thousands,  
and David his tens of thousands.”**

**Saul was very angry; this refrain galled him. “They have credited David with tens of thousands,” he thought, “but me with only thousands. What more can he get but the kingdom?” And from that time on Saul kept a jealous eye on David.**

Let's review the characters in this story.

### **David**

David is a giant killer. He is the great warrior who could crush his foes and all the enemies of Saul. And the Bible says that David is a man after God's own heart- Acts 13:22. David loves Saul, he has Saul's best interest at heart. David could have killed Saul on several occasions, but he kept forgiving him. David wants to show love to Saul but Saul won't let him.

### **Saul**

Saul, on the other hand, is just the opposite of David. He has a knack for being outside the will of God. He is rebellious and seeks to do his own thing rather than God's thing. He doesn't want anybody telling him what to do, especially God. This rebelliousness continuously brings grief and sorrow to Saul.

Saul is afraid of David. This soon becomes an obsession to him so he hunts David down and tries to kill him. Saul makes everyone in his family afraid of David. The portrait he paints to his family is, “Big bad David is out to get us. Don't let him get too close or he'll kill you. He's mean and unjust and he'll destroy you if he gets the chance.”

David, of course, is just the opposite of what Saul makes him out to be. But his family doesn't know any better and they're sure not going to get close enough to David to find out. They are afraid of David. They don't know David loves them.

### **Jonathan**

Now, Saul has a son named Jonathan. Jonathan is just the opposite of Saul and the rest of the family. Although a member of the family of Saul, it's like he really doesn't belong there. He is more like David. In fact, Jonathan loves David as his own self. And as we've just read, at a young age Jonathan and David entered into a blood covenant.

Jonathan is always trying to bring peace between Saul and David. But the harder Jonathan tries, the angrier Saul becomes. At one point, in rage, Saul throws a spear at Jonathan as he had David.

### **Mephibosheth**

Later, when Jonathan marries, he has a son named Mephibosheth. In 2 Samuel 4:4 we read that when Mephibosheth is five years old, Saul and Jonathan are killed in the battle at Jezreel. This is terrible news. Not only because of their death, but, now with nobody to stop him, David can rush in and take over as king. And surely he will kill all of Saul's family who are left and all who are loyal to Saul- which was the custom of new kings. Because he hates Saul and wants to punish his household and bring destruction on them. Of course, David doesn't want to do this, but Saul's family believes he does.

So when the news of Saul and Jonathan's death reaches Jerusalem, Mephibosheth's nurse grabs him up and flees. In her haste to get away, she falls and drops Mephibosheth. As he hits the ground both feet are crushed. Quickly, the nurse picks him up and carries him to a hideout east of the Jordan River at Lodebar. There, Mephibosheth takes refuge.

While hiding at Lodebar, his heart hardens against David. His two lame feet are a constant reminder that David is out to get him, that David hates him and if David ever found him he would kill him. So instead of being in the comfortable palace with servants, roast duck for dinner, king size beds and silk sheets, Mephibosheth is hiding out like a runaway slave in fear of David. He doesn't know he is in covenant with the king through his father, Jonathan.

### **David Reigns as King**

Meanwhile, David reigns as king. And in 2 Samuel 9, we find David wondering if any of Saul's family is still alive. He wants to show them kindness because he is in covenant with Jonathan. But every time he approaches someone to ask about Jonathan's family, they say nothing. They believe David is just trying to trick them and if he ever found Mephibosheth, he would kill him.

But at last, a servant of Saul confides in David and tells him Mephibosheth is at Lodebar. Immediately, David sends his chariots to get him. As Mephibosheth hears the roar in the distance, he pulls himself up to see what it is. His worst fears are confirmed . . . the chariots of David are coming to kill him.

When David's men arrive, they lift Mephibosheth into a chariot and rush him back to David. Mephibosheth naturally believes it is finally over for him. He's certain that David will torture him, behead him and feed him to the dogs.

### **David Remembers Covenant**

So they hurry him into the palace before David, Mephibosheth falls down on his face before David. And just as he expects the guards to grab him, David says, "Mephibosheth, don't be afraid. I've asked you to come so I can be kind to you because of my covenant with your father, Jonathan. I will restore to you all the land of your grandfather Saul, and you will live here at the palace."

Well, Mephibosheth can't believe his ears! This is the king who hates me and wants to kill me? He falls to the ground before David and cries out, "Should the king show kindness to a dead dog like me. You don't know what I've said about you. You don't know all the names I've called you; how I've hated you, made jokes about you and ran from you. I don't deserve any kindness or mercy. I'm worse than a dead dog fit only for the garbage heap. O' king David, I'm not worthy of this love and mercy. I don't deserve such compassion and forgiveness."

### **2 Samuel 9:6-8**

**When Mephibosheth son of Jonathan, the son of Saul, came to David, he bowed down to pay him honor.**

**David said, "Mephibosheth!"**

**"Your servant," he replied.**

**"Don't be afraid," David said to him, "for I will surely show you kindness for the sake of your father Jonathan. I will restore to you all the land that belonged to your grandfather Saul, and you will always eat at my table." Mephibosheth bowed down and said, "What is your servant, that you should notice a dead dog like me?"**

David replies, “Mephibosheth, you don’t understand. I know you don’t deserve it. I know you don’t merit it. And there is nothing you can do to earn or make up for your thoughts and actions against me. You could serve me a thousand years and never make it up. But this has nothing to do with you. I’m doing this because I have sworn by my own blood and entered into an everlasting covenant with your father Jonathan.

And here are the terms of the covenant. I will restore all your land. I will bless you. I’ll forgive your past wrongs against me. My house is your house and you will live here at the palace. I’ll be a father to you and adopt you as my own son. This scar is the testimony and witness to my covenant with you.” Wow, does this sound familiar?

### **Mephibosheth Chooses**

Naturally Mephibosheth is shaken. He can’t believe it. But he must now make a choice, either to enter into the covenant with David or go back into the desert. Doesn’t sound like much of a choice, does it? Well, let’s see. The man he has hated all his life he must now love with all his life. He must now become one with the man he ran away from and of whom he was afraid. He must swallow his pride and humble himself. He must admit he was wrong and turn his back on all his old ways of thinking about David. And his old friends will ridicule him, make fun of him and call him a weakling for giving into David. They will say he didn’t have the guts enough to die and be done with him.

Not such an easy decision after all, is it? Mephibosheth weighs the alternatives. It is his choice, he has a free will to choose his own destiny. David can’t force the covenant on him. Gratefully, Mephibosheth chooses to enter the covenant with David. It was as if Mephibosheth was lost and now he is found, restored to his rightful place, no longer destitute in the desert.

Immediately, all things David promised took place. Mephibosheth’s land was restored. He was blessed with the blessings of a child of the king. All his past wrongs against David were forgiven. He joined David in a covenant meal, ate regularly at the king’s table and lived at the king’s palace. And the descendants of Mephibosheth were blessed because they too were in covenant, no one could harm them.

## **4. The New Covenant And You**

Now this is a great story, but, “what does it have to do with my relationship with God?” In this story, David represents God. He loves His creation with all His heart. He wants to show us mercy and kindness. He wants to take us out of the desert and wilderness of life and adopt us into His own family, to be His own children, to sit at the table with Him and live with Him at the place He has prepared for us.

But unfortunately, we’re in the family of Satan- we’re rebellious. We want to do our own thing, we don’t want anybody telling us what to do, especially God. We don’t know God loves us and wants to bless us. We’ve always been told He is a God of wrath and wants to bring judgment on us. So we are afraid of Him. We run from Him and when we think He isn’t looking, we laugh at Him, make fun of Him and tell jokes about Him- use His Name in vain. We bring grief and sorrow on ourselves out in our own wilderness of Lodebar of sin.

What about Jonathan? He was in the family of Saul yet he didn’t really belong there. He was like David who delighted to do the will of God. He was very Saul but also very David, like Jesus Christ, the Word of God who became flesh and dwelt among us. *Jesus Christ didn’t really fit in with us; yet He was one of us.* He was very God but at the same time very man.

All the fullness of Godhead dwelled in his body according to Colossians 2:9. In Him is life and He is the source of life. Being God, all creation is in Him and comes from him. As creator, He is worth all His creation. How many creatures are equal to the Creator? How many humans are equal to God? A thousand? A hundred thousand? A million? A billion?

All creatures combined together don't equal the Creator. So if God became a man, while at the same time, remained God, He could stand in for all creation. He could represent all mankind. All humanity would be in Him. He could take the place of every person who ever lived. And being equal to God, even though a man, He could enter into covenant with Himself on behalf of all humanity, and that is exactly what He did!

Our New Covenant does not have a curse associated with it, since Jesus fulfilled God's terms of the covenant perfectly. However, we must still exercise faith in the provisions of the covenant and uphold the royal law of the New Covenant and walk in love.

### **John 13:34-35**

**“A new command I give you: Love one another. As I have loved you, so you must love one another. By this all men will know that you are my disciples, if you love one another.”**

### **Enter Jesus Christ**

Jesus Christ is that perfect God-Man. The Bible says that it was decided on before the foundations of the world. *And we were there when the covenant was cut because, as our Creator, we were in Him.*

### **Hebrews 12:9- How much more should we submit to the Father of our spirits and live!**

### **1 Peter 1:18-20**

**For you know that it was not with perishable things such as silver or gold that you were redeemed from the empty way of life handed down to you from your forefathers, but with the precious blood of Christ, a lamb without blemish or defect. He was chosen before the creation of the world, but was revealed in these last times for your sake.**

In God's own time, as He remembered the covenant that He made with Himself from the beginning, He came to the earth as one of us . . . flesh and blood and bones. He was born of the seed of woman, a virgin (Galatians 4:4). He was born of the seed of woman, not man, so that the blood flowing through His veins would be uncontaminated by sin.

He didn't carry that deadly blood disease passed on by Adam called the sin nature- Romans 5:12. As God, He was perfectly holy and righteous- Philippians 2:5-11. And He prepared for Himself a body- Hebrews 10:5. It was a body that would not know sin (Hebrews 4:15); therefore, the blood in that body was spotless and without blemish- Hebrews 9:14. So the pre-existing, eternal Christ, the Son of God exchanged names with us and became Jesus, the Son of Man . . . the representative of all mankind. He called Himself the son of Man to identify Himself with all mankind. For 33 years He lived a perfect life in order to be the once for all perfect sacrifice for the sins of the world.

### **Jesus Cuts Covenant**

During the covenant ceremony, Jesus gathers His disciples together to participate in the covenant meal of bread and wine. After the meal Jesus went out and left a memorial to the covenant. He planted a tree. And He poured out blood on it. But it wasn't the blood of bulls and goats; it was His own blood, and it wasn't a little knick in His wrist. It was all His blood poured out at the foot of the cross, the blood-stained tree that stands forever as a memorial to the covenant- the cross of Calvary.

### **Galatians 3:13-14**

**Christ redeemed us from the curse of the law by becoming a curse for us, for it is written: “Cursed is everyone who is hung on a tree.” He redeemed us in order that the blessing given to Abraham might come to the Gentiles through Christ Jesus, so that by faith we might receive the promise of the Spirit.**

The “Lamb of God” slain from the foundations of the world cut covenant for all mankind. And we were there. We were crucified with Him (Galatians 2:20), because like Mephibosheth, we were in Him as our Creator. He took on our robe of self-righteousness which is like filthy rags- Isaiah 64:6. He took on our nature, the satanic sin nature. He took on all our liabilities which are the sins of all mankind. They were all placed on Him. All of our spiritual leprosy, that deadly blood disease we carry, was put on Him and He who knew no sin became sin for us- Isaiah 53:6.

### **John 1:29-31**

**The next day John saw Jesus coming toward him and said, “Look, the Lamb of God, who takes away the sin of the world! This is the one I meant when I said, ‘A man who comes after me has surpassed me because he was before me.’ I myself did not know him, but the reason I came baptizing with water was that he might be revealed to Israel.”**

It was necessary for God to do this because the sin nature within each of us separates us from God. All of us have sinned and come short of God’s Glory according to Romans 3:23. The penalty for our sin is death- Romans 6:23. We all know this to be true which is why we were afraid of God. Jesus took all of this on Himself at the cross as our substitute, He took the rap or punishment for our spiritual crimes.

### **Ephesians 2:11-13**

**Therefore, remember that formerly you who are Gentiles by birth and called “uncircumcised” by those who call themselves “the circumcision” (that done in the body by the hands of men)- remember that at that time you were separate from Christ, excluded from citizenship in Israel and foreigners to the covenants of the promise, without hope and without God in the world. But now in Christ Jesus you who once were far away have been brought near through the blood of Christ.**

### **Jesus Remembers Covenant**

Before we accepted Jesus as Lord and Savior, at one time we were sitting in church, at home, with a neighbor, at a Bible study or at work and the chariots of one greater than David, the Holy Spirit, invited us to come to God thorough Jesus Christ. We were fighting this all our life. We knew one day it was going to happen. But we had been running from it, hiding behind the mask of religion, drugs, sex, work, money, or something else to cover our trail. We probably thought that God was out to get us and spoil our fun . . . to tell us not to dance, drink, smoke or chew or go with girls that do.

We did not know that God loves us and wants to bless our spirit, soul and body. So instead of living like a child of the king, we were living like a runaway slave. We didn’t believe those Christians who told us about the love of God. We probably thought they were trying to trick us, to get us to God so He could punish us. So our life was full of grief and sorrow along with those around us.

But then the Holy Spirit began to draw, convict and convince us of our need for Jesus. He was bringing us to God, and just as we thought we were about to get it; just as we thought the big heavenly club was about to come down on us, God says, “Don’t be afraid. I’ve asked you to come so I can be kind to you, because of the covenant I made with Myself on your behalf. I was looking for you because I want to bless you.”

## **We Must Choose**

Like Mephibosheth, we had to choose. We probably could not believe our ears when we heard the good news of the gospel message. At the time, we could not believe our ears, “This is that great God of wrath who wants to punish me? This is the one I’ve been afraid of and running from all my life.” We cry out, “But God, you don’t know what I’ve said about you. You don’t know how many times I’ve used your name in vain and how I’ve hated You and cursed You, made jokes about You and ran from You. Why, I even said You were dead. You just don’t know all the terrible things I’ve done. I’m not worthy of this love and mercy. I don’t deserve such compassion and forgiveness.”

## **Romans 5:6-8**

**You see, at just the right time, when we were still powerless, Christ died for the ungodly. Very rarely will anyone die for a righteous man, though for a good man someone might possibly dare to die. But God demonstrates his own love for us in this: While we were still sinners, Christ died for us.**

And God replies, “You don’t understand. I know you don’t deserve it. I know there is nothing that you can do to make up for your thoughts and actions against Me. You could serve Me a thousand years and never make it up. But this has nothing to do with deserving it. I’m doing this because I’ve sworn by My own blood and entered into an everlasting covenant and you were there; you were in Me at the time.”

## **Hebrews 7:23-25**

**Now there have been many of those priests, since death prevented them from continuing in office; but because Jesus lives forever, he has a permanent priesthood. Therefore he is able to save completely those who come to God through him, because he always lives to intercede for them.**

## **Ephesians 2:1-10**

**As for you, you were dead in your transgressions and sins, in which you used to live when you followed the ways of this world and of the ruler of the kingdom of the air, the spirit who is now at work in those who are disobedient. All of us also lived among them at one time, gratifying the cravings of our sinful nature and following its desires and thoughts. Like the rest, we were by nature objects of wrath. But because of his great love for us, God, who is rich in mercy, made us alive with Christ even when we were dead in transgressions-it is by grace you have been saved. And God raised us up with Christ and seated us with him in the heavenly realms in Christ Jesus, in order that in the coming ages he might show the incomparable riches of his grace, expressed in his kindness to us in Christ Jesus. For it is by grace you have been saved, through faith-and this not from yourselves, it is the gift of God- not by works, so that no one can boast. For we are God’s workmanship, created in Christ Jesus to do good works, which God prepared in advance for us to do.**

## **Covenant Terms**

God says, “And here are the terms of the covenant. I’ll take all your liabilities, all your sins, on Myself and become sin for you. I’ll forgive your iniquities and remember them no more- Hebrews 8:7-13. I’ll take all your self-righteousness and give you My own righteousness which is pure and holy and acceptable to Me.”

## **2 Corinthians 5:21**

**God made him who had no sin to be sin for us, so that in him we might become the righteousness of God.**

“You clothe Me with your robe of sin and I’ll clothe you with My garment of salvation and My robe of righteousness through My pure life blood poured out on the cross for you. I’ll impute it to you and count you as righteous. We’ll exchange natures (Son of Man / Christian), I’ll take on your sin nature on the cross and crucify it there so you can take on my righteous nature. For I’ll put My Spirit within you and bless you with all spiritual blessings. You’ll partake of My own nature by the intermingling of our blood through faith.”

### **Romans 6:6-7**

**For we know that our old self was crucified with him so that the body of sin might be done away with, that we should no longer be slaves to sin- because anyone who has died has been freed from sin.**

“You can become part of me and I’ll live in your spirit. My house will be your house. You can feast at My table. I’ll be a Father to you and adopt you as My own son. You will reign with Me for a thousand years and have eternal life with Me. This is My free gift to you to show you that I love you.”-  
Jeremiah 31:31-34; Ezekiel 11:19-20; Ezekiel 36:25-28; Revelation 20:4; 22:1-5.)

### **Romans 8:14-17**

**Those who are led by the Spirit of God are sons of God. For you did not receive a spirit that makes you a slave again to fear, but you received the Spirit of sonship. And by him we cry, “Abba, Father.” The Spirit himself testifies with our spirit that we are God’s children. Now if we are children, then we are heirs-heirs of God and co-heirs with Christ, if indeed we share in his sufferings in order that we may also share in his glory.**

### **Entering the Covenant**

#### **John 3:35-36**

**The Father loves the Son and has placed everything in his hands. Whoever believes in the Son has eternal life, but whoever rejects the Son will not see life, for God’s wrath remains on him.”**

Well, this discovery undoes everything most people ever thought about God. But everyone will make a choice. Ignoring or putting it off is a choice, it is rejecting the gift just the same as saying no.

#### **Hebrews 2:1-4**

**We must pay more careful attention, therefore, to what we have heard, so that we do not drift away. For if the message spoken by angels was binding, and every violation and disobedience received its just punishment, how shall we escape if we ignore such a great salvation? This salvation, which was first announced by the Lord, was confirmed to us by those who heard him. God also testified to it by signs, wonders and various miracles, and gifts of the Holy Spirit distributed according to his will.**

#### **2 Corinthians 6:1-2**

**As God’s fellow workers we urge you not to receive God’s grace in vain. For he says,**

**“In the time of my favor I heard you,  
and in the day of salvation I helped you.”**

**I tell you, now is the time of God’s favor, now is the day of salvation.**

Our parents can't make it for us. Our religious organization can't make it for us. We must decide. Either to enter into the covenant with God through Jesus Christ or go back into the desert- Philippians 3:7-15.

It's the same Jesus many of us have been running from all our lives. The one we have mocked all our lives. We must now choose to love Him with all our life. We must now become one with Jesus Christ. We must swallow all our pride, humble ourselves and admit we were wrong, turning our back on our old way of thinking and living. All our old friends most likely ridiculed us, and had made fun of us, and called us names for following Jesus.

This is certainly not an easy decision for people today. If you decide no; you go back into the desert, lost forever. If you decide yes, you will have communion with God and receive His very divine nature- born again according to John 3:3. He will be your God and you will be a part of His people.

And Jesus says, "If you enter into the covenant, you'll be known as my friend"- John 15:14-15. You'll even exchange names and be called a Christian.

### **John 6:53-59**

**Jesus said to them, "I tell you the truth, unless you eat the flesh of the Son of Man and drink his blood, you have no life in you. Whoever eats my flesh and drinks my blood has eternal life, and I will raise him up at the last day. For my flesh is real food and my blood is real drink. Whoever eats my flesh and drinks my blood remains in me, and I in him. Just as the living Father sent me and I live because of the Father, so the one who feeds on me will live because of me. This is the bread that came down from heaven. Your forefathers ate manna and died, but he who feeds on this bread will live forever."**

Of course in the above Scripture Jesus is speaking figuratively, when a person receives Jesus as Lord by faith, we become one with Him spiritually, we are born again and are now identified with Christ.

### **1 Corinthians 6:17**

**But he who unites himself with the Lord is one with him in spirit.**

### **Supernatural Scar**

Like the scar, Jesus sends the Holy Spirit to all who will enter into covenant with Him- John 20:22. The Holy Spirit is the seal that bears witness and testifies to the covenant. He is the constant reminder, the guarantee, the deposit or first fruits of our inheritance, that we are in covenant with God through the blood of Jesus Christ- Ephesians 1:13; 4:30; 2 Corinthians 1:22.

### **John 14:15-17**

**If you love me, you will obey what I command. And I will ask the Father, and he will give you another Counselor to be with you forever- the Spirit of truth. The world cannot accept him, because it neither sees him nor knows him. But you know him, for he lives with you and will be in you.**

### **John 14:26-27**

**But the Counselor, the Holy Spirit, whom the Father will send in my name, will teach you all things and will remind you of everything I have said to you.**

### **John 15:26**

**When the Counselor comes, whom I will send to you from the Father, the Spirit of truth who goes out from the Father, he will testify about me.**

### **John 16:7-11**

**But I tell you the truth: It is for your good that I am going away. Unless I go away, the Counselor will not come to you; but if I go, I will send him to you. When he comes, he will convict the world of guilt in regard to sin and righteousness and judgment: in regard to sin, because men do not believe in me; in regard to righteousness, because I am going to the Father, where you can see me no longer; 11 and in regard to judgment, because the prince of this world now stands condemned.**

### **Showing the Scar**

So when Satan, the enemy, comes against the Christian, we show him our scar! By speaking the Name of Jesus and the Word of God through the power of the Holy Spirit. All born again Christians have the scar, but only those who show their scar through faith will put the devil on the run.

Unfortunately, the devil is taking advantage of many Christians today because of ignorance and/or disobedience. God will only back us up when we enforce our rights as a partner in the blood covenant. Then Satan will flee from us because he knows he has already been whipped by our blood covenant brother, Jesus Christ!

For God has raised and exalted Jesus and placed Him above all principalities and powers with authority over every name that is named. He has given Jesus "The Name" and "The Name" is above every name- Philippians 2:9-11.

Christians through the power of attorney have been entrusted with all power and authority invested in the Name of Jesus to carry on the work of Jesus in His place as His ambassadors and minister of reconciliation- Matthew 28:18, John 14:12-14; 2 Corinthians 5:18-20; Hebrews 13:20-21.

### **Ephesians 1:19-23**

**That power is like the working of his mighty strength, which he exerted in Christ when he raised him from the dead and seated him at his right hand in the heavenly realms, far above all rule and authority, power and dominion, and every title that can be given, not only in the present age but also in the one to come. And God placed all things under his feet and appointed him to be head over everything for the church, which is his body, the fullness of him who fills everything in every way.**

### **Colossians 2:13-15**

**When you were dead in your sins and in the uncircumcision of your sinful nature, God made you alive with Christ. He forgave us all our sins, having canceled the written code, with its regulations, that was against us and that stood opposed to us; he took it away, nailing it to the cross. And having disarmed the powers and authorities, he made a public spectacle of them, triumphing over them by the cross.**

We are more than conquerors in Christ as we go in His name, for all things have been placed under His feet, which means it has been placed under our feet because we are His body- 1 Corinthians 12:12-27; Titus 3:3-7.

### **Luke 10:18-20**

**Jesus replied, "I saw Satan fall like lightning from heaven. I have given you authority to trample on snakes and scorpions and to overcome all the power of the enemy; nothing will harm you. However, do not rejoice that the spirits submit to you, but rejoice that your names are written in heaven."**

### **The Covenant Invitation**

Jesus came for the very purpose to reconcile us back to God. Jesus is the “Seed of the woman” that God promised back in the Garden of Eden who would destroy Satan’s dominion of slavery over mankind. According to 1 Timothy 2:4-5, God wants all men to be saved and to come to a knowledge of the truth. He desires that all will enter into blood covenant with Him by personally accepting Jesus’ death, burial and resurrection on their behalf. This is His Covenant of love- John 3:16-17.

**Matthew 11:28-30- “Come to me, all you who are weary and burdened, and I will give you rest. Take my yoke upon you and learn from me, for I am gentle and humble in heart, and you will find rest for your souls. For my yoke is easy and my burden is light.”**

### **John 6:37**

**“All that the Father gives me will come to me, and whoever comes to me I will never drive away.”**

God progressively revealed this invitation throughout the Old Covenant, which is but a shadow pointing us to the New Covenant light of the world, Jesus Christ.

### **Unit 4 Review:**

So basically speaking, what is a blood covenant?

---

---

---

So what are some reasons people enter into covenant?

---

---

Is it common for a blood covenant to be broken, why?

---

---

---

What are the nine steps two typical Hebrew men would take in order to enter into a blood covenant? Which step was most striking to you and why?

---

---

---

What is so significant concerning the covenant between David and Jonathan?

---

---

---

---

## 5. God's Covenant with Job

### **Job 1:1-3**

**In the land of Uz there lived a man whose name was Job. This man was blameless and upright; he feared God and shunned evil. He had seven sons and three daughters, and he owned seven thousand sheep, three thousand camels, five hundred yoke of oxen and five hundred donkeys, and had a large number of servants. He was the greatest man among all the people of the East.**

This generation of Job and Abraham did not know anything other than God blessing them financially. You can't sell that old lie of the devil that God brings poverty on all of us to keep us humble to the Jewish folks, their Bible does not say that, neither does ours. The source of that kind of teaching apparently came from Zen Buddhism, through the study of Eastern religion by European people at the turn of the 19<sup>th</sup> century. That philosophy worked its way from there and started a trend of poverty vows and poverty oaths which is not in the Bible nor a part of the New Covenant, but is actually in violation of the Covenant. Then it came over into North America.

### **Colossians 2:16-23**

**Therefore do not let anyone judge you by what you eat or drink, or with regard to a religious festival, a New Moon celebration or a Sabbath day. These are a shadow of the things that were to come; the reality, however, is found in Christ. Do not let anyone who delights in false humility and the worship of angels disqualify you for the prize. Such a person goes into great detail about what he has seen, and his unspiritual mind puffs him up with idle notions. He has lost connection with the Head, from whom the whole body, supported and held together by its ligaments and sinews, grows as God causes it to grow. Since you died with Christ to the basic principles of this world, why, as though you still belonged to it, do you submit to its rules: "Do not handle! Do not taste! Do not touch!"? These are all destined to perish with use, because they are based on human commands and teachings. Such regulations indeed have an appearance of wisdom, with their self-imposed worship, their false humility and their harsh treatment of the body, but they lack any value in restraining sensual indulgence.**

Remember, during Old Covenant times, when a man or woman is referred to as "Blameless and upright," it meant that he or she kept the law or requirements and obligations of the covenant- whatever the terms of the covenant stipulated, no more and no less.

Job had a covenant with God, a life keeping Covenant. The reason I say that he had a life keeping Covenant is because in Job 2:6 the Lord forbids Satan from taking his life.

### **Job 1:6-11**

**One day the angels came to present themselves before the LORD, and Satan also came with them. The LORD said to Satan, “Where have you come from?” Satan answered the LORD, “From roaming through the earth and going back and forth in it.” Then the LORD said to Satan, “Have you considered my servant Job? There is no one on earth like him; he is blameless and upright, a man who fears God and shuns evil.” “Does Job fear God for nothing?” Satan replied. “Have you not put a hedge around him and his household and everything he has? You have blessed the work of his hands, so that his flocks and herds are spread throughout the land.”**

Here we see some more insight, God does not put a hedge of protection and bless everything that an individual has for no reason. Job had to have a covenant with God in order for God to legally intervene in Job's life on his behalf. Moreover, we see in verse one that Job kept the requirements of the covenant and in verse 5 he sacrificed burnt offerings to the Lord on a regular basis- we see these things are not automatic.

Yet Job gave into fear and had opened the door to the devil, yet the devil did not even know it at the time, it took God pointing it out to him before he got a clue.

### **Job 1:12 NKJV**

**So the LORD said to Satan, “Behold, all that he has is in your power; only do not lay a hand on his person.” So Satan went out from the presence of the LORD.”**

So who opened the door to the devil and how did it happen. Well, there were only two parties involved in this covenant, Job and God. Obviously God did not falter on His side of the covenant. So how did Job turn everything over to Satan? It was FEAR! Job's fears concerning his children opened the door.

### **Job 1:4-5**

**His sons used to take turns holding feasts in their homes, and they would invite their three sisters to eat and drink with them. When a period of feasting had run its course, Job would send and have them purified. Early in the morning he would sacrifice a burnt offering for each of them, thinking, “Perhaps my children have sinned and cursed God in their hearts.” This was Job's regular custom.**

### **Job 3:25**

**What I feared has come upon me; what I dreaded has happened to me.**

The Bible has much to say about the enemy of fear, it is the opposite of faith. Faith comes by hearing the Word of God, and fear comes by hearing the words of the devil.

### **Deuteronomy 20:3-4**

**He shall say: “Hear, O Israel, today you are going into battle against your enemies. Do not be fainthearted or afraid; do not be terrified or give way to panic before them. For the LORD your God is the one who goes with you to fight for you against your enemies to give you victory.”**

### **1 Peter 3:6**

**You are her daughters if you do what is right and do not give way to fear.**

Job yielding to fear gave power to the devil to come in and kill, steal and destroy (John 10:10). Yet instead putting faith back into the covenant he had with God, he stumbling into yet another trap, the trap of self-pity. For forty chapters, Job complained and whined, never enforcing his rights in the covenant.

God wants us to be bold, not arrogant, but confident in God that He will honor His Covenant. When we boldly declare of the devil to get out of our lives (provided we are walking in love) according to John 14:12, he must obey- God will see to it. God wants us to put Him in remembrance and declare the stipulations of the covenant so He can legally release His power on the earth and in the affairs of men.

### **Isaiah 43:26 NKJV**

**Put Me in remembrance; Let us contend together; State your case, that you may be acquitted.**

When Job finally got his mind on his covenant with God instead of his problems, God intervened- we can't get anything from God with self-pity which is selfishness.

### **Job 42:10-11**

**After Job had prayed for his friends, the LORD made him prosperous again and gave him twice as much as he had before.**

## 6. God's Covenant with Abraham

Adam, Job, Noah and others could have served as God's choice to create a nation through which the promised Seed of the woman would crush the head of the serpent. However, none of them were suitable for what God needed until He found Abram in Ur of the Chaldeans. So what was so special about Abraham that made him acceptable in God's sight.

### **Genesis 18:18-19**

**“Abraham will surely become a great and powerful nation, and all nations on earth will be blessed through him. For I have chosen him, so that he will direct his children and his household after him to keep the way of the LORD by doing what is right and just, so that the LORD will bring about for Abraham what he has promised him.”**

Certainly Abraham had chosen to walk by faith and live a life of obedience in regards to God's directives. However, more importantly, he would pass the legacy of his covenant with God onto his children- that was God's main requirement!

Now that we have laid a foundation concerning the principles of covenant, we are now going to study the blood covenant as God revealed it through Abram; later called Abraham after the covenant was established. It's been years since the flood and again the world had turned from God to idol worship. Abram's family were idol worshippers. They lived in the city of Ur, located in Babylon between the Tigris and Euphrates Rivers. It was a cultural, sophisticated, but pagan country. The people worshipped the moon and made idols carved with their own hands to the moon goddess.

From this environment, God called Abram to His covenant of love. God told Abram to get out of his pagan land. Abram was to leave his idols and his pagan household and go to a country that God would show him. There God would bless him and make him a great nation. God would give Abram a land of rest from his enemies.

### **Genesis 12:1-3**

**The LORD had said to Abram, “Leave your country, your people and your father's household and go to the land I will show you. “I will make you into a great nation and I will bless you; I will make your name great, and you will be a blessing. I will bless those who bless you, and whoever curses you I will curse; and all peoples on earth will be blessed through you.”**

From Abram's seed (singular, meaning Jesus Christ) all nations of the world would be blessed.

### **Galatians 3:16**

**The promises were spoken to Abraham and to his seed. The Scripture does not say “and to seeds,” meaning many people, but “and to your seed,” meaning one person, who is Christ.**

What an invitation, an offer of a lifetime given by Almighty God Himself, but this was an offer that Abram could either accept or reject, it was his choice. Thankfully he had chosen to obey !!!

### **Hebrews 11:8-10**

**By faith Abraham, when called to go to a place he would later receive as his inheritance, obeyed and went, even though he did not know where he was going. By faith he made his home in the promised land like a stranger in a foreign country; he lived in tents, as did Isaac and Jacob, who were heirs with him of the same promise. For he was looking forward to the city with foundations, whose architect and builder is God.**

Four times the Bible says that Abraham believed God and was counted as righteousness in Genesis 15:6; Romans 4:3; Galatians 3:6 and James 2:23. So what exactly was it that Abraham believed in? It represents the very foundation of our Christian faith!

So God brought Abram to the land of Canaan and God approached him in a way that Abram could understand. He established a blood covenant with Abram. It's the same covenant he established with Adam and Eve when he killed the animals in the garden, clothed Adam and Eve to cover their sin and promised a future redeemer. It's the same covenant God reconfirmed with Noah, evidenced by Noah offering a sacrifice to the Lord that was a sweet savory smell- Genesis 8:20-21. That's the first thing Noah did as soon as he got off the boat.

And so God progressively continues to reveal His covenant with man that He laid from the foundations of the world. And before He actually comes to earth to cut covenant Himself as a man (Jesus), He reveals it most clearly through Abraham.

### **John 8:56-59**

**Jesus said, “Your father Abraham rejoiced at the thought of seeing my day; he saw it and was glad.” “You are not yet fifty years old,” the Jews said to him, “and you have seen Abraham!” “I tell you the truth,” Jesus answered, “before Abraham was born, I am!” At this, they picked up stones to stone him, but Jesus hid himself, slipping away from the temple grounds.**

The covenant ceremony is described in Genesis chapter 15 and reads as follows:

### **Genesis 15:1-21**

**After this, the word of the LORD came to Abram in a vision: “Do not be afraid, Abram. I am your shield, your very great reward.” But Abram said, “O Sovereign LORD, what can you give me since I remain childless and the one who will inherit my estate is Eliezer of Damascus?” And Abram said, “You have given me no children; so a servant in my household will be my heir.” Then the word of the LORD came to him: “This man will not be your heir, but a son coming from your own body will be your heir.” He took him outside and said, “Look up at the heavens and count the stars- if indeed you can count them.” Then he said to him, “So shall your offspring be.” Abram believed the LORD, and he credited it to him as righteousness. He also said to him, “I am the LORD, who brought you out of Ur of the Chaldeans to give you this land to take possession of it.” But Abram said, “O Sovereign LORD, how can I know that I will gain possession of it?” So the LORD said to him, “Bring me a heifer, a goat and a ram, each three years old, along with a dove and a young pigeon.” Abram brought all these to him, cut them in two and arranged the halves opposite each other; the birds, however, he did not cut in half.**

**Then birds of prey came down on the carcasses, but Abram drove them away. As the sun was setting, Abram fell into a deep sleep, and a thick and dreadful darkness came over him. Then the LORD said to him, “Know for certain that your descendants will be strangers in a country not their own, and they will be enslaved and mistreated four hundred years. But I will punish the nation they serve as slaves, and afterward they will come out with great possessions. You, however, will go to your fathers in peace and be buried at a good old age. In the fourth generation your descendants will come back here, for the sin of the Amorites has not yet reached its full measure.”** When the sun had set and darkness had fallen, a smoking firepot with a blazing torch appeared and passed between the pieces. **On that day the LORD made a covenant with Abram and said, “To your descendants I give this land, from the river of Egypt to the great river, the Euphrates- the land of the Kenites, Kenizzites, Kadmonites, Hittites, Perizzites, Rephaites, Amorites, Canaanites, Girgashites and Jebusites.”**

### **Ceremony Described**

God says, “Abram, I am your shield, I am your very great reward.” With this statement, God is taking the initiative by offering His robe and His belt to Abram- according to the covenant ceremony. Now God does not have a physical robe that He exchanges with Abram. But since the robe represents the person, God simply offers Himself. In effect, God says, “Abram, here is Myself. I offer you Me. I am your reward. All that I am, I give to you. I am holy; I give you my holiness. I am righteous; I give you My righteousness. I give you my life, Abram, pledging to lay it down on your behalf if you will accept this covenant and enter into it with me.”

Then God says, “Abram, I am your shield. I don’t offer you a shield, I am your shield. I will protect you and fight your battles for you. I will be your strength. If anyone attacks you, they are really attacking Me. Your battles are now mine, so put Me on as your full armor. And when you go into battle, I’ll fight for you. You just stand aside and let Me do it.” Just look at the victory God gave Abraham and his 318 trained men over the kings who had taken Lot and the inhabitants of Sodom and Gomorrah in Genesis chapter 14.

### **Luke 1:67-75**

**His father Zechariah was filled with the Holy Spirit and prophesied: “Praise be to the Lord, the God of Israel, because he has come and has redeemed his people. He has raised up a horn of salvation for us in the house of his servant David (as he said through his holy prophets of long ago), salvation from our enemies and from the hand of all who hate us- to show mercy to our fathers and to remember his holy covenant, the oath he swore to our father Abraham: to rescue us from the hand of our enemies, and to enable us to serve him without fear in holiness and righteousness before him all our days.”**

Abram, that great man of faith, responds in Genesis 15:8 paraphrased, “Well, that’s really wonderful Lord. I really appreciate all you want to do for me and I believe you, Lord. I know you are going to do all that, but how do I know?” Well God answers Abram’s question in terms Abram can understand- the language of blood covenant. He tells Abram to gather up some animals; a heifer, a goat, a ram, a turtledove and a young pigeon. These are animals God has declared as “clean” or acceptable to Him. They would serve as substitutionary sacrifices leading up to the ultimate sacrifice.

Therefore, Abram quickly gathers up the animals that God says, “Take the ram, goat and heifer and split them right down the middle and separate the halves.” By splitting the animals down the middle and dividing the halves, Abram knows that God is making a covenant with him. And Abram knows that a blood covenant is the closest, the most enduring, the most solemn and most sacred of all compacts. It absolutely cannot be broken.

Therefore Abram knows that God has obligated, bound and committed Himself without return- He must do the things He has promised! No need for Abram to worry and fret about it. He can rest on God's promises, because through the blood covenant, he has a hold on God.

### **Hebrews 6:13-19**

**When God made his promise to Abraham, since there was no one greater for him to swear by, he swore by himself, saying, "I will surely bless you and give you many descendants." And so after waiting patiently, Abraham received what was promised. Men swear by someone greater than themselves, and the oath confirms what is said and puts an end to all argument. Because God wanted to make the unchanging nature of his purpose very clear to the heirs of what was promised, he confirmed it with an oath. God did this so that, by two unchangeable things in which it is impossible for God to lie, we who have fled to take hold of the hope offered to us may be greatly encouraged. We have this hope as an anchor for the soul, firm and secure.**

There's only one problem here. How can the creation enter into covenant with the Creator? How can weak sinful man enter into covenant with the All Mighty, All Powerful God? What does Abram have to offer God? Is he going to rescue God and help Him out in some way. There's just no common ground on which man can approach God.

In Genesis 15:11 we see Abram trying to help God out. As the bloody halves of the animals lay there separated, fowls swoop down and try to devour the carcasses. These fowls are considered unclean by God and they attempt to eat the clean sacrifice ordained by God as acceptable to Him. Jesus compared Satan to the unclean birds that swooped down to snatch away the seeds of the Gospel to keep people from believing according to Matthew 13:4, 19. The fowls in Genesis represent Satan swooping down to break up this covenant before it is completed by snatching away the acceptable sacrifice before it can be offered. So we see Abram trying to help God out by shooing them away.

If God is going to establish a covenant with man; He is going to have to do it all, if it's going to be done at all. If Abram got involved in any way, he would have just messed up the covenant and then it would no longer be acceptable to God. Therefore, God made a covenant with Himself, His oaths were made unto Himself. In order to keep Abram from messing up the covenant ceremony, God caused him to fall into a deep sleep.

Then Abram saw passing between the bloody animals, someone taking his place. Someone was walking where he should have been walking. Someone was saying, "I'm dying to myself. I'm giving up the rights to my own life. I'm beginning a new walk with my covenant partner unto death." It was such a brilliant glow that Abram saw walking in his place, that he could only describe it as a smoking furnace and a burning lamp, meaning a bright light- so what did Abram see (Revelation 11:14-15)?

### **Matthew 17:1-3**

**After six days Jesus took with him Peter, James and John the brother of James, and led them up a high mountain by themselves. There he was transfigured before them. His face shone like the sun, and his clothes became as white as the light. Just then there appeared before them Moses and Elijah, talking with Jesus.**

The Gospel of John chapter one talks about the pre-existence of Jesus as the Word of God, the Second Person of the God Head. Christ the eternal Son of God, in His pre-existing glory, cut covenant with God the Father and stood in for Abram. He is the only one who could stand in for Abram, and all of Abram's unborn seed were included in the covenant because they were in Abram.

The Sacrifice, remember, was always symbolic of the flesh and blood of the one who made the walk. So this sacrifice pointed to Christ Himself who would, come sometime in the future, come as the “Lamb of God” to take away the sins of the world. The blood of animals could only cover sins. The blood of Jesus takes it away.

### **The Seal of Circumcision**

Then, in Genesis 17, God awakens Abram to seal the covenant. The seal is always the scar given as the testimony to the covenant. The scar would bear witness to the covenant. It would always remind God and Abram of their covenant responsibilities to each other. It was the guarantee of the covenant. Jesus is scared for us for all eternity to bear witness to the everlasting covenant we have with God through Jesus Christ- hands, feet and side. The scar that sealed and testified to this covenant was circumcision. It was the token of the everlasting covenant. Abram would bear in his flesh, the evidence that he had entered into blood covenant with God through Christ. All of Abram’s natural descendant would confirm their accepting of the covenant by taking the seal of circumcision on new born males. In this way, the seal, the reminder, the testifier to the covenant was passed down.

Praise God, now with a little background of covenant, the New Testament is making a lot more sense. The Holy Spirit through the Apostle Paul is speaking to us in the language of covenant. When an individual chooses to enter into covenant with Almighty God through Jesus Christ (the only way- John 14:6; Acts 4:12), God places His Divine Seal, the Holy Spirit within the believer. In the natural, a seal is used to stamp a document, giving it legal validity and ownership. Likewise, we become God’s property, bought by the blood of Jesus- Acts 20:28; 1 Corinthians 6:20; 7:23.

### **2 Corinthians 1:21-22**

**Now it is God who makes both us and you stand firm in Christ. He anointed us, set his seal of ownership on us, and put his Spirit in our hearts as a deposit, guaranteeing what is to come.**

### **Ephesians 1:13-14**

**And you also were included in Christ when you heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation. Having believed, you were marked in him with a seal, the promised Holy Spirit, who is a deposit guaranteeing our inheritance until the redemption of those who are God’s possession-to the praise of his glory.**

Through faith in Jesus Christ we become the spiritual seed of Abraham, and heirs of the promise of eternal life and adoption into God’s Family- Ephesians 3:15; Galatians 4:5.

### **Romans 2:29**

**No, a man is a Jew if he is one inwardly; and circumcision is circumcision of the heart, by the Spirit, not by the written code. Such a man’s praise is not from men, but from God.**

### **Galatians 3:28-29**

**There is neither Jew nor Greek, slave nor free, male nor female, for you are all one in Christ Jesus. If you belong to Christ, then you are Abraham’s seed, and heirs according to the promise.**

### **Colossians 2:11-12**

**In him you were also circumcised, in the putting off of the sinful nature, not with a circumcision done by the hands of men but with the circumcision done by Christ, having been buried with him in baptism and raised with him through your faith in the power of God, who raised him from the dead.**

## **Change of Names**

Then according to the covenant ritual, God and Abram changed names. God, who is called YHWH in Hebrew, took the “H” out of his own name and put it in Abram’s name. So Abram’s name was changed to Abraham. Likewise, Sara’s name is changed to Sarah. God took on Abraham’s name and became known as the God of Abraham. And now that the covenant was cut, they are known in the Bible as friends.

## **James 2:23-24**

**And the scripture was fulfilled that says, “Abraham believed God, and it was credited to him as righteousness,” and he was called God’s friend.**

Likewise Jesus calls us friends, since we entered into covenant through Him with God the Father. Please don’t confuse “Friend” as we use it in our culture (buddy, pal, or fair weather friends, here today and gone tomorrow), when the Bible uses the word “Friend” it is talking about being in blood covenant with someone for life, a sacred bond that cannot be broken, save the penalty of death!

## **John 15:13-16**

**Greater love has no one than this, that he lay down his life for his friends. You are my friends if you do what I command. I no longer call you servants, because a servant does not know his master’s business. Instead, I have called you friends, for everything that I learned from my Father I have made known to you.**

When we entered into covenant with God, we too received a new identity and a new name, *Acts 11:26* “*The disciples were called Christians first at Antioch.*” Our old associations with Satan, this world system and sin died, we became a citizen of heaven, a child of God, a new creation- *Colossians 1:13-14*, “*For he has rescued us from the dominion of darkness and brought us into the kingdom of the Son he loves, in whom we have redemption, the forgiveness of sins.*”

## **Colossians 3:3-4**

**For you died, and your life is now hidden with Christ in God. When Christ, who is your life, appears, then you also will appear with him in glory.**

## **2 Corinthians 5:14-17**

**For Christ’s love compels us, because we are convinced that one died for all, and therefore all died. And he died for all, that those who live should no longer live for themselves but for him who died for them and was raised again. So from now on we regard no one from a worldly point of view. Though we once regarded Christ in this way, we do so no longer. Therefore, if anyone is in Christ, he is a new creation; the old has gone, the new has come!**

## **Galatians 2:20-21**

**I have been crucified with Christ and I no longer live, but Christ lives in me. The life I live in the body, I live by faith in the Son of God, who loved me and gave himself for me.**

## **But Abraham Has No Son**

Abraham is now the covenant friend of God. And God has promised him a seed (singular) through Sarah, a descendent who would be a blessing to the whole world. He has also promised him a land of rest and blessing upon Abraham and his descendants. There’s only one problem with all these promises, Abraham has no son through Sarah. Abraham had earlier given birth to Ishmael through Hagar, Sarah’s hand-maiden- Ishmael is the founder of the present day Arab nations, who hate Israel, Isaac’s offspring.

#### **Genesis 16:1-4**

**Now Sarai, Abram's wife, had borne him no children. But she had an Egyptian maidservant named Hagar; so she said to Abram, "The LORD has kept me from having children. Go, sleep with my maidservant; perhaps I can build a family through her." Abram agreed to what Sarai said. So after Abram had been living in Canaan ten years, Sarai his wife took her Egyptian maidservant Hagar and gave her to her husband to be his wife. He slept with Hagar, and she conceived.**

However, the promised seed was to come through Sarah. Now he's 100 years old and Sarah is 90. He's impotent and she is past the age of child bearing- Genesis 18:11. So now we see, if Abraham is going to have a son, it will definitely have to be a supernatural birth. Now remember that Abraham's name means, "A Father of many nations." God did this on purpose, since faith comes by hearing the Word of God (Romans 10:17), Abraham's faith began to grow until he could finally become fully persuaded. That is when the promise manifested in his life. Abraham finally comes to the realization and becomes fully persuaded that God is bound to the covenant and can't break it; so He has to deliver- Hebrews 6:13-19.

#### **Romans 4:17-22**

**As it is written: "I have made you a father of many nations." He is our father in the sight of God, in whom he believed-the God who gives life to the dead and calls things that are not as though they were. Against all hope, Abraham in hope believed and so became the father of many nations, just as it had been said to him, "So shall your offspring be." Without weakening in his faith, he faced the fact that his body was as good as dead-since he was about a hundred years old-and that Sarah's womb was also dead. Yet he did not waver through unbelief regarding the promise of God, but was strengthened in his faith and gave glory to God, being fully persuaded that God had power to do what he had promised. This is why "it was credited to him as righteousness."**

God is faithful to His part of the covenant and enables Abraham and Sarah to have a son. Abraham is also faithful to the covenant and circumcises Isaac.

#### **Genesis 21:1-5**

**Now the LORD was gracious to Sarah as he had said, and the LORD did for Sarah what he had promised. Sarah became pregnant and bore a son to Abraham in his old age, at the very time God had promised him. Abraham gave the name Isaac to the son Sarah bore him. When his son Isaac was eight days old, Abraham circumcised him, as God commanded him. Abraham was a hundred years old when his son Isaac was born to him.**

#### **Abraham's Test of Faith**

Do you recall that Abraham slept through the covenant? God did it all. Abraham had nothing to do with it. God is proving Himself faithful so now it's time to test Abraham's faithfulness to the covenant. Did he really believe in his heart? Was it just mental assent, an empty ritual he was going through. Remember, when a covenant is cut, each part completely surrenders himself in loving trust to the other party. He must be willing to give his total being, his total life, his total heart to the one he is in covenant with. It is a dying to one's self and a surrender of yourself to the one you are in covenant with. The blood covenant is not a mere intellectual understanding between Abraham and God, or you and God.

## **The Test**

There is only one way to find out Abraham's commitment to the covenant. That way is to test Abraham with that which is most dear to him- his only son. All over the world, men in blood covenant were willing to give that which was most dear to them. Devotees of pagan gods would give their first-born. Unfortunately this was a common practice; however this was something the Lord never required of His people to do (Deuteronomy 12:29-31; 18:10-13).

## **Jeremiah 19:5**

**They have built the high places of Baal to burn their sons in the fire as offerings to Baal - something I did not command or mention, nor did it enter my mind.**

Yet in Abraham's case, God tested him with this very thing, to sacrifice his son as a burnt offering. However, God would never let Abraham go through with this act, but there is something absolutely huge that we must understand about this event.

## **Genesis 22:1-2**

**Sometime later God tested Abraham. He said to him, "Abraham!" "Here I am," he replied. Then God said, "Take your son, your only son, Isaac, whom you love, and go to the region of Moriah. Sacrifice him there as a burnt offering on one of the mountains I will tell you about."**

Well, this is a tough test for Abraham even though offering the first-born was a common practice. Since Abraham was 100 years old at the time, and all the promises of God depended solely on him having a son. For a Middle-Easterner, like Abraham, to offer his only son's life was a far greater sacrifice than offering his own life- especially since he was a tired, worn out old man of 100. You see, in the Middle-Eastern mind, to die without a son was the most terrible thing in life. Your whole life would be considered a failure. So in offering his only son, Abraham would prove in the most supreme way that he loved God and would be faithful to the covenant which God required.

## **Abraham Offers Isaac**

Abraham arises early the next morning to begin his three day journey toward a mountain at a city called Salem, later to be called Jerusalem. This journey is described in Genesis 22. On the third day of the journey, God points out Mount Moriah where Isaac is to be sacrificed- Isaac is as good as dead in Abraham's heart. Many scholars believe that Mount Moriah is the same location where Jesus was crucified. If Abraham would be willing to offer his son, then God would in turn would offer His according to the covenant- this would make it legal for Jesus to come to earth as our Savior!

Notice the faith statement that Abraham makes in Genesis 22:5, stating that Abraham and Isaac would return back together. Abraham believed that even if God did take Isaac, He would resurrect him to be the first-born of the covenant children God had promised Abraham.

## **Genesis 22:5**

**He said to his servants, "Stay here with the donkey while I and the boy go over there. We will worship and then we will come back to you."**

## **Hebrews 11:17-19**

**By faith Abraham, when God tested him, offered Isaac as a sacrifice. He who had received the promises was about to sacrifice his one and only son, even though God had said to him, "It is through Isaac that your offspring will be reckoned." Abraham reasoned that God could raise the dead, and figuratively speaking, he did receive Isaac back from death.**

Now Isaac was no small child, probably in his twenties or early thirties. The Jewish age for maturity is 30 years old and Isaac did not marry until he was 40 and he had no children until he was 60. So as Abraham and Isaac are making their way up the hill, Isaac asks the obvious question, but notice Abraham's response.

#### **Genesis 22:6-8**

**Abraham took the wood for the burnt offering and placed it on his son Isaac, and he himself carried the fire and the knife. As the two of them went on together, Isaac spoke up and said to his father Abraham, "Father?" "Yes, my son?" Abraham replied. "The fire and wood are here," Isaac said, "but where is the lamb for the burnt offering?" Abraham answered, "God himself will provide the lamb for the burnt offering, my son." And the two of them went on together.**

#### **John 1:29**

**The next day John saw Jesus coming toward him and said, "Look, the Lamb of God, who takes away the sin of the world!"**

So Abraham builds the altar and places Isaac on it. Just as he is about to make the sacrifice and take his own son's life, God intervenes and sends an angel to stop him. Interesting that Isaac was willing to be sacrificed, he could have over-powered his father but didn't.

#### **Genesis 22:11-12**

**But the angel of the LORD called out to him from heaven, "Abraham! Abraham!" "Here I am," he replied. "Do not lay a hand on the boy," he said. "Do not do anything to him. Now I know that you fear God, because you have not withheld from me your son, your only son."**

Isaac symbolizes humanity in that we deserved to die for our sin. However, Jesus is the lamb of God that God had provided as our substitute, to take our place upon the altar of sacrifice and tasted death for us so we could receive eternal life.

#### **Genesis 22:13-14**

**Abraham looked up and there in a thicket he saw a ram caught by its horns. He went over and took the ram and sacrificed it as a burnt offering instead of his son. So Abraham called that place The LORD Will Provide. And to this day it is said, "On the mountain of the LORD it will be provided."**

However, the huge revelation here is that through Abraham's obedience in willingly offering his son as a sacrifice, made it legal for God the Father to do the same and send His only Son (Jesus) into the world as the Lamb of God who takes away our sins- *Hebrews 9:26*, "But now Jesus has appeared once for all at the end of the ages to do away with sin by the sacrifice of himself." Remember Abraham had a covenant with God, through his willingness to offer his son, God was able to reciprocate and offer His Son, Jesus- Satan could not challenge this, it was perfectly legal in the court of heaven.

However, unlike Isaac, God the Father allowed Jesus to be sacrificed for us and become a burnt offering for us three days and three nights in the heart of the earth as our ultimate substitute- *Matthew 12:40*. Once the claims of justice were satisfied and the penalty of sin atoned for, God the Father raised Jesus from the dead and seated him at His own right hand *Ephesians 1:19-22; 4:8-10*.

## **In Review**

So God cut covenant with Abraham. Satan tried to devour the acceptable sacrifice before the covenant could be completed, and God had to put Abraham to sleep to keep him from interfering. If Abraham tried to approach God on his own and help Him out, there could be no covenant made. It was all God's doings, strictly an act of grace on Abraham's behalf.

Christ, the pre-existing, eternal Son of God, took Abraham's place in the covenant ceremony. This was necessary because only God could enter into covenant with God- Abraham did nothing but believe. Christ stood in for Abraham and walked in his place representing him in the covenant. The covenant was sealed by circumcision. Abram's name was changed to Abraham, the father of many nations and a covenant friend of God. God became the God of Abraham. Abraham believed God and because of his belief, God counted his faith unto him as righteous.

## **What did Abraham Believe**

So what was it Abraham believed?

1. First of all, he believed in a supernatural birth. He believed God would supernaturally bring a son into the world. God did and Abraham called him Isaac.
2. He believed God enough to offer his only son as a sacrifice, and he did.
3. He believed for three days that his son was as good as dead, and he was.
4. He believed God would provide a sacrifice substitute or raise his son from the dead with many children coming to him through his son Isaac, and God did.
5. He believed on that very mountain, God would provide Himself the substitute sacrifice- a few thousand years later, at the same place, Jesus, the lamb of God was sacrificed for us.

Since Abraham believed these things in his heart, God gave Abraham His own robe of righteousness. Due to Abraham's faith, God was his shield, his protection. The righteousness of God was imputed or counted to Abraham's behalf because he believed.

## **7. The New Covenant Parallel**

Jesus, speaking to the Jewish leaders said, "Your father Abraham rejoiced that he was to see my day; he saw it and was glad." In John 8:56 RSV, the apostle Paul writes that the gospel was preached to Abraham (Galatians 3:8). In Romans 9:8 in the Living Bible Paul writes, "not all of Abraham's children are the children of God, but only those who believe the promise of salvation He made to Abraham." God asks us to believe the same thing He asked Abraham to believe. He asks us to believe that Christ, the Son of God, has entered into a covenant with God the Father on our behalf. We are separated from God by our sin and there's no way we can shoo away the fowls ourselves; there's nothing we can do to reconcile ourselves to God. There is no good work we can do to earn our way into the covenant. We can't help God out with our own righteousness. In fact, the only way we can come into the covenant is to confess helplessness before God and accept the one who walked in our place as Abraham did.

## **A Supernatural Birth**

So first, we are asked to believe in a supernatural birth. As with Abraham, God would bring His only begotten Son into the world in the flesh, supernaturally. He would be born of a virgin, the Seed of woman, thus not inheriting man's sin nature passed down from Adam. God did, and called His name Jesus- see John 1:1, 14; Luke 1:30-35. Jesus was circumcised on the eighth day to prove He was still honoring the covenant- Luke 2:21. Satan was there trying to swallow up and devour the sacrifice before the covenant could be completed. Through Herod's mass murders, Satan tried to kill Jesus when Jesus was still a baby. His parents, Joseph and Mary fled to Egypt and escaped. Satan again tried to kill Jesus, this time while in the wilderness. He tried to have Jesus stoned and thrown off a cliff. All of these attempts on Jesus' life were to stop the covenant from being completed.

### **Keeping the Covenant Promise**

However, God had promised Abraham that in his seed, all nations of the earth would be blessed. Now it's time for God to prove His fidelity to the covenant with Abraham and Abraham's seed. So at the age of 33, after three years of ministering, Christ Jesus began a long climb to the top of a mountain. And like Abraham, God placed the wood for the burnt offering on His Son's shoulders. That wood was the cross that Jesus voluntarily took on Himself. God offered His only Son as a burnt offering (in the heart of the earth, Hell) to be a blessing to the whole world.

When we, like Isaac turn to God and ask, "Where is the sacrifice? Who will take my place and be my sin substitute? Who will pay the penalty for me?" The answer comes back, God will provide Himself the Lamb for a burnt offering." Jesus Christ is the "Lamb of God." But where Isaac was not worthy and needed a substitute for himself, Jesus Christ is worthy. All the fullness of God dwelled in Him bodily-Colossians 1:19; 2:9. God truly did provide Himself.

### **The Perfect Substitute**

God Himself climbed up on that altar of the cross on the same mountain where Isaac was offered 2000 years earlier. But this time God did not stop the sacrifice, because the real substitute was already, on the altar. Jesus Christ is the "Lamb of God" slain from the foundations of the world and now He's come to shed His blood in fulfillment of the covenant. This is the covenant He swore by Himself to make, from the beginning. On that same mountain where Isaac was offered, the Lord did provide Himself as the substitute, and He was seen by the whole world. As with Abraham, a great darkness fell upon the earth-Matthew 27:45. So we are asked to believe that God sent His only Son to sacrifice Himself as a sin offering on our behalf.

### **Jesus the Resurrection**

Next, we are asked to believe that after Jesus was in the grave for three days, God the Father resurrected Him to be the first-born of the covenant children of God, and many would come thereafter through Jesus Christ. We even change our name and are called Christians. Jesus becomes our friend, our covenant partner.

### **The Heavenly Bride**

And seven weeks after the substitutionary sacrifice, the Holy Spirit comes to begin His work of seeking the bride for Christ. He wants to deliver us from our slavery to sin and bring us into the Promised Land of rest in Christ. Jesus is the heavenly bridegroom and He seeks us for a bride. All the while, Satan is there trying to keep us from entering the covenant. His words are very familiar to us, "You don't need all that blood business. You are a good person, an outstanding member of your community and a fine church worker. Why your morals are much better than your neighbors. And it's all relative anyway. Surely a loving God wouldn't turn you away. So go ahead and do your own thing. After all, God helps those who help themselves. So if it feels good, do it."

These are lies of Satan who disguises himself as an angel of light. In actuality, he wants to devour us like a roaring lion and sift us as wheat. However, the Holy Spirit brings us to Jesus who says, "I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man comes to the Father, but by me. The penalty for sin is death and without the shedding of blood there is no forgiveness of sin. And it's my blood you must accept on your behalf to become a covenant child of God." (See John 14:6; Romans 3:23; 6:23.)

### **Hebrews 9:22**

**In fact, the law requires that nearly everything be cleansed with blood, and without the shedding of blood there is no forgiveness.**

## **The Real Children of Abraham**

So we see that Abraham is the spiritual father of all who believe as he believed. Jesus said that the real children of Abraham do the works of Abraham- John 8:39. Again, Jesus said that the work of Abraham is that he believed the witness of God to His Son- John 6:29, see also Romans 3-4; Galatians 3:6-9.

## **The Child of God**

We become children of God by faith in Jesus Christ (Galatians 3:26); not evidenced by a circumcision of the flesh, but a circumcision of the heart. This happens when Christ puts His Spirit within us- John 20:22. When the Holy Spirit comes to live in us, He brings with Him spiritual blessings and a Promised Land of rest in God through Jesus Christ. It is the Holy Spirit within us who is greater than he (Satan) who is in the world. He is our source of strength. He fights our battles for us. He cleanses us of sin. When He fills us with His presence, we experience His love, His joy, His peace, His power, His grace, His glory and His life flowing through us.

When Jesus said, *“I am come that they might have life and that they might have it more abundantly,”* (John 10:10 KJV) He was talking about His life living in us through the person of the Holy Spirit. Therefore, we can do all things through Christ who strengthens us- Philippians 4:13. This is the Promised Land of rest God has made available to us. All who will may walk in this Land by entering into blood covenant with God through Jesus Christ the Lord.

## **Hebrews 4:1-3**

**Let us be careful that none of you be found to have fallen short of it. For we also have had the gospel preached to us, just as they did; but the message they heard was of no value to them, because those who heard did not combine it with faith. Now we who have believed enter that rest...**

## **Entering into the Covenant**

God desires to count you as righteous, just as He did Abraham. He wants to bless you with all spiritual blessings. He wants you to partake of His very own divine nature. But you must say “yes” to the covenant. You must agree with God that you are separated from Him by your sins, and there is nothing you can do to earn your way into the covenant. You then take Jesus into your life, accepting Him as the one who made the covenant walk for you, just as Abraham did.

When you enter into the covenant, all the promises made to Abraham become rightfully yours. *“For we are the circumcision, which worship God in the spirit, and rejoice in Jesus, and have no confidence in the flesh.”* (Philippians 3:3 KJV) *“For he is not a Jew, which is one outwardly; neither is that circumcision, which is outward in the flesh; But he is a Jew, which is one inwardly; and circumcision is that of the heart, in the spirit, and not in the letter; whose praise is not of men, but of God.”* (Romans 2:29 KJV). See also Deuteronomy 10:16; 30:6; Jeremiah 4:4; 9:25-26; Galatians 6:15; 2 Corinthians 5:17.

The covenant of love through the blood of Jesus Christ brings both Jew and Gentile into union with God. We both become one new creature in Christ Jesus. Through Him, we all have access by the Holy Spirit to God as our Heavenly Father. Therefore, *“There is neither Jew nor Greek, there is neither bond nor free, there is neither male nor female: for you are all one in Christ Jesus. And if you be Christ’s, then you are Abraham’s seed, and heirs according to the promise.”* (Galatians 3:28-29)

If you have just recently entered into the covenant, I have the authority to tell you that your sins are now remitted never to be remembered again according to John 20:23. Welcome to the family of God!

## **The Gospel of the Covenant**

According to Genesis 17:1, all nations would be blessed when the Covenant was cut. Abraham walked in his covenant with God as far as he knew. He knew if an enemy came against him, that enemy did not have a chance against him because of his covenant with God. He knew that there were things he could do in regards to that Covenant that God would do. As long as Abraham believed God, God would count this faith and confidence as righteousness and treated the man as though he did not sin.

There were certain things he was ignorant of, he did not know adultery was wrong, the Law had not yet been given. The wages of sin is death and will kill you, Abraham did not know that. Even though Abraham had that illegitimate child through Hagar, God still worked with him.

God said to walk perfect, upright and blameless before Him. Upholding the conditions of the covenant. Galatians 3:6, God cutting the Covenant with Abraham was in fact God preaching the gospel to him- the gospel is the message of the Covenant. The Gospel is the good news of the Covenant.- El (I am) Shadia (More than enough). Jesus said, go into all the world and preach the Covenant, the words of the Covenant produces Faith to receive. When we know it is a Covenant guaranteed by the body, blood, life and throne of Jesus according Hebrews 7:27. When I know it is a contract I have with God signed by the blood Jesus, His blood is sacred, His Word is sacred and I have every right to every ounce of it.

I have responsibilities as it pertains to this Covenant and if I break my responsibilities, it won't work. However, with an honest heart of integrity, standing on that Word of the Covenant, it will come to pass- God will see to it. The Holy Spirit was sent here on behalf of the New Covenant, we are living under it in this Dispensation of Grace.

We can't cause a Covenant to pass away or be annulled unless we replace it with a better one. The Covenant that Jesus ratified in His blood is eternal, so things like healing has not passed away!

### **Hebrews 7:12; 18-19, 22**

**For when there is a change of the priesthood, there must also be a change of the law. The former regulation is set aside because it was weak and useless (for the law made nothing perfect), and a better hope is introduced, by which we draw near to God. Because of this oath, Jesus has become the guarantee of a better covenant.**

### **Hebrews 8:6-8**

**But the ministry Jesus has received is as superior to theirs as the covenant of which he is mediator is superior to the old one, and it is founded on better promises. For if there had been nothing wrong with that first covenant, no place would have been sought for another. But God found fault with the people...**

According to Galatians 6:10, we don't keep the law of the New Covenant to get God to bless us, we keep the law of the Covenant to keep from breaking the Covenant with God out of love for God. If we don't break the Covenant with God we will be blessed, but if we are just keeping the law of love only and not believing the words of the Covenant, we are not going to walk very deep in the blessings of God. For instance, the rich young ruler, who kept all the law from birth and was rich because of it. Yet he did not recognize Jesus, when He offered him a high office, but turned it down. He did not know the Covenant he had with God, only the law of the Covenant- he missed the forest for the trees.

## **The Law of the New Covenant- Love**

### **John 13:34-35**

**“A new command I give you: Love one another. As I have loved you, so you must love one another. By this all men will know that you are my disciples, if you love one another.”**

### **John 15:12-13**

**My command is this: Love each other as I have loved you. Greater love has no one than this, that he lay down his life for his friends.**

When we are born again, we are made a new creation (2 Corinthians 5:17) and the Love of God becomes our new spiritual nature- Romans 5:5. God is love and we are born of God with His love nature (1 John 4:8, 16). When we walk in this New Covenant (Agape- Greek for the God kind of Love) we are fulfilling the law of the Old Covenant.

### **Romans 13:8-10**

**Let no debt remain outstanding, except the continuing debt to love one another, for he who loves his fellowman has fulfilled the law. The commandments, “Do not commit adultery,” “Do not murder,” “Do not steal,” “Do not covet,” and whatever other commandment there may be, are summed up in this one rule: “Love your neighbor as yourself.” Love does no harm to its neighbor. Therefore love is the fulfillment of the law.**

So how do we live out this new kind of supernatural love that is not of this earth? Well, it is by grace through faith we are saved according to Ephesians 2:8- this is a key spiritual principle. The Christian life must be lived out by God’s grace(God’s power in the Word) through our faith in God’s Word (released when we speak the Word). Otherwise if we try to walk in love by our own strength and in our own way, what we have is religion- which is putting ourselves under a curse.

### **Galatians 3:10-12**

**All who rely on observing the law are under a curse, for it is written: “Cursed is everyone who does not continue to do everything written in the Book of the Law.” Clearly no one is justified before God by the law, because, “The righteous will live by faith.” The law is not based on faith; on the contrary, “The man who does these things will live by them.”**

Christians do it all the time, take communion and perform religious works but have no idea that the New Testament is a Covenant that we have with Almighty God. He will always honor His Word – we must learn to stand on it individually.

“There is a people on the earth who are not moved by what they see and decided that what God says is so. I challenge my body, my bank account, the devil, everything on earth- spirit, soul and body and fear itself. I believe the Word of God, for I am born again, baptized with the Holy Spirit and I can do all things through Christ who strengthens me! All that He promised me in the Covenant is mine through Jesus and I am going to go out and do it.”

When Adam fell the curse came on the earth, Satan is the bringer of the curse upon the earth, the thief who comes only but to kill, steal and destroy. Satan is the curse manifested, the result of breaking God’s Covenant. Man was looking for a way out from the curse, God came to Abraham for that very purpose. The Covenant provides protection, healing prosperity, long life and posterity. God came to Abraham, I am Jehovah Jireh, I will bless you, it covered everything that had to do with the curse.

As long as we walk under the New Covenant with God, we are under that umbrella and can walk without the affect of the curse. However, all outsiders to the Covenant, the curse is upon them, the devil oppresses them. As long as we meet the conditions of the Covenant (upright and blameless); having received Jesus' righteousness, holiness and redemption- 1 Corinthians 1:30.

Christ has redeemed us from the curse of the Law- Galatians 3:13! Everything that Satan brought upon the earth through Adam's fall Jesus bore, in His Spirit, Soul and Body from Gethsemane to the resurrection. He bore it all, the curse, death and separation from God. Jesus absorbed the full force of death, His body was so marred and deformed, He did not even look like a man- Isaiah 53:1. Every strain of sickness, disease and the affects of sin was laid upon Jesus all at one time. Jesus was cursed for us, absorbing all of Satan's work so we can live free of the devil's work and reign in life- Romans 5:12-21.

Jesus went to the Cross so that we could have the Promise of Abraham, we could have the Covenant and walk in it without the curse falling upon use due to disobedience. For now, the effects of the curse is still out there because of Satan. It does not have any authority on us anymore because of Jesus. The Name and blood of Jesus has taken the authority out of the curse and anyone who stands up against it: sin, sickness, demons, fear etc. in the Name of Jesus, that curse has no choice but to bow its knee and say "Jesus is Lord" according to Philipians 2:9-11.

To Abraham and his Seed were the promises made. God made a Covenant with Abraham and with Jesus.

### **Galatians 3:16-18**

**The promises were spoken to Abraham and to his seed. The Scripture does not say "and to seeds," meaning many people, but "and to your seed," meaning one person, who is Christ. What I mean is this: The law, introduced 430 years later, does not set aside the covenant previously established by God and thus do away with the promise. For if the inheritance depends on the law, then it no longer depends on a promise; but God in his grace gave it to Abraham through a promise.**

We enter into this New Covenant through faith in Jesus, and that is how we become Abraham's seed.

### **Galatians 3:29**

**If you belong to Christ, then you are Abraham's seed, and heirs according to the promise.**

### **Galatians 3:6-9**

**Consider Abraham: "He believed God, and it was credited to him as righteousness." Understand, then, that those who believe are children of Abraham. The Scripture foresaw that God would justify the Gentiles by faith, and announced the gospel in advance to Abraham: "All nations will be blessed through you." So those who have faith are blessed along with Abraham, the man of faith.**

### **Acts 3:24-26**

**"Indeed, all the prophets from Samuel on, as many as have spoken, have foretold these days. And you are heirs of the prophets and of the covenant God made with your fathers. He said to Abraham, 'Through your offspring all peoples on earth will be blessed.' When God raised up his servant, he sent him first to you to bless you by turning each of you from your wicked ways."**

## **The Great Trap**

Had Satan realized the mystery of God concerning the redemption of mankind and Satan's own doom, he would not have crucified the Lord of Glory!

### **1 Corinthians 2:7-8 AMP**

**But rather what we are setting forth is a wisdom of God once hidden [from the human understanding] and now revealed to us by God — [that wisdom] which God devised and decreed before the ages for our glorification [to lift us into the glory of His presence]. None of the rulers of this age or world perceived and recognized and understood this, for if they had, they would never have crucified the Lord of glory.**

This is how God pulled the wool over Satan's eyes; by making an agreement with a man. He asked the man (Abraham), and the man agreed to it. There was nothing the devil could do about it. Knowing that it was too much for the man to keep the covenant perfectly by himself, God later called a man named Moses, to rejuvenate the Covenant of Abraham. I will write down all the articles of the Covenant put this law down for you before the people, if anyone breaks this law we will have a priesthood in place to atone for sin. The penalty of breaking the law is death as it was explained; it is a deadly Covenant, since God swore by Himself to keep His side.

### **Deuteronomy 29:24-28**

**All the nations will ask: "Why has the LORD done this to this land? Why this fierce, burning anger?" And the answer will be: "It is because this people abandoned the covenant of the LORD, the God of their fathers, the covenant he made with them when he brought them out of Egypt. They went off and worshiped other gods and bowed down to them, gods they did not know, gods he had not given them. Therefore the LORD's anger burned against this land, so that he brought on it all the curses written in this book. In furious anger and in great wrath the LORD uprooted them from their land and thrust them into another land, as it is now."**

The Word became flesh, Jesus. God gave His Word through the Abrahamic covenant, and instituted a priesthood that would take care of the punishment when men broke it. Instead of killing a man, they killed a lamb as a sacrifice for the man under the Old Covenant. God set a precedence for it as a legal act; the institution of blood sacrifice- the innocent offered on behalf of the guilty. The promises were made to Christ in Galatians 3:19. Jesus came because God had promised to Abraham that He would come- as the Lamb of God who would take away the sins of the world. As a result, God through the Abrahamic covenant cornered the devil, set him up. He promised things to Abraham, things that belong to Jesus and He promised things that belonged to Jesus that also belonged to Abraham.

Jesus came into the earth and walked a perfect and upright life before God, fulfilling all of the law of the Covenant. Satan didn't think He could do it, but He did. Jesus never did break the law of the Covenant at any point during his earthly life. The devil tried to deceive Jesus as he did Adam, Jesus was tempted at all points just as we are today, but did not sin. Jesus lived by the Covenant perfectly.

The Covenant is God's Word, Jesus had lived perfectly upon the earth and HAD NO RIGHT TO BE KILLED. Jesus should have lived forever, an eternal man just like Adam should have. Jesus is the last Adam (1 Corinthians 15:45), born of a virgin, He did not have the seed of death in Him from the first Adam in His blood. When Jesus came to the earth, Satan had not yet been defeated, he still had the authority that Adam had given him when he tempted Jesus with all the kingdoms of the earth in Luke chapter 4.

When Satan crucified Jesus, he was subjecting an innocent man illegally to death- since at that time Satan had the power of death according to Hebrews 2:14. Every other human deserved to die because of sin, but not Jesus, He never sinned. Through the resurrection, Jesus triumphed over the enemy and took the keys of death and hell as victory spoils and set us free- Revelation 1:18; Colossians 2:15; Ephesians 4:8-10.

### **Virgin Birth & The Covenant**

No man has ever had anything but death in him. It is passed on through man's seed and finds its way into the blood of the developing baby. The woman carries a child without the seed of her blood in the baby. Science has proven that the baby's blood comes from the man. God had a problem here, He would not violate His Word, He gave this earth to mankind and man gave it over to the devil. He has to honor what the devil has. God would have to do it legally- bring a Savior into the world. God would bring Jesus, born of a virgin to earth legally as a man and in so doing would set a trap for Satan. Jesus appeared to be an easy target for Satan's revenge. First Satan would try to get Jesus to sin as he had with Adam- it did not work!

### **Hebrews 4:15-16**

**For we do not have a high priest who is unable to sympathize with our weaknesses, but we have one who has been tempted in every way, just as we are- yet was without sin.**

Finally at God's appointed time, when Jesus had fulfilled God's purpose during His earthly ministry, the time came for the ultimate sacrifice- unlike Isaac, Jesus would not be spared. Jesus is the Lamb of God!

### **John 10:18**

**No one takes it from me, but I lay it down of my own accord. I have authority to lay it down and authority to take it up again. This command I received from my Father."**

### **John 1:29**

**The next day John saw Jesus coming toward him and said, "Look, the Lamb of God, who takes away the sin of the world!"**

### **Luke 24:25-27**

**He said to them, "How foolish you are, and how slow of heart to believe all that the prophets have spoken! Did not the Christ have to suffer these things and then enter his glory?" And beginning with Moses and all the Prophets, he explained to them what was said in all the Scriptures concerning himself.**

### **Luke 24:44-49**

**He said to them, "This is what I told you while I was still with you: Everything must be fulfilled that is written about me in the Law of Moses, the Prophets and the Psalms." Then he opened their minds so they could understand the Scriptures. He told them, "This is what is written: The Christ will suffer and rise from the dead on the third day, and repentance and forgiveness of sins will be preached in his name to all nations, beginning at Jerusalem. You are witnesses of these things. I am going to send you what my Father has promised; but stay in the city until you have been clothed with power from on high."**

The Death, Burial and Resurrection of Jesus was all preordained by God- it was the only way!

Luke 22:42-44

**In the Garden of Gethsemane**

**“Father, if you are willing, take this cup from me; yet not my will, but yours be done.” An angel from heaven appeared to him and strengthened him. And being in anguish, he prayed more earnestly, and his sweat was like drops of blood falling to the ground.**

**John 18:11 Peter trying to prevent the soldiers from taking Jesus**

**Jesus commanded Peter, “Put your sword away! Shall I not drink the cup the Father has given me?”**

**The Key to living victoriously under the Covenant of God**

Everything Jesus said while on the earth, he said as a man, a seed of Abraham. When Jesus was 8 days old He was circumcised. Jesus is a blood partner of the seed of Abraham, He has a blood Covenant with God. He and His Father are one, if God wants something done He has Jesus, if Jesus needs something He has God the Father. Jesus walked perfectly and uprightly before God in that Covenant, and everything that was God’s was His and everything that was His was God’s. When Jesus said rise and take your bed and walk, it was done!

“Glory to God I am Healed! I can see there are symptoms in my body, I don’t deny the sickness; I deny its right to rule in my body. I speak from my position in Christ Jesus and in Christ Jesus I am healed. Do I always talk from the supernatural standpoint, absolutely- I am imitating my heavenly Father and walking as Jesus did as the Scriptures tell me to. The longer I talk that way and talk the Covenant, the more it changes the natural circumstances.”

Get single minded on the Covenant of God. Jesus said lay hands on the sick, and they shall recover. Do I ever wonder if they will recover, that is none of my business, recovery is His business. He promised recovery, I didn’t; hands are my business and recovery is His. My part of the Covenant is to place my hands on a person and His part is to do the healing. Jesus’ part is to chase that disease out of here. Actually, the authority of sickness and disease has been broken. It does not have any more right to stand up in front of me in Jesus Name as it does in front of Jesus when He was standing here on earth in the flesh. We are Jesus in the flesh, as part of the Body of Christ. Jesus said, *“When you have seen me, you have seen the Father.”* We can say, “When you have seen me you have seen Jesus.” I no longer live, but Christ in me.

The blood of Jesus that was sprinkled in the Holy Of Holies on the mercy seat sealed my eternal redemption from Satan and his kingdom of darkness. I am living under Heavens rules not according to this miserable dead world. We are not of this world as Jesus is not of this world. We are crucified to the world and the world to us. The world may be sick and broke and miserable, but not us. We have a Covenant that makes us rich, having all that we can need. Through faith in the Covenant we have everything that we can think of to use for God’s Glory. In heavens bank we have untold riches, to spend as much as we have and fast as we can here on earth for the furtherance of God’s kingdom! Fearlessly let’s stand on the provisions of the New Covenant; when opportunities presents themselves, answer it with “It is Written!” Boldly declare the provisions of the New Covenant ratified in the Blood of Jesus.

**2 Chronicles 20:6-9**

**“O LORD, God of our fathers, are you not the God who is in heaven? You rule over all the kingdoms of the nations. Power and might are in your hand, and no one can withstand you. O our God, did you not drive out the inhabitants of this land before your people Israel and give it forever to the descendants of Abraham your friend? They have lived in it and have built in it a sanctuary for your Name, saying, ‘If calamity comes upon us, whether the sword of judgment, or plague or famine, we will stand in your presence before this temple that bears your Name and will cry out to you in our distress, and you will hear us and save us.’”**

**The Pentateuch**

Unit 5 Review:

Why does God want us to put Him in remembrance of His blood Covenant- Isaiah 43:26?

---

---

---

Why did God cut covenant with Himself instead of with Abram directly?

---

---

---

What was significant about the seal of circumcision given to Abraham?

---

---

---

What does it mean to be called a friend of God like Abraham in James 2:23-24? Jesus called us friends in John 15:13-16.

---

---

---

What is the significance of Jesus being called the Lamb of God?

---

---

---

## **B. Abraham**

### **Patriarchs (head of a father's house):**

The founder or ruler of a tribe, family, or clan; the forefathers of the Israelite nation. The phrase, "The Patriarchs" usually refers to the tribal leaders of Israel who lived before the time of Moses. Specifically, it is used of Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, and the 12 sons of Jacob. Therefore, the patriarchs were the ancestors of the Israelites from Abraham to Joseph.

### **Hebrews 7:4- Just think how great he(Melchizedek) was: Even the patriarch Abraham gave him a tenth of the plunder!**

The name Abraham was given him by God meaning, "Father of a multitude" was the first and great patriarch in the Bible of ancient Israel and a primary model of faithfulness for Christianity. The accounts about Abraham are found in Genesis 12:1 – 25:11. He is the ancestor of the Hebrews, Arabs, Edomites, and kindred tribes.

#### **1. The Call of Abram**

Abraham was a native of Chaldea, and descendant in the ninth generation from Shem, the son of Noah. His father's name was Terah, and he was born in the land of Ur (present day Iraq) his home, is the modern Mugheir, the primeval capital of Chaldea in ancient southern Babylonia. Prior to age 70 when Abram was called to leave his homeland, we do not have much record.

When Abraham was about seventy years of age he, with his father, Terah, his nephew Lot and his wife Sarah, went to live in Haran

#### **Genesis 11:26-32**

**After Terah had lived 70 years, he became the father of Abram, Nahor and Haran. This is the account of Terah. Terah became the father of Abram, Nahor and Haran. And Haran became the father of Lot. While his father Terah was still alive, Haran died in Ur of the Chaldeans, in the land of his birth. Abram and Nahor both married. The name of Abram's wife was Sarai, and the name of Nahor's wife was Milcah; she was the daughter of Haran, the father of both Milcah and Iscah. Now Sarai was barren; she had no children. Terah took his son Abram, his grandson Lot son of Haran, and his daughter-in-law Sarai, the wife of his son Abram, and together they set out from Ur of the Chaldeans to go to Canaan. But when they came to Haran, they settled there. Terah lived 205 years, and he died in Haran.**

#### **Acts 7:2-4**

**The God of glory appeared to our father Abraham while he was still in Mesopotamia, before he lived in Haran. 'Leave your country and your people,' God said, 'and go to the land I will show you.' "So he left the land of the Chaldeans and settled in Haran**

Only five years later, at the age of 75 Abram's father dies and God calls him a second time. Notice that God eludes to a covenant with Abram- "I will make you into a great nation and I will bless you".

#### **Genesis 12:1-3**

**The LORD had said to Abram, "Leave your country, your people and your father's household and go to the land I will show you. "I will make you into a great nation and I will bless you; I will make your name great, and you will be a blessing. I will bless those who bless you, and whoever curses you I will curse; and all peoples on earth will be blessed through you."**

Notice that God did not tell him specifically where he was going, yet Abram by faith, obeyed and went. For this reason and for many others, Abraham is regarded as a great man of faith. Suppose God were to speak to you and instructed you to go west, not knowing what was ahead of you until you got there—would you go? Remember they did not have the interstate back then or rest stops.

### **Hebrews 11:8-10**

**By faith Abraham, when called to go to a place he would later receive as his inheritance, obeyed and went, even though he did not know where he was going. By faith he made his home in the promised land like a stranger in a foreign country; he lived in tents, as did Isaac and Jacob, who were heirs with him of the same promise. For he was looking forward to the city with foundations, whose architect and builder is God.**

### **Genesis 12:4-7**

**So Abram left, as the LORD had told him; and Lot went with him. Abram was seventy-five years old when he set out from Haran. He took his wife Sarai, his nephew Lot, all the possessions they had accumulated and the people they had acquired in Haran, and they set out for the land of Canaan, and they arrived there. Abram traveled through the land as far as the site of the great tree of Moreh at Shechem. At that time the Canaanites were in the land. The LORD appeared to Abram and said, “To your offspring I will give this land.” So he built an altar there to the LORD, who had appeared to him.**

### **Arrival in Canaan**

He traveled until he came into the land of Canaan, and there he formed his first encampment beside the oak of Moreh, between the mountains of Ebal and Gerizim, where his strong faith was rewarded by the second promise that his seed should possess this land. Note: each blessing is revealed as each step of faith is obeyed.

Abraham’s manner of life may best be described as being “semi-nomadic,” and illustrated by the somewhat similar conditions prevailing today in those border-communities of the East that fringe the Syrian and Arabian deserts. Residence is in tents, wealth consists of flocks, herds and slaves and there is no ownership of ground; only at most a proprietorship in a well or a tomb. All this in common with the nomad.

### **To Egypt**

The first bump in the road in Abram’s journey in following God, there was famine in the land of Canaan. So compelled by a famine, he went into Egypt. Fearing that the beauty of Sarah would tempt the Egyptians and endanger his life, he caused her to pass for his sister, which was partly true, for she was his half sister, having the same father but a different mother (Genesis 20:12). Sarah was taken to the royal harem and Abraham was loaded with valuable gifts which he did not deserve, but could not be refused without an insult to the king. Warned of his mistake, Pharaoh summoned Abram and indignantly rebuked him for his deception. He then dismissed Abram, who went out of Egypt, taking his wife and Lot and his great wealth with him.

### **Genesis 12:20**

**Then Pharaoh gave orders about Abram to his men, and they sent him on his way, with his wife and everything he had.**

## **Back to Canaan**

Abram returns to Canaan since the famine had passed. Having reached his former encampment between Bethel and Ai, he again established the worship of Jehovah (Genesis 13:3-4). The increased wealth of Abram and Lot became the cause of their separation. The country did not furnish sufficient pasture for the flocks and herds of both Abram and Lot, and dissensions arose between their herdsmen. In order to avoid strife and consequent weakness before their enemies, Abram proposed that they occupy different districts.

He gave the choice of locality to Lot, who selected the plain of the Jordan and pitched his tent there near Sodom. The childless Abram was rewarded with a third blessing, in which God reiterated His promise to give him the land and a posterity as numerous as the dust of the earth. Then Abram moved his tent, dwelt in Mamre near Hebron and built an altar.

## **Genesis 13:14-17**

**The LORD said to Abram after Lot had parted from him, “Lift up your eyes from where you are and look north and south, east and west. All the land that you see I will give to you and your offspring forever. I will make your offspring like the dust of the earth, so that if anyone could count the dust, then your offspring could be counted. Go, walk through the length and breadth of the land, for I am giving it to you.”**

What Lot thought was a good place to live was a big mistake. Lot was now involved in danger. The five cities of the plain had become tributary to Chedorlaomer (Kedorlaomer, NIV), king of Elam. In the thirteenth year of their subjection they revolted, and Chedorlaomer (Kedorlaomer) marched against them with three allied kings. The kings of Sodom and Gomorrah fell, their cities were spoiled, and Lot and his goods were carried off (Genesis 14:1-12). Word was brought to Abram, who immediately armed his dependents, 318 men and with his Amorite allies overtook and defeated them at Dan, near the springs of Jordan. Abram and his men pursued them as far as the neighborhood of Damascus and then returned with Lot and all the men and goods that had been taken away, this took place around 2080 BC.

In Genesis 14:18, Abram has a meeting with Melchizedek. Arriving at Salem on their return, they were met by Melchizedek, king of Salem and “priest of God Most High,” who brought him bread and wine. He also blessed Abram in the name of the most high God and Abram presented him with a tenth of the spoils. By strict right, founded on the war usages still subsisting in Arabia, Abram had a claim to all the recovered goods. The king of Sodom recognized this right, but Abram refused to accept anything, even from a thread to a shoe latchet, lest any should say, “I have made Abram rich” - Genesis 14:17-24.

## **The Promise of an Heir**

### **Genesis 15:1-6**

**After this, the word of the LORD came to Abram in a vision: “Do not be afraid, Abram. I am your shield, your very great reward.” But Abram said, “O Sovereign LORD, what can you give me since I remain childless and the one who will inherit my estate is Eliezer of Damascus?” And Abram said, “You have given me no children; so a servant in my household will be my heir.” Then the word of the LORD came to him: “This man will not be your heir, but a son coming from your own body will be your heir.” He took him outside and said, “Look up at the heavens and count the stars if indeed you can count them.” Then he said to him, “So shall your offspring be.” Abram believed the LORD, and he credited it to him as righteousness.**

Ever since the fall of man in the Garden of Eden, God was looking for a man in order to enter into covenant with to bring about the “Seed of the Woman” (Jesus) into the earth- to undo what Satan had done. God found that man in Abram, the primary aspect of God’s covenant was to provide Abram with an heir by which a lineage would be created. In this way Jesus would be born as a descendent of Abraham- the consummation of the covenant, a promise fulfilled.

Yet Abram was looking at the logistics of his situation, both he and Sarai were barren, unable to have children. The custom at that time was that the head servant would inherit his estate- Eliezer of Damascus. However, God made it clear that Abram would have a son from his own body. Abram had a choice, would he look at his circumstance or believe God concerning His promise.

#### **Romans 4:17-22**

**As it is written: “I have made you a father of many nations.” He is our father in the sight of God, in whom he believed-the God who gives life to the dead and calls things that are not as though they were. Against all hope, Abraham in hope believed and so became the father of many nations, just as it had been said to him, “So shall your offspring be.” Without weakening in his faith, he faced the fact that his body was as good as dead- since he was about a hundred years old-and that Sarah’s womb was also dead. Yet he did not waver through unbelief regarding the promise of God, but was strengthened in his faith and gave glory to God, being fully persuaded that God had power to do what he had promised. This is why “it was credited to him as righteousness.”**

As a result, God cuts covenant with Abram in Genesis 15:7-21. Interesting that God predicts the 400 years of slavery concerning the Israelites in Egypt and subsequent deliverance and becoming wealthy- for all those years of back pay! God makes mention of them coming back and taking possession of the Promised Land from the Canaanites.

Ah, the birth of Ishmael- big mistake. Abraham had lived ten years in Canaan and still he had no child. Sarah, now seventy-five years of age, followed contemporary custom and allowed Abraham to take Hagar, her Egyptian handmaid, who bore him Ishmael- the ancestor of the modern day Arab nations.

#### **Genesis 16:1-4**

**Now Sarai, Abram’s wife, had borne him no children. But she had an Egyptian maidservant named Hagar; so she said to Abram, “The LORD has kept me from having children. Go, sleep with my maidservant; perhaps I can build a family through her.” Abram agreed to what Sarai said. So after Abram had been living in Canaan ten years, Sarai his wife took her Egyptian maidservant Hagar and gave her to her husband to be his wife. He slept with Hagar, and she conceived.**

Family quarreling was the inevitable result and Hagar fled from Sarai, who dealt harshly with her maidservant when that maidservant got cocky and despised her mistress.

#### **Genesis 16:4-6**

**When she knew she was pregnant, she began to despise her mistress. Then Sarai said to Abram, “You are responsible for the wrong I am suffering. I put my servant in your arms, and now that she knows she is pregnant, she despises me. May the LORD judge between you and me.” “Your servant is in your hands,” Abram said. “Do with her whatever you think best.” Then Sarai mistreated Hagar; so she fled from her.**

Things did not look good for Hagar, but since the baby within her womb was from the loins of Abram, he was destined for a life of significance. When Hagar had fled, an angel of the Lord appeared to her.

### **Genesis 16:9-12**

**Then the angel of the LORD told her, “Go back to your mistress and submit to her.” The angel added, “I will so increase your descendants that they will be too numerous to count.” The angel of the LORD also said to her: “You are now with child and you will have a son. You shall name him Ishmael, for the LORD has heard of your misery. He will be a wild donkey of a man; his hand will be against everyone and everyone’s hand against him, and he will live in hostility toward all his brothers.”**

This was not God’s plan, they became impatient; instead of trusting God’s timing they took matters into their own hands. The nation of Israel throughout the centuries has certainly regretted that decision, especially today. Ishmael’s descendents, the Arabs, hate their half-brother Jewish nation of Israel. So now we know where all this started from!

## **2. The Covenant is Confirmed**

Please Read Genesis Chapter 17

Thirteen more years passed, and Abram reached his ninety-ninth year. God appeared to him and favored him with still more explicit declarations of His purpose. He changed his name from Abram to Abraham, renewed his covenant and in token of it commanded that he and the males of his company should receive circumcision. In verse 15, Sarai’s name was changed to Sarah. God took the “h” out of Jehovah, and added it to Abraham’s and Sarah’s names as a result of the covenant.

Abraham was assured that Sarah, then ninety years old, would in a year become the mother of Isaac, the heir of the special promises. Abraham wavered in faith and prayed for Ishmael, whom God promised abundantly to bless, but declared that He would establish his covenant with Isaac. That very day Abraham, his son Ishmael and all the males of his household were circumcised.

Notice, because Abraham is a covenant partner with God, his life, prayers and possessions are significant. He prays for Ishmael that he would live under God’s blessing and God honors that request and blesses Ishmael.

In Genesis chapter 18 Abraham was greeted by three visitors as he was sitting in his tent door under the oaks of Mamre. Two were angels and the third was Jehovah Himself- Jesus! Abraham offered them his hospitality, food and drink according to oriental custom. The promise of a son by Sarah was renewed, but Sarah was ease dropping on their conversation, laughed- being 90 years old at the time. However, she was rebuked by the Lord for her lack of faith. When asked why she laughed, she made a second mistake and lied about it- the Lord is so merciful!

### **Genesis 18:9-15**

**“Where is your wife Sarah?” they asked him. “There, in the tent,” he said. Then the LORD said, “I will surely return to you about this time next year, and Sarah your wife will have a son.” Now Sarah was listening at the entrance to the tent, which was behind him. Abraham and Sarah were already old and well advanced in years, and Sarah was past the age of childbearing. So Sarah laughed to herself as she thought, “After I am worn out and my master is old, will I now have this pleasure?” Then the LORD said to Abraham, “Why did Sarah laugh and say, ‘Will I really have a child, now that I am old?’ Is anything too hard for the LORD? I will return to you at the appointed time next year and Sarah will have a son.” Sarah was afraid, so she lied and said, “I did not laugh.” But he said, “Yes, you did laugh.”**

Let's look at a profound statement that God made that sheds some insight as to why Abraham was chosen over other men. As it was for Abraham (concerning Sodom and Gomorrah), the Holy Spirit shows us things to come so we too can act as intercessors, since we have access to the throne of Grace through Jesus Christ. God is not willing that any should perish, we are the salt and light of the earth; we preserve it from destruction and illuminate it with the knowledge of God.

### **Genesis 18:17-19**

**Then the LORD said, "Shall I hide from Abraham what I am about to do? Abraham will surely become a great and powerful nation, and all nations on earth will be blessed through him. For I have chosen him, so that he will direct his children and his household after him to keep the way of the LORD by doing what is right and just, so that the LORD will bring about for Abraham what he has promised him."**

I love the last verse in particular because it shows God's priority and ultimatum that we raise up godly seed, by passing on the revelation of God to our children in order for godliness to perpetuate throughout each generation. A key purpose for marriage according to Malachi 2:14-16 is to raise up godly children.

The visitors continued on their journey, Abraham walking some of the way with them. Since Abraham was the friend of God, the Lord revealed to him the coming judgment upon Sodom and Gomorrah. Next, what followed was that wondrous pleading on behalf of the two cities- no doubt his nephew Lot was on his mind. Abraham reasons with God that if at least 10 righteous men were in the cities, He should spare them. It appears that Lot was the only one. God is looking for intercessors, those who will stand in the gap and mediate on behalf of individuals, churches, cities and nations.



The destruction of Sodom and Gomorrah occurred around 2063 BC- their sin reached full measure. God's divine judgment upon irrevocable evil was an act of mercy for future generations that would have been born under such evil. Similar to when the Israelites wiped out the inhabitants of the Promised Land, at a time when the sin of the Amorites would have reached full measure(Genesis 15:16).

Abraham rose early the next morning to see the fate of the cities and saw their smoke rising "up as the smoke of a furnace" but God remembered Abraham and brought Lot out of the catastrophe- Genesis 19:27-29. The whole account is found in Genesis chapter 19; to understand the grim details of the story. Interesting side point that; the nations of the Moabites and Ammonites were the result of incest between Lot and his two daughters.

In Genesis chapter 20 Abraham journeyed southward, and dwelt between Kadesh and Shur, and sojourned in Gerar. Here we find the story of Abraham and Abimelech, who king of Gerar. Abraham, up to his old tricks like he had done in Egypt lied and claimed that Sarah was his sister. So innocently Abimelech sent for and took Sarah, but was warned of God in a dream and sent her back the next morning to Abraham, whom he reproofed for the deceit he had employed. He was healed in answer to Abraham's prayer. Another example when you are in covenant with God, He takes it personal when people mess with you, even if it was innocent. We are a covenant friend of God like Abraham through Jesus, so our prayers are powerful and effective as well- according to James 5:16.

## Isaac is Born

At last when Abraham was one hundred years old and Sarah ninety, the long-promised heir was born in 2061 BC. The altered position of Ishmael in the family excited the ill will of himself and his mother. This was so apparent in the mocking behavior of Ishmael at the weaning of Isaac that Sarah insisted that he and Hagar should be sent away, to which Abraham reluctantly consented.

## Galatians 4:22-31

**For it is written that Abraham had two sons, one by the slave woman and the other by the free woman. His son by the slave woman was born in the ordinary way; but his son by the free woman was born as the result of a promise. These things may be taken figuratively, for the women represent two covenants. One covenant is from Mount Sinai and bears children who are to be slaves: This is Hagar. Now Hagar stands for Mount Sinai in Arabia and corresponds to the present city of Jerusalem, because she is in slavery with her children. But the Jerusalem that is above is free, and she is our mother. For it is written:**

**“Be glad, O barren woman, who bears no children; break forth and cry aloud, you who have no labor pains; because more are the children of the desolate woman than of her who has a husband.” Now you, brothers, like Isaac, are children of promise. At that time the son born in the ordinary way persecuted the son born by the power of the Spirit. It is the same now. But what does the Scripture say? “Get rid of the slave woman and her son, for the slave woman’s son will never share in the inheritance with the free woman’s son.” Therefore, brothers, we are not children of the slave woman, but of the free woman.**

Yet God was with Hagar and Ishmael just as God had promised Abraham. Since Ishmael was still Abraham’s son, he was a benefactor of his father’s covenant with God in being blessed.

**Genesis 21:13; 20-21- “I will make the son of the maidservant into a nation also, because he is your offspring.” God was with the boy as he grew up. He lived in the desert and became an archer. While he was living in the Desert of Paran, his mother got a wife for him from Egypt.**

## Abraham’s Great Test

In 2036 BC, when Isaac was nearly grown (twenty-five years old, says Josephus Ant. 1.13.2) God put Abraham to an incredible test of faith and obedience. He commanded him to go to Mt. Moriah (perhaps where Golgotha is, where Jesus would be offered up) and there offered up Isaac- whose death would potentially nullify all his hopes and promises. However, God had something else in mind.

## Genesis 22:1-2

**Sometime later God tested Abraham. He said to him, “Abraham!” “Here I am,” he replied. Then God said, “Take your son, your only son, Isaac, whom you love, and go to the region of Moriah. Sacrifice him there as a burnt offering on one of the mountains I will tell you about.”**

God is clearly against human sacrifice with Jesus having been the only exception. Abraham had a covenant relationship with God for the purpose of establishing a lineage of descendants to Jesus. The Word of God would come as the Seed of the woman, the Savior of the World. Before God could offer His Son, Abraham had to show his willingness to offer his only son. Abraham understood that it was impossible for God to lie, God had bound Himself to His own Word!



### **Hebrews 6:13-19**

**When God made his promise to Abraham, since there was no one greater for him to swear by, he swore by himself, saying, “I will surely bless you and give you many descendants.” And so after waiting patiently, Abraham received what was promised. Men swear by someone greater than themselves, and the oath confirms what is said and puts an end to all argument. Because God wanted to make the unchanging nature of his purpose very clear to the heirs of what was promised, he confirmed it with an oath. God did this so that, by two unchangeable things in which it is impossible for God to lie, we who have fled to take hold of the hope offered to us may be greatly encouraged. We have this hope as an anchor for the soul, firm and secure.**

With the promise firmly rooted in Abraham’s mind, he reasoned that God would have to raise Isaac from the dead if he sacrificed him. God had already said that it would be through Isaac that his offspring would be reckoned- what incredible trust and faith!

### **Hebrews 11:17-19**

**By faith Abraham, when God tested him, offered Isaac as a sacrifice. He who had received the promises was about to sacrifice his one and only son, even though God had said to him, “It is through Isaac that your offspring will be reckoned.” Abraham reasoned that God could raise the dead, and figuratively speaking, he did receive Isaac back from death.**

Imagine what was going through Abraham’s mind as he and Isaac were walking up the mountain and Isaac asking his father:

### **Genesis 22:7-8**

**Isaac spoke up and said to his father Abraham, “Father?” “Yes, my son?” Abraham replied. “The fire and wood are here,” Isaac said, “but where is the lamb for the burnt offering?” Abraham answered, “God himself will provide the lamb for the burnt offering, my son.” And the two of them went on together.**

Abraham had made some mistakes, but it took an incredible amount of faith for him to offer his only son without ever arguing, complaining or doubting God. What is interesting is that when Abraham went to sacrifice his son, he was 125 years old and Isaac was around 25 years old. Isaac willingly submitted himself to his father. Yet as Abraham raised the knife and was about to plunge it into his only son, the angel of the Lord called out his name.

### **Genesis 22:11-14**

**But the angel of the LORD called out to him from heaven, “Abraham! Abraham!” “Here I am,” he replied. “Do not lay a hand on the boy,” he said. “Do not do anything to him. Now I know that you fear God, because you have not withheld from me your son, your only son.” Abraham looked up and there in a thicket he saw a ram caught by its horns. He went over and took the ram and sacrificed it as a burnt offering instead of his son. So Abraham called that place The LORD Will Provide. And to this day it is said, “On the mountain of the LORD it will be provided.”**

Abraham called the name of the place Jehovah-Jireh, “The Lord Will Provide.” Because of Abraham’s act of faith and obedience it legally sealed the covenant, now God could do the same and sacrifice His only Son 2,000 years later. Notice in verse 18 of Genesis chapter 22, *“through your offspring all nations on earth will be blessed, because you have obeyed me.”* The offspring here is referring to Jesus, making salvation available to all the nations of the world. One man’s obedience was all that was required. So it is with us, God is looking for a people who would be willing an obedient to yield themselves as vessels for God’s plans and purposes to be established upon the earth. Yes Lord, here am I, send me!

### **Genesis 22:15-18**

**The angel of the LORD called to Abraham from heaven a second time and said, “I swear by myself, declares the LORD, that because you have done this and have not withheld your son, your only son, I will surely bless you and make your descendants as numerous as the stars in the sky and as the sand on the seashore. Your descendants will take possession of the cities of their enemies, and through your offspring all nations on earth will be blessed, because you have obeyed me.”**

### **The Death of Sarah**

The next event recorded in Abraham’s life is the death of Sarah, 127 years of age at or near Hebron. Abraham purchased from Ephron the Hittite the cave of Machpelah, the field in which it stood and all the trees in the field and there he buried Sarah- Genesis Chapter 23.

### **Marriage of Isaac**

His next care was to procure a suitable wife for Isaac. He commissioned his eldest servant to go to Haran, where Nahor had settled and get a wife for his son from his own family. The servant went and directed by God selected Rebekah, the daughter of Bethuel son of Nahor. In due time he returned and Rebekah was escorted into Sarah’s tent as described in Genesis chapter 24.

An interesting point I need to make about Abraham in regards to what his servant said to Rebekah’s family. When we are in covenant with Almighty God, walking in obedience and appropriating the provisions of the covenant we result in tremendous blessing!

### **Genesis 24:35**

**The LORD has blessed my master abundantly, and he has become wealthy. He has given him sheep and cattle, silver and gold, menservants and maidservants, and camels and donkeys.**

In Genesis chapter 25 we see some time after that Abraham took on another wife, Keturah; by whom he had several more children. These addition children together with Ishmael, were given some inheritance by their father during his lifetime and were sent away to the East; in order that they might not interfere with Isaac.

Abraham died when he was 175 years old and was buried by his two sons, Isaac and Ishmael in the cave of Machpelah in 1986 BC .

Abraham is the father of our faith and plays a huge role in God’s redemptive plan for humanity. All throughout Scripture numerous references are made to him- like John 8:38-59; Galatians 3:6-18; James 2:21-23.

For instance, almost 2,000 years after the death of Abraham, at the birth of John the Baptist, his father referenced the Abrahamic covenant.

### **Luke 1:67-75**

**His father Zechariah was filled with the Holy Spirit and prophesied: “Praise be to the Lord, the God of Israel, because he has come and has redeemed his people. He has raised up a horn of salvation for us in the house of his servant David (as he said through his holy prophets of long ago), salvation from our enemies and from the hand of all who hate us- to show mercy to our fathers and to remember his holy covenant, the oath he swore to our father Abraham: to rescue us from the hand of our enemies, and to enable us to serve him without fear in holiness and righteousness before him all our days.”**

Here is an interesting point to make. When the Old Covenant saints died, they could not go to heaven until Jesus came and provided purification from sins. As a result, until Jesus came, they were escorted by angels to the center of the earth in a compartment of hell called Abraham's bosom. There was no torment there, but it was a prison, for they were waiting for the coming Messiah.

Please read Luke 16:19-31 for reference.  
Also read Ephesians 4:8-10 & 1 Peter 3:18-20

In speaking of Abraham and him looking forward to the New Jerusalem in Revelation chapter 21:

**Hebrews 11:10**

**For he was looking forward to the city with foundations, whose architect and builder is God.**

In three great world religions-Judaism, Islam, and Christianity-Abraham is revered as one of the eminent men of all time- "*...and so you shall be a blessing.*" By his own personal example of faith and the faith manifested by his descendants, Abraham has been a worldwide blessing- "*I will bless those who bless you, and the one who curses you I will curse.*" This covenant reality has been remarkably fulfilled even to this day. Nations who have persecuted the Jews have fared ill, and those who have protected them have prospered. That is another reason why America has prospered so much- we are Israel's ally.

**In the Koran**

To Mohammed, Abraham is of importance in several ways. He is mentioned in no less than 188 verses of the Koran, more than any other character except Moses. He is one of the series of prophets sent by God. He is the common ancestor of the Arab and the Jew. He plays the same role of religious reformer over against his idolatrous kinsmen as Mohammed himself played. He builds the first pure temple for God's worship (at Mecca!) As in the Bible, so it is in the Koran, Abraham is the recipient of the Divine covenant for himself and for his posterity and exhibits in his character the appropriate virtues of one so highly favored: faith, righteousness, purity of heart, gratitude, fidelity and compassion. He receives marked tokens of the Divine favor in the shape of deliverance, guidance, visions, angelic messengers (no such credit for Mohammed), miracles, assurance of resurrection and entrance into paradise. He is called "Imam of the peoples" (2:118)

Unit 6 Review:

What does Abraham's name mean and why is it significant?

---

---

---

Why did it require Abraham to exercise faith when God called him and how does that apply to us today?

---

---

---

What was the mistake Abraham made with Ishmael, and what were the ramifications of this mistake?

---

---

---

What insight do we see in God speaking with Abraham just before the destruction of Sodom and Gomorrah?

---

---

---

Why was it so important for Abraham to be willing to offer up Isaac, his only son as a sacrifice?

---

---

---

## C. Isaac

ISAAC (i'zak; Heb. yisshaq, "laughter," i.e., "mockery"). The only son of Abraham by Sarah. The name Isaac was fitly chosen by Jehovah in commemoration of the child's miraculous birth in Genesis 17:19, and of the obvious laughter and joy as a result.

### 1. Personal History

#### Early Life

The birth of Isaac occurred around 2061 BC when Abraham was a hundred years old and Sarah ninety-Genesis 21:5. He was circumcised when he was eight days old and his mother's skeptical laughter was turned into exultation and joy. The next event recorded of Isaac is his weaning, according to Eastern custom when he was two years old- Genesis 21:8. In honor of the occasion Abraham made a great feast, as an expression, no doubt of his joy. This happiness was naturally shared by the mother and the friends of the parents. However, Ishmael saw no occasion for rejoicing knowing that Isaac was Abraham's heir. He mocked Isaac and so angered Sarah, that she insisted upon him being sent away- Genesis 21:9-14.

#### Offering

We are next informed of the event connected with the command of God to offer Isaac up as a sacrifice on a mountain in the land of Moriah according to Genesis 22. By 2045 BC he was probably about twenty-five years of age according to Josephus (Ant. 1.13.2). It appears from the narrative that Isaac was not aware that he was to be offered until the act was in process of being accomplished (Genesis 22:7-8) and then offered no resistance. Isaac's conduct proved him to be a fitting type of Jesus who came to do not His own will, but the will of Him that sent Him.

#### Marriage

A long gap occurs in the narrative of Isaac's life, and we hear nothing of him until his marriage to Rebekah. We may reasonably infer that a period of twenty years or more elapsed since the last event recorded concerning him; for his marriage took place after his mother's death, which occurred when Isaac was thirty-seven years old. In obedience to the command of Abraham, a trusted servant went to Mesopotamia to take, under divine direction, a partner from among his own kin for Isaac. Rebekah was chosen and became the wife of Isaac when he was forty years of age, about 2021 BC- Genesis 24.

#### Death of Abraham

Previous to his death Abraham made a final distribution of his property, leaving to Isaac his possessions, whereas the sons of Hagar and Keturah were sent away with presents into the eastern country of Arabia. Isaac and Ishmael buried their father in the cave of Machpelah and Isaac took up his residence by Beer-lahai-roi- Genesis 25:5-11.

#### Children

After about twenty years around 2001 BC, and in answer to prayer, Rebekah gave birth to two sons, Jacob and Esau- Genesis 25:21-26. Notice the power of a covenant prayer made by Isaac on behalf of his wife.

#### Genesis 25:21-22

**Isaac prayed to the LORD on behalf of his wife, because she was barren. The LORD answered his prayer, and his wife Rebekah became pregnant.**

There was something very interesting going on in the womb of Rebekah that would have a profound influence on their lives and reverberate throughout time. There was a prophetic revelation given to her.

### **Genesis 25:22-23**

**The babies jostled each other within her, and she said, “Why is this happening to me?” So she went to inquire of the LORD. The LORD said to her, “Two nations are in your womb, and two peoples from within you will be separated; one people will be stronger than the other, and the older will serve the younger.”**

Genesis chapter 36 talks about Esau’s decedents being the Edomites in the hill country of Seir. The extent of this sibling rivalry is illustrated when the twins were born.

### **Genesis 25:24-28**

**When the time came for her to give birth, there were twin boys in her womb. The first to come out was red, and his whole body was like a hairy garment; so they named him Esau. After this, his brother came out, with his hand grasping Esau’s heel; so he was named Jacob. Isaac was sixty years old when Rebekah gave birth to them. The boys grew up, and Esau became a skillful hunter, a man of the open country, while Jacob was a quiet man, staying among the tents. Isaac, who had a taste for wild game, loved Esau, but Rebekah loved Jacob.**

As the boys grew, Isaac “loved” Esau, perhaps for his robust character, while Jacob, “a peaceful man, living in tents,” was the favorite of his mother- favoritism certainly added to the drama of this seemingly quiet rural family.

### **Isaac and Abimelech**

Although a famine in the land compelled Isaac to seek food in some foreign land, he was admonished by God not to go down to Egypt but to continue in the Promised Land. At this time the Lord renewed His promise to Isaac and to his seed and confirmed the promise made to his father, Abraham.

### **Genesis 26:2-6**

**The LORD appeared to Isaac and said, “Do not go down to Egypt; live in the land where I tell you to live. Stay in this land for a while, and I will be with you and will bless you. For to you and your descendants I will give all these lands and will confirm the oath I swore to your father Abraham. I will make your descendants as numerous as the stars in the sky and will give them all these lands, and through your offspring all nations on earth will be blessed, because Abraham obeyed me and kept my requirements, my commands, my decrees and my laws.” So Isaac stayed in Gerar.**

Isaac did not fully trust God’s divine protection though, but was led by his fears into a lie; like Abraham, he claimed that Rebekah was his sister. While dwelling in the neighborhood of Gerar he had the weakness to call Rebekah his sister, afraid that the people might kill him if they knew her to be his wife. Upon learning the truth Abimelech, the Philistine king, rebuked Isaac for his lie, but allowed him to remain in the land- Genesis 26:7-11.

Isaac remained in the land of the Philistines, cultivated a portion of ground and in the same year reaped “a hundredfold.” Obviously the covenant Abraham and Isaac had with God included financial prosperity- our covenant with God today has the same provisions, are we tapping into it? His flocks and herds grew so large that he became rich, which so excited the envy of the Philistines that they drove him from their territory. Our neighbors should be so envious of us also, asking what the secret is to our prosperity- being in covenant with God! What a wonderful evangelism avenue that is opened up when God’s people are being so blessed in all areas of their lives that the lost want to know the secret to our success!

**Deuteronomy 8:18- But remember the LORD your God, for it is he who gives you the ability to produce wealth, and so confirms his covenant, which he swore to your forefathers, as it is today.**

Some misguided and well meaning folks think that being financially poor and broke is a mark of spirituality, and it would be if there was Scripture for it. The Bible calls us the spiritual seed of Abraham in Galatians chapter 3 and heirs according to the promise. Abraham, Isaac and Jacob were the wealthiest men of their day because they knew and acted on their covenant with God. For Christians to suffer under the curse of poverty is not right and is not God's will. We were redeemed from poverty and God wants His children to prosper and enjoy abundance- Php 4:19; 3 Jn 2; 1 Tim 6:17, James 1:17; 2 Peter 1:3-4.

**2 Corinthians 8:9- For you know the grace of our Lord Jesus Christ, that though he was rich, yet for your sakes he became poor, so that you through his poverty might become rich.**

That does not mean God wants us to be like the world; greedy, covetous, selfish and materialistic. But how much more does our Heavenly Father want to give good things to His children that ask him- Matthew 7:11.

**Genesis 26:12-16**

**Isaac planted crops in that land and the same year reaped a **hundredfold**, because the LORD blessed him. The man became rich, and his wealth continued to grow until he became very wealthy. He had so many flocks and herds and servants that the Philistines envied him. So all the wells that his father's servants had dug in the time of his father Abraham, the Philistines stopped up, filling them with earth. Then Abimelech said to Isaac, "Move away from us; you have become too powerful for us."**

He then reopened the wells that his father had dug and that the Philistines had filled up, digging also several new ones, which they claimed as theirs. Withdrawing from one after another, he finally dug one that he was allowed to keep unmolested; As a result, he called it Rehoboth, "broad places" or "room" in Genesis 26:12-22. He then returned to Beersheba, where the Lord appeared to him and repeated the covenant blessing.

**Genesis 26:23-24- From there he went up to Beersheba. That night the LORD appeared to him and said, "I am the God of your father Abraham. Do not be afraid, for I am with you; I will bless you and will increase the number of your descendants for the sake of my servant Abraham."**

Abimelech obtained from Isaac a covenant of peace- Genesis 26:24-31. It was when Esau was forty years of age and Isaac a hundred, that Esau married Judith and Basemath, daughters of Canaan, "and they brought grief to Isaac and Rebekah"- Genesis 26: 34-35. After some time Jacob returned and found his father at "Mamre of Kiriath-arba (that is, Hebron), where Abraham and Isaac had sojourned." Here Isaac died at the age of 180, "and was gathered to his people, and his sons Esau and Jacob buried him" about 1881 BC- Genesis 35:27-29.

His surrender and submission to the sacrifice on Moriah in Genesis 22 can be seen as a type of Christ, "obedient to the point of death"- Philippians 2:5-8. Abraham is set forth as a type of the Father who "*did not spare His own Son, but delivered Him up for us all*"- John 3:16; Romans 8:32. The ram miraculously caught in the thicket and sacrificed instead of Isaac is a type of substitutionary atonement- Christ offered as a burnt offering in the place of sinners Hebrews 10:5-10. Abraham statement in Genesis 22:5, "*Stay here with the donkey while I and the boy go over there. We will worship and then we will come back to you*" speaks of the resurrection- Hebrews 11:17-19.

In Genesis 24, Isaac again appears as a type of Christ as the bridegroom, Rebekah being a type of the Church, the ecclesia, the virgin bride of Christ- Genesis 24:16; 2 Cor. 11:2; Eph. 5:25-32. Again, Abraham appears as a type of the Father and the unnamed servant, a type of the Holy Spirit who "will not speak on His own initiative" but takes the gifts of the bridegroom to woo the bride- John 16:13-14.

## D. Jacob

JA'COB (ja'kob; "heel-catcher, supplanter"; by popular etymology, but perhaps "he whom God protects," from Arab. and Ethiopic `akaba, "guard, keep").

The second born of the twin sons of Isaac and Rebekah, their conception being supernatural in answer to Isaac's prayer. Jacob was born when his father was sixty years old, probably at Beer-lahai-roi in Genesis 25:21-26, about 2001 BC. The fact Jacob as a new born baby was grasping his brother's heel would be significant in later life.

### Genesis 25:26

**After this, his brother came out, with his hand grasping Esau's heel; so he was named Jacob. Isaac was sixty years old when Rebekah gave birth to them.**

### 1. Personal History

It is recorded that Jacob grew up to be "a peaceful man, living in tents," preferring the quiet of a home life to the active, dangerous career of a hunter. He was the favorite of his mother, whereas Isaac showed partiality toward Esau.

The first incident mentioned is his purchase of Esau's birthright for the insignificant sum of a pot of stew, thus making use of his brother's hunger to advance his own ambition.



### Genesis 25:29-34

**Once when Jacob was cooking some stew, Esau came in from the open country, famished. He said to Jacob, "Quick, let me have some of that red stew! I'm famished!" (That is why he was also called Edom.) Jacob replied, "First sell me your birthright."**

**"Look, I am about to die," Esau said. "What good is the birthright to me?" But Jacob said, "Swear to me first." So he swore an oath to him, selling his birthright to Jacob. Then Jacob gave Esau some bread and some lentil stew. He ate and drank, and then got up and left. So Esau despised his birthright.**

You may wonder why the birthright is important- the birthright consisted afterward in a double portion of the father's inheritance according to Deuteronomy 21:17; but with the patriarchs it embraced the chieftainship, rule over the brethren and the entire family- Genesis 27:29. Not to mention the title to the blessing of promise (27:4,27-29), which included the future possession of Canaan and of covenant fellowship with Jehovah.

**Genesis 28:4- "May he give you and your descendants the blessing given to Abraham, so that you may take possession of the land where you now live as an alien, the land God gave to Abraham."**

I wonder if Jacob somehow felt cheated being the second twin emerging from the womb; as a result, it emboldened him to scheme and deceive.

### **Jacob gets Isaac's Blessing**

Isaac, now aged, was about to pronounce his blessing upon Esau, his elder son, but was undermined by the deception practiced upon him by Rebekah and Jacob. Jacob impersonated Esau and lied to his father. Thus Jacob received his father's blessing instead of Esau- Genesis 27:1-29.

### **Genesis 27:28-29**

**“May God give you of heaven's dew and of earth's richness - an abundance of grain and new wine. May nations serve you and peoples bow down to you. Be lord over your brothers, and may the sons of your mother bow down to you. May those who curse you be cursed and those who bless you be blessed.”**

God who knows the heart, chose Jacob over Esau to continue His covenant through Jacob's lineage. God foreknew that Esau would sell his birthright for some lentil soup- despising it. The Bible refers to Esau as godless, following after the flesh in contrast to Jacob esteeming the covenant- even though initially it appears to be for selfish reasons. Later on God does a work on Jacob's heart and establishes a covenant relationship with him- surely in the beginning Jacob was a diamond in the rough.

### **Romans 9:10-13**

**Not only that, but Rebekah's children had one and the same father, our father Isaac. Yet, before the twins were born or had done anything good or bad-in order that God's purpose in election might stand: not by works but by him who calls-she was told, “The older will serve the younger.” Just as it is written: “Jacob I loved, but Esau I hated.”**

Once the blessing was given, it could not be retracted; another example of the power of words! Understandably Esau was in shock, grief and then in a rage over what Jacob had done.

### **Hebrews 12:16-17**

**See that no one is sexually immoral, or is godless like Esau, who for a single meal sold his inheritance rights as the oldest son. Afterward, as you know, when he wanted to inherit this blessing, he was rejected. He could bring about no change of mind, though he sought the blessing with tears.**

It is ironic that just as Jacob deceived his father Isaac in pretending to be Esau, Jacob's sons deceive Jacob concerning the so-called accidental death of Joseph. Not to mention how his uncle Laban also deceived him on more than one occasion- a classic case of reaping and sowing.

### **Flight from Esau**

Esau hated his brother because of his deception and its success, he resolved to murder him; only delaying until a sufficient time after the probable near death of his father. Rebekah, informed of Esau's intent, advised Jacob to flee to her brother Laban in Haran. Obtaining Isaac's consent by saying that he wished Jacob to marry one of his kinswomen and not a daughter of Canaan. Isaac blessed Jacob again and sent him away- Genesis 27:41-28:5.

Jacob's age is arrived at as follows: Joseph was thirty years old when introduced to Pharaoh, and, allowing for seven years of plenty and two of famine (45:6), Joseph was 39 years old when Jacob went to Egypt, at which time Jacob was 130 years of age. Therefore Joseph was born before Jacob was 91. His birth occurred in the fourteenth year of Jacob's sojourn in Mesopotamia (30:25; 29:18,21,27), which would mean Jacob's flight took place in his seventy-seventh year.

## Hebrews 11:20

By faith Isaac blessed Jacob and Esau in regard to their future.

### Dream at Bethel

On his journey to Laban, he stopped at Luz for the night and was given the vision of the ladder and the ascending and descending angels. God confirmed to him there, the promises given to his fathers and promised him protection on his journey and a safe return to his home.



### Genesis 28:10-15

**Jacob left Beersheba and set out for Haran. When he reached a certain place, he stopped for the night because the sun had set. Taking one of the stones there, he put it under his head and lay down to sleep. He had a dream in which he saw a stairway resting on the earth, with its top reaching to heaven, and the angels of God were ascending and descending on it. There above it stood the LORD, and he said: “I am the LORD, the God of your father Abraham and the God of Isaac. I will give you and your descendants the land on which you are lying. Your descendants will be like the dust of the earth, and you will spread out to the west and to the east, to the north and to the south. All peoples on earth will be blessed through you and your offspring. I am with you and will watch over you wherever you go, and I will bring you back to this land. I will not leave you until I have done what I have promised you.”**

LADDER (Heb. sullam; “staircase”). This word occurs only in the account of Jacob’s dream at Bethel (Genesis 28:12, “*and behold, a ladder was set on the earth with its top reaching to heaven,*” etc.). By many the rendering “staircase” (NIV, “stairway”) is preferred, and is supposed to apply to the rocky mountainside. The vision that Jacob saw of angels ascending and descending teaches the fact of communication between heaven and earth and the ministry of angels. To us there is a deeper meaning since the incarnation. The true staircase by which heavenly messengers ascend and descend is the Son of Man. It is He who really bridges the divide between heaven and earth, God and man. However, the true fulfillment of Jacob’s vision will not take place until the millennial age when the covenant with Abraham is confirmed in Isaac and Jacob, will finally be realized- John 1:49-51.

In recognition of the divine dream, Jacob called the place Bethel, which means “House of God” and made a vow dedicating to Jehovah a tenth of all God gave him- Genesis 28:10-22.

## 2. Jacob Serves Laban

Arriving at Haran, Jacob met Rachel, Laban’s daughter, by whom Jacob’s coming was made known to her father. After a month, Laban inquired what wages Jacob desired for his services and he asked for Rachel on the condition of seven years’ service. At the expiration of the time, which seemed to Jacob “but a few days because of his love for her,” Laban availed himself of the customs of the country and substituted his elder daughter Leah, for Rachel. Upon the discovery of the deception, Laban excused himself by saying: “It is not the practice in our place, to marry off the younger before the first-born.” Therefore, another seven years’ of service from Jacob was required for his beloved Rachel.

Leah became the mother of Jacob's firstborn, Reuben, and three other sons, Simeon, Levi, and Judah, following in succession. Rachel, having borne no children gave to Jacob her maid Bilhah, who bore Dan and Naphtali. Two other sons, Gad and Asher were born of Leah's maid Zilpah. Leah then bore two more sons, Issachar and Zebulun and a daughter, Dinah. Later on Rachel became the mother of a son, whom she called Joseph- Genesis 29:1-30:24. A number of years later Benjamin was born; unfortunately, shortly thereafter Rachel died.

After Jacob's fourteen years had expired he was induced by Laban to remain six years longer for the purpose of acquiring wealth. Jacob made a deal with Laban that for his wages, Jacob would take into his possession all the sheep that were speckled or spotted, and every dark-colored lamb.

### **Genesis 30:32**

**Let me go through all your flocks today and remove from them every speckled or spotted sheep, every dark-colored lamb and every spotted or speckled goat. They will be my wages.**

Now for a little pay back, Jacob comes up with a fascinating plan. He takes fresh-cut branches of poplar, almond and plane trees and made white stripes on them by peeling the bark and exposing the white inner wood of the branches. He placed these branches near every watering trough and near the sheep when they mated and the result were astounding.

### **Genesis 30:38-40**

**Then he placed the peeled branches in all the watering troughs, so that they would be directly in front of the flocks when they came to drink. When the flocks were in heat and came to drink, they mated in front of the branches. And they bore young that were streaked or speckled or spotted. Jacob set apart the young of the flock by themselves...**

He even went so far as to only set the strips of wood in front of the stronger females when they were in heat, but if the animals were weak he did not place them there. I have to give it to Jacob, he was a crafty guy.

### **Genesis 30:42-43**

**So the weak animals went to Laban and the strong ones to Jacob. In this way the man grew exceedingly prosperous and came to own large flocks, and maidservants and menservants, and camels and donkeys.**

I see a great lesson of faith in this, "*calling those things that be not*" in Romans 4:17. Jacob called for what he wanted, spotted sheep and got it. I believe God gave him this insight in keeping with the covenant to make Jacob wealthy. Apparently Laban changed Jacob's wages 10 times (Genesis 31:7), yet when the wage was changed to spotted sheep, the young were born spotted, when the wage was changed to streaked sheep, the young were streaked- God confirmed that with a dream Genesis 31:10-13. At last God tells Jacob it was time for him to return to Canaan. Yet Jacob deceives Laban and does not tell him, but runs away.

### **Flees from Laban**

Gathering together his family and property, he set out for Canaan, about 1900 BC. On the third day, Laban learned of Jacob's departure and followed after him but was warned by God not to hinder his return. After much reproach and recrimination peace was restored, and Laban returned to his home- Genesis 31:17-55.

Shortly after the departure of Laban, Jacob met a company of angels and called the place, in honor of them, Mahanaim (“two hosts”)- Genesis 32:1-2.

### **News from Esau**

Jacob sent messengers to Esau with a friendly greeting. They returned with word that his brother was on the way to meet him with 400 men. Greatly alarmed and distressed, he divided his people with the flocks and herds into two companies, so that if one was attacked the other might escape. Jacob also prepared a present for Esau, sending it ahead; hoping thus to pacify his brother- Genesis 32:1-23.

### **Jacob Wrestles With God**

Then came a night of prayer, during which the angel of the Lord wrestled with him. During this all night wrestling match with God, through faith his name was changed from Jacob to Israel (“wrestler with God”). His request, that he might know the name of the person with whom he wrestled, was denied him; but Jacob named the place Peniel, “the face of God” (32:24-30).



#### **Genesis 32:24-28**

**So Jacob was left alone, and a man wrestled with him till daybreak. When the man saw that he could not overpower him, he touched the socket of Jacob’s hip so that his hip was wrenched as he wrestled with the man. Then the man said, “Let me go, for it is daybreak.”**

**But Jacob replied, “I will not let you go unless you bless me.”**

**The man asked him, “What is your name?”**

**“Jacob,” he answered.**

**Then the man said, “Your name will no longer be Jacob, but Israel, because you have struggled with God and with men and have overcome.”**

Israel means “he struggles with God”, Jacob calls the place “Peniel” in Genesis 32:30 saying, *“It is because I saw God face to face, and yet my life was spared.”*

### **Reconciled to Esau**

In the morning Jacob saw Esau approaching with his army and sent forward first his women servants, then Leah and her children and last Rachel and Joseph. Esau’s bitter feelings gave way at the sight of his brother, his liberal gifts and earnest entreaties. They embraced as brothers and for all we know, maintained friendly relations for the rest of their lives. Jacob remained for a while on the other side of the Jordan at Succoth. He then came to Shechem, camped there and purchasing a plot of ground. He “erected there an altar, and called it El-Elohe-Israel,” i.e., “Mighty one, God of Israel” Genesis 33:20. Here is located “Jacob’s well” in John 4:6.

## **Goes to Bethel**

Having been brought into collision with the people of Shechem because of the violation of Dinah and the revenge taken by her brothers, Jacob was commanded to go and dwell in Bethel. He took the strange gods found in possession of his family and buried them “under the oak which was near Shechem.” There God appeared to Jacob again and blessed him, renewing the Abrahamic covenant- Genesis 34:1-35:15.

## **Genesis 35:10-13**

**God said to him, “Your name is Jacob, but you will no longer be called Jacob; your name will be Israel.” So he named him Israel. And God said to him, “I am God Almighty; be fruitful and increase in number. A nation and a community of nations will come from you, and kings will come from your body. The land I gave to Abraham and Isaac I also give to you, and I will give this land to your descendants after you.” Then God went up from him at the place where he had talked with him.**

While journeying from Bethel to Ephrath his beloved wife Rachel died giving birth to her second son, Benjamin in Genesis 35:16-20.

## **Genesis 35:22-26**

**Jacob had twelve sons:**

**The sons of Leah:**

Reuben the firstborn of Jacob, Simeon, Levi, Judah, Issachar and Zebulun.

**The sons of Rachel:**

Joseph and Benjamin.

**The sons of Rachel’s maidservant Bilhah:**

Dan and Naphtali.

**The sons of Leah’s maidservant Zilpah:**

Gad and Asher.

**These were the sons of Jacob, who were born to him in Paddan Aram.**

In Genesis 35:27-29, after many years Jacob gets to see his father Isaac one last time who lives to a ripe old age of 185 years and his sons Esau and Jacob buried him.

## **E. Joseph**

JOSEPH (jo’zef; “may he,” i.e., Jehovah, “add”). The eldest son of Jacob and Rachel, born while his father was still serving Laban in Genesis 30:22-25, about 1910 BC. After his birth Joseph is mentioned in connection with his father’s flight from Laban Genesis 33:2,7 and then no more until he was seventeen years of age.



### **Trouble back on the Ranch**

As the child of Rachel, “son of his old age” and doubtless also for his excellence of character, his father loved him more than all his brothers. This, together with the fact that he reported to his father the evil conduct of the sons of Bilhah and Zilpah, caused his brothers to hate him. Their jealousy was aggravated by Jacob showing his preference in presenting Joseph with a coat, probably a long tunic with sleeves, worn by youths of the richer class (37:2-4).

So we have a tattler telling little half-brother who was favored by their father above them, no wonder the sons of Jacob had issues with Joseph.

### **Genesis 37:2-4**

**Joseph, a young man of seventeen, was tending the flocks with his brothers, the sons of Bilhah and the sons of Zilpah, his father's wives, and he brought their father a bad report about them. Now Israel loved Joseph more than any of his other sons, because he had been born to him in his old age; and he made a richly ornamented robe for him. When his brothers saw that their father loved him more than any of them, they hated him and could not speak a kind word to him.**

### **The Dream**

To make matters worse, God gives Joseph prophetic dreams about his future and being an impetuous teenager, he does not use discretion, but eagerly shares them with everyone. I have always been curious to see how different Joseph's life could have turned out if his father had not favored him so, and if he had kept the secret things of God secret- Genesis 37:5-11.

### **Matthew 7:6**

**“Do not give dogs what is sacred; do not throw your pearls to pigs. If you do, they may trample them under their feet, and then turn and tear you to pieces.”**

I still believe God would have fulfilled His purpose in saving the house of Jacob from famine; God would honor His covenant no matter what. If He had to, God could have given them manna as He did the children of Israel in the desert. One thing the story of Joseph tells me is that even when we blow it and make mistakes God can work the good out of any bad situation- to say that God caused Joseph's misfortunes would be a mistake. Often God is just cleaning up after our mistakes in His mercy. As in the case of Joseph, we will see that evil men can't keep a covenant friend of God down.

### **Romans 8:28-29**

**And we know that in all things God works for the good of those who love him, who have been called according to his purpose.**

### **1. Sold as a Slave**

Jacob sent Joseph from the valley of Hebron to Shechem to inquire concerning the welfare of his sons. They were not at Shechem, but were found by Joseph in Dothan. His appearance aroused their hatred, and with the exception of Reuben, they resolved to kill him. Reuben interfered on Joseph's behalf and persuaded them to cast him into a pit, intending "to restore him to his father." This they did with much enthusiasm, after stripping him of his tunic. While they were eating, a company of Arabian merchants (Ishmaelites) appeared, and at the suggestion of Judah and in the absence of Reuben, Joseph was sold to them for twenty shekels of silver. Dipping Joseph's tunic in the blood of a goat, they sent it to Jacob, in order to deceive him into thinking that his favorite son had been torn to pieces by some wild beast. Their trick succeeded and Joseph was mourned as dead. The merchants sold Joseph to Potiphar, an officer of Pharaoh and he became an Egyptian slave in Genesis 37:12-36, about 1897 BC.

What a terrible tragedy! The consequences of jealousy and envy will plague humanity for centuries to come.

### **Acts 7:9**

**Because the patriarchs were jealous of Joseph, they sold him as a slave into Egypt.**

**Matthew 27:18- For he knew it was out of envy that they had handed Jesus over to him.**

### Acts 17:5

**But the Jews were jealous; so they rounded up some bad characters from the marketplace, formed a mob and started a riot in the city.**

### Proverbs 14:30 AMP

**A calm and undisturbed mind and heart are the life and health of the body, but envy, jealousy, and wrath are like rottenness of the bones.**

Joseph behaved himself so discreetly in the service of Potiphar, and was so led of God, that he found great favor with his master, who gave him the oversight of all his affairs. We see again how God gives favor, wisdom and success to those in covenant with Him.

### Genesis 39:2-6

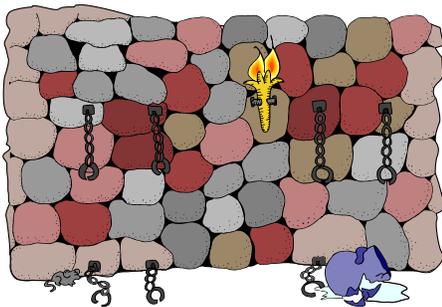
**The LORD was with Joseph and he prospered, and he lived in the house of his Egyptian master. When his master saw that the LORD was with him and that the LORD gave him success in everything he did, Joseph found favor in his eyes and became his attendant. Potiphar put him in charge of his household, and he entrusted to his care everything he owned. From the time he put him in charge of his household and of all that he owned, the LORD blessed the household of the Egyptian because of Joseph. The blessing of the LORD was on everything Potiphar had, both in the house and in the field. So he left in Joseph's care everything he had; with Joseph in charge, he did not concern himself with anything except the food he ate.**

### Joseph in Prison

Even before the 10 commandments were given, Joseph understood that adultery was wicked. He refused the seductive invitations of his master's wife, and for his integrity he gets into trouble- Genesis 39:6-20.

Even in prison, God made Joseph to prosper and have success in everything he did- God gave him tremendous favor. You can't keep a covenant man down!

God was with Joseph, granting him favor in the eyes of the governor of the prison, so that he entrusted all the prisoners to his care, leaving everything to his supervision.



### Genesis 39:20-23

**But while Joseph was there in the prison, the LORD was with him; he showed him kindness and granted him favor in the eyes of the prison warden. So the warden put Joseph in charge of all those held in the prison, and he was made responsible for all that was done there. The warden paid no attention to anything under Joseph's care, because the LORD was with Joseph and gave him success in whatever he did.**

While in prison Joseph interpreted correctly the dreams of two of his fellow prisoners: Pharaoh's chief cupbearer and baker- disclaiming any human skill and acknowledging that the interpretations were of God. These interpretations were fulfilled three days afterward, on the king's birthday- Genesis 40. Unfortunately the cupbearer forgot about Joseph- Genesis 40:23

## Exaltation



After two years Pharaoh had two prophetic dreams that the magicians and wise men of Egypt were unable to interpret. The cupbearer, calling to mind the service rendered him by Joseph, advised his royal master to put his skill to the test. Joseph was sent for and interpreted the dreams as foretelling seven years of plenty to be followed by seven years of famine. He followed up this interpretation by advising Pharaoh to “look for a man discerning and wise, and set him over the land of Egypt.” This counsel pleased Pharaoh and his ministers, who believed that Joseph possessed the spirit of supernatural insight and wisdom. Joseph was appointed ruler over Pharaoh’s house and over all the land; in other words, becoming next to Pharaoh in authority in Egypt. Pharaoh called him Zaphenath-paneah (“savior of the world”) and married him to Asenath, daughter of Potipherah, the priest of On. This promotion took place when Joseph was thirty years of age in Genesis 41:1-46, about 1883 BC.

During the seven years of plenty Joseph prepared for the years of famine to follow by carefully husbanding the grain, which was so abundant as to be beyond measurement. During these years his two sons, Manasseh and Ephraim were born in Genesis 41:47-52. When scarcity began, Joseph was in a position to supply the needs of Egypt along with all the surrounding nations. He put all Egypt under Pharaoh-first the money, then the cattle, the land (excepting the priests), and eventually the Egyptians themselves became the property of the crown. The people were distributed according to the cities in which the grain was stored and were instructed to pay a tax to the crown of one-fifth of the product of the soil- Genesis 41:53-57; 47:14-26.

## 2. Joseph and His Brothers

Early in the time of famine the brothers of Joseph, except Benjamin, went to Egypt to buy food. Applying to Joseph, who had supreme control over the stores of Egypt, they did not recognize him, but he knew them and seems to have resolved to make them feel and acknowledge the wrong they had done him. He acted as a foreigner toward them, spoke harshly to them, inquired whence they had come and accused them of being spies. This charge they denied and told him specifically about their family. After putting them in prison for three days he sent them home to bring back their youngest brother as proof of their veracity, keeping Simeon as hostage. Having with great difficulty secured Jacob’s permission, they returned with Benjamin, a present and double the money to repay the sum placed by order of Joseph in each man’s sack. The presence of his younger brother assured Joseph of the truth of his father’s welfare, and yielding to his natural impulses, he made himself known to his brothers. He inquired again concerning his father; told them not to grieve because of the sin they had committed in selling him, as God had overruled it for their welfare. He charged them to return to Canaan and bring Jacob and their families to Egypt, saying that he would provide for them during the five remaining years of famine. These events reached the ear of Pharaoh; he approved of all that Joseph had done and commanded that Jacob and his family should forthwith come into Egypt in Genesis 42:1-45:24.

### Joseph welcomes Israel

Israel, convinced that Joseph still lived went to Egypt, on the way there he stopped at Beersheba and offered sacrifices to the God of Isaac.

### Genesis 46:2-4

**And God spoke to Israel in a vision at night and said, “Jacob! Jacob!” “Here I am,” he replied. “I am God, the God of your father,” he said. “Do not be afraid to go down to Egypt, for I will make you into a great nation there. I will go down to Egypt with you, and I will surely bring you back again. And Joseph’s own hand will close your eyes.”**

Jacob's family upon arriving in Egypt was very small, only 70 in all, yet 400 hundred years later the decedents of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob would multiply to a few million.

#### **Genesis 46:26-27**

**All those who went to Egypt with Jacob — those who were his direct descendants, not counting his sons' wives — numbered sixty-six persons. With the two sons who had been born to Joseph in Egypt, the members of Jacob's family, which went to Egypt, were seventy in all.**

Upon arriving in Egypt, Jacob was tenderly welcomed, provided for and placed in the land of Goshen. When he died, he was embalmed by order of Joseph and carried by him to Canaan and laid in the cave of Machpelah- Genesis 45:25; 50:13.

In Genesis 47:28-31. Jacob made Joseph swear to him that Jacob would be buried along with his ancestors.

#### **Hebrews 11:21-22**

**By faith Jacob, when he was dying, blessed each of Joseph's sons, and worshiped as he leaned on the top of his staff.**

When it came to blessing Joseph's sons, Jacob grants participation and inheritance rights into the covenant of Abraham.

#### **Genesis 48:5-7**

**“Now then, your two sons born to you in Egypt before I came to you here will be reckoned as mine; Ephraim and Manasseh will be mine, just as Reuben and Simeon are mine. Any children born to you after them will be yours; in the territory they inherit they will be reckoned under the names of their brothers.”**

It is very interesting that Jacob blesses the younger son of Joseph as if he was the first born in Genesis 48:8-20. The blessing of God, a powerful declaration of faith that does not return void. As parents, let us also continually declare God's Word over our children and set the spiritual landmarks of success over their lives.

In Genesis chapter 49, Jacob speaks prophetically about his sons.

To me, the death of Jacob is an example of how the righteous should die. He lived a long life serving God and at the end of his days, he spoke by faith prophetically over his family. Just before he fell asleep, he gave instructions about his burial, drew up his feet and breathed his last at the age of 147. He was not racked in pain or eaten away by cancer. He was not delirious or out of his mind, he simply jumped out of his earth suit into eternity.

#### **Genesis 49:33**

**When Jacob had finished giving instructions to his sons, he drew his feet up into the bed, breathed his last and was gathered to his people.**

Joseph himself, a man of faith spoke of the exodus of the Israelites.

#### **Hebrews 11:22**

**By faith Joseph, when his end was near, spoke about the exodus of the Israelites from Egypt and gave instructions about his bones.**

## **Remaining History**

Upon their return from Canaan Joseph found his brothers in fear, with their father being dead, he would punish them at last. He assured them that this was not his purpose and promised to still nourish them and their little ones. Joseph lived to be 110 and before death, made his brothers promise that they would carry up his bones to the land of promise. After his death he was embalmed and “placed in a coffin in Egypt” in Genesis 50:14-26, about 1800 BC. The promise was religiously kept, for “Moses took the bones of Joseph with him” in Exodus 13:19, and they were at length put in their final resting place at Shechem according to Joshua 24:32. It is important to point out that the Old Covenant Patriarchs, Abraham, Isaac and Jacob were men of faith who took God at His Word without even seeing the promised Messiah. Jesus would not come to the earth until two thousand years later.

## **Hebrews 11:9-10**

**By faith he made his home in the promised land like a stranger in a foreign country; he lived in tents, as did Isaac and Jacob, who were heirs with him of the same promise. For he was looking forward to the city with foundations, whose architect and builder is God.**

What the above verse is talking about, “the city with foundations, whose architect and builder is God” is referring to the New Jerusalem that comes out of heaven according to the book of Revelations- Rev 3:12

**Revelation 21:1-3- Then I saw a new heaven and a new earth, for the first heaven and the first earth had passed away, and there was no longer any sea. I saw the Holy City, the new Jerusalem, coming down out of heaven from God, prepared as a bride beautifully dressed for her husband.**

I love Stephen’s defense as he stands before the Sanhedrin on false accusations. As was Jewish custom, he articulates masterfully the Jewish origins which serves as a great review for our purposes.

## **Acts 7:1-17**

**Then the high priest asked him, Are these charges true? To this he replied: “Brothers and fathers, listen to me! The God of glory appeared to our father Abraham while he was still in Mesopotamia, before he lived in Haran. ‘Leave your country and your people,’ God said, ‘and go to the land I will show you.’ “So he left the land of the Chaldeans and settled in Haran. After the death of his father, God sent him to this land where you are now living. He gave him no inheritance here, not even a foot of ground. But God promised him that he and his descendants after him would possess the land, even though at that time Abraham had no child. God spoke to him in this way: ‘Your descendants will be strangers in a country not their own, and they will be enslaved and mistreated four hundred years. But I will punish the nation they serve as slaves,’ God said, ‘and afterward they will come out of that country and worship me in this place.’ Then he gave Abraham the covenant of circumcision. And Abraham became the father of Isaac and circumcised him eight days after his birth. Later Isaac became the father of Jacob, and Jacob became the father of the twelve patriarchs. “Because the patriarchs were jealous of Joseph, they sold him as a slave into Egypt. But God was with him and rescued him from all his troubles. He gave Joseph wisdom and enabled him to gain the goodwill of Pharaoh king of Egypt; so he made him ruler over Egypt and all his palace. “Then a famine struck all Egypt and Canaan, bringing great suffering, and our fathers could not find food. When Jacob heard that there was grain in Egypt, he sent our fathers on their first visit. On their second visit, Joseph told his brothers who he was, and Pharaoh learned about Joseph’s family. After this, Joseph sent for his father Jacob and his whole family, seventy-five in all. Then Jacob went down to Egypt, where he and our fathers died. Their bodies were brought back to Shechem and placed in the tomb that Abraham had bought from the sons of Hamor at Shechem for a certain sum of money. “As the time drew near for God to fulfill his promise to Abraham, the number of our people in Egypt greatly increased.”**

Unit 7 Review:

In what way did the blessing of the Covenant impact Isaac's financial well-being?

---

---

---

What lessons do we learn from Esau, disregarding his birth right?

---

---

---

What lessons do we learn concerning the power of words in regards to Isaac's blessing?

---

---

---

Jacob's experiences with his uncle Laban seem so familiar and ironic what was it?

---

---

---

What significant lessons do we learn from the life of Joseph?

---

---

---

Does the death of Jacob provide an example for all God's covenant people in how they can leave earth?

---

---

---

### III. The Birth of a Nation

God made an incredible statement in regards to His purpose for Israel, their destiny as a nation for generations to come.

#### **Exodus 19:3-6**

**Then Moses went up to God, and the LORD called to him from the mountain and said, “This is what you are to say to the house of Jacob and what you are to tell the people of Israel: ‘You yourselves have seen what I did to Egypt, and how I carried you on eagles’ wings and brought you to myself. Now if you obey me fully and keep my covenant, then out of all nations you will be my **treasured possession**. Although the whole earth is mine, you will be for me a kingdom of priests and a holy nation.’ These are the words you are to speak to the Israelites.”**

In the original Hebrew language, ‘treasured possession’ means a rare jewel, peculiar and special! The nation of Israel were to be unique above all other nations, as God representatives to the nations. A kingdom of priests infers the unique role as mediators, intercessors and stewards of God’s Holy Covenant. When God spoke of this covenant with Abraham, his descendents were meant to be a blessing to all nations by preaching the gospel message of their time throughout the world; to be a salt and a light as the Church of Jesus Christ is destined for in this dispensation. God is about reconciling every person from every nation, He does not want anyone to perish and go to hell. Before the creation of the world God had designated a Savior to come into the earth through the seed of the woman according to Genesis 3:15.

God wanted Israel to be His ambassadors to the earth and bring them into this Covenant of salvation for their time. Unfortunately, Israel ended up acting like the other nations and indulged in idolatry which eventually brought them exile into Babylon. As a result, they went to the other extreme of religious extremism and a hatred of the nations; sects like the Pharisees and teachers of the law became very zealous for God. In both cases they missed God’s purpose for themselves and God ended up raising the Church to take the Good News to all nations. Look at the parable Jesus spoke to the religious leaders in Luke 20:9-19, in this regards.

#### **Luke 20:15-18**

**“What then will the owner of the vineyard do to them? He will come and kill those tenants and give the vineyard to others.” When the people heard this, they said, “May this never be!” Jesus looked directly at them and asked, “Then what is the meaning of that which is written: “The stone the builders rejected has become the capstone”? Everyone who falls on that stone will be broken to pieces, but he on whom it falls will be crushed.”**

However, God has not abandoned the Jewish people, He will give them another opportunity to fulfill His original purpose for them during the Great Tribulation. A 144,000 Jewish evangelists will be released into the world, 12,000 from each of the 12 tribes of Israel- Romans chapter 11 deals with this:

#### **Romans 11:25-26**

**I do not want you to be ignorant of this mystery, brothers, so that you may not be conceited: Israel has experienced a hardening in part until the full number of the Gentiles has come in.**

#### **Revelation 7:4**

**Then I heard the number of those who were sealed: 144,000 from all the tribes of Israel.**

## A. Egypt

### 1. Background

E'GYPT (e'jipt). The ancient Egyptians knew their native country by the term Kemet (the "black land"), from its dark-colored Nile mud in contrast with the golden sands of the desert. Egypt is also called in the Bible "the land of Ham" (Psalms 105:23,27; compare Psalms 78:51). It would seem, however, to be rather a representative of the original Hebrews name Ham (i.e. Cham), which likewise in the Shemitic languages denotes sun-burnt, as a characteristic of African tribes.

The most common designation was Toui, the two countries, meaning Upper and Lower Egypt. The Canaanites called the land "Misri." The Hebrew name employed in the Old testament, "Misrayim," is probably a dual, suggesting also the twofold ancient division of the country. Modern Arabs call it "Misr." The Greeks called it "Aigyptos" as early as the Homeric period.

### **Territory and Divisions**

In ancient times Egypt consisted mainly of (1) the narrow strip of land watered by the Nile, extending from Memphis or Cairo as far as the First Cataract and (2) the so-called Delta (from its resemblance to that letter of the Greek alphabet), the pie-shaped area between the Mediterranean Sea and Cairo (measuring c. 125 miles N and S and 115 E and W). This geographic configuration of the country gave rise to the term Upper Egypt, denoting the long, narrow fertile valley and Lower Egypt, constituting the Delta. Egypt was accordingly about 725 miles long from the Mediterranean to the First Cataract and its breadth never more than 30 miles, while its cultivated area did not exceed 10 miles. It was thus a long and narrow country, it's extremely fertile land comprising less than 13,000 square miles. Egypt in a definite sense is the "gift of the Nile," as the ancient Greeks said. It depended upon the exceedingly rich alluvial mud deposited by the annual inundation of the river from June to October. Irrigation was indispensable and agriculture was the foundation of its economy. Bounded on either side by untraversable deserts and mountains, the sea on the north, an exceedingly narrow valley, and the river obstructed by cataracts on the south, Egypt was an isolated land. This geographic isolation was a prominent factor in its long and splendid history and brilliant civilization.

### **Inhabitants**

The ancient Egyptians were Hamitic peoples (Genesis 10:6). Later on an invasion from Babylonia, predominantly Semitic, came into the country and left its imprint upon the language and culture. Other elements such as the Nubian entered into the Egyptian mixture. At a late date the country was divided into forty-two provinces, twenty in Lower and twenty-two in Upper Egypt. Egyptian is Hamitic, but may properly be called Hamito-Semitic. The following linguistic areas may be noted: (1) Old Egyptian, Dynasties I-VIII, included the language of the Pyramid Texts. (2) Middle Egyptian, the literary tongue of Dynasties IX-XVIII, and the vernacular language of the early part of the period, which became the classical norm imitated in later eras. (3) Late Egyptian, Dynasties XIX-XXIV, which exists on business documents and to some extent in literary works. (4) Demotic, denoting the language in a popular script from Dynasties XXV to late Roman times, 700 BC until after A.D. 450 AD. (5) Coptic, third century A.D. onward, the language of the Copts, the Christian descendants of the ancient Egyptians. The earliest writing was hieroglyphic, or picture language, including representations of common objects and geometric symbols. As early as the Old Kingdom scribes began to do away with cumbersome pictures in order to facilitate rapid writing. By the eighth century B.C. a demotic or popular writing came into vogue and was cursive in form. In 1799 Napoleon's expedition discovered the Rosetta Stone, a piece of black basalt bearing an inscription in hieroglyphics, demotic and Greek. This discovery, now in the British Museum, furnished the key to the decipherment of the Egyptian language. This feat was accomplished by the Frenchman Francois Champollion in 1822.

## History

Manetho, a priest of Sybennytos, in 290 BC, wrote a history of Egypt in Greek. He divided the history of united Egypt into thirty royal dynasties. The new minimal chronology begins the first of his dynasties around 2900 BC. Our knowledge of the early and pre-dynastic periods comes from more recent archaeological discovery.

## Religion

The Egyptian religion was an utterly bewildering polytheistic conglomeration in which many deities of the earliest periods, when each town had its own deity. Re, the sun-god, was worshiped at Heliopolis (On). Osiris, god of the Nile, became the god of fertility. With the ascendancy of Thebes, the local god Amon was elevated and finally identified with Re under the compound Amon-Re. The moon also was worshiped as a god. Ptah, a god of Memphis, was known as the “great chief of artificers.” It would be practically impossible to list all the gods sacred to Egyptians. Every object beheld, every phenomenon of nature, was thought to possess a spirit that could choose its own form, occupying the body of a crocodile, a fish, a cow, a cat, etc. Hence the Egyptians had numerous holy animals, principally the bull, the cow, the cat, the baboon, the jackal, and the crocodile. Some of the deities were composite, with human bodies and animal heads. Thoth, the scribe of the gods, had the head of an ibis; Horus, the sun-god, that of a hawk. The idea of a universal god found expression under Akhnaton, and for a brief period Aton was distinguished from the material sun. Despite crude nature worship among the Egyptians, there was a remarkable understanding of ethical conduct, notably and mortality. Great pains were taken to insure the welfare of the deceased in the hereafter.

There were three orders of gods; the eight great gods, 12 lesser, and those connected with Osiris. However, the immortality of the soul and future rewards and punishments at the judgment were taught. The Israelites fell into their idolatries in Egypt (Joshua 24:14; Ezekiel 20:7-8.) This explains their readiness to worship the golden calf, resembling the Egyptian ox-idol, Apis (Exodus 32).

## 2. Israel in Egypt

Period: Approximately 1525 B.C. to 1400 B.C.



The closing verses of Genesis leave the Israelites enjoying the favor and bounties of Egypt. The opening chapter of Exodus reveals a very different situation. During the long years the descendants of Jacob had lived in Egypt, the original small group had increased in number and in wealth until “the land was filled with them.” Then “there arose up a new king ... which knew not Joseph” (Exodus 1: 8), and who chose to forget Joseph’s past benefits to the nation of Egypt. From a position of royal favor, Joseph’s people were reduced to servant hood.

The Egyptian monuments illustrate Israel's oppression in many points. Bricks were the common material of building, and for the king's edifices were stamped with his name. Chopped straw was used, as hair by plasterers, to make them more durable. Captives did the work in the royal brickfields; taskmasters with rods and the bastinado punished the idle. The entire stalk was left standing in cutting the wheat, so that stubble was easy to find in the fields. Though field labor is light, yet from the continued succession of crops and intense heat the cultivators' lot is a hard one.



### **Exodus 1:6-14**

**Now Joseph and all his brothers and all that generation died, but the Israelites were fruitful and multiplied greatly and became exceedingly numerous, so that the land was filled with them. Then a new king, who did not know about Joseph, came to power in Egypt. “Look,” he said to his people, “the Israelites have become much too numerous for us. Come, we must deal shrewdly with them or they will become even more numerous and, if war breaks out, will join our enemies, fight against us and leave the country.” So they put slave masters over them to oppress them with forced labor, and they built Pithom and Rameses as store cities for Pharaoh. But the more they were oppressed, the more they multiplied and spread; so the Egyptians came to dread the Israelites and worked them ruthlessly. They made their lives bitter with hard labor in brick and mortar and with all kinds of work in the fields; in all their hard labor the Egyptians used them ruthlessly.**

Jacob's family had settled in Egypt at a time when the land was governed by the friendly Hyksos or “Shepherd” Kings (2100-1580 B.C.). These were rulers of Semitic origin who had gained control of Egypt's government. About 1580 B.C., the native Egyptians expelled the “foreign” Hyksos and placed Ahmose or Ahmosis I on the throne. He is thought to be the “new king” of the Eighteenth Dynasty who did not know Joseph. He became alarmed at the increase in Semitic population within his territory. How could he manage them in case an Eastern army should invade Egypt and secure these Hebrews as their allies?

For these reasons, the new Egyptian policy toward the Hebrews became one of oppression, with the attempt to crush their spirit and physical powers by enforced labor. Rigid taskmasters were appointed to supervise the making of brick and building. The severity of the toil was steadily increased. The midwives were ordered to destroy all the male children. When this did not succeed, Pharaoh commanded the people to throw all newborn boys into the Nile. But God had heard the cry of His people and already was preparing a deliverer.

### **Exodus 1:15-17, 22**

**The king of Egypt said to the Hebrew midwives, whose names were Shiphrah and Puah, “When you help the Hebrew women in childbirth and observe them on the delivery stool, if it is a boy, kill him; but if it is a girl, let her live.” The midwives, however, feared God and did not do what the king of Egypt had told them to do; they let the boys live. Then Pharaoh gave this order to all his people: “Every boy that is born you must throw into the Nile, but let every girl live.”**

The chronology of the Egyptian bondage and the Exodus is based upon 1 Kings 6: 1- Solomon's Temple was begun 480 years after the Israelites left Egypt. Since the building of the Temple is generally thought to have begun in about 967 B.C., the Exodus would then be dated around 1450 B.C. This date has the added confirmation of the archaeologists who set the date of the fall of Jericho at about 1400 B.C.

### **Moses, The Deliverer**

According to Stephen's speech recorded in the seventh chapter of Acts, the life of Moses was divided into three periods of 40 years each: (1) 40 years in Egypt as the son of Pharaoh's daughter, Exodus 2: 1-15; Acts 7: 23; (2) 40 years in Midian, Exodus 2: 15-4: 19; Acts 7: 30; and (3) 40 years from Egypt to the crossing of the Jordan, Exodus 4: 20-Deuteronomy 34; Acts 7: 36.

### **Birth and Preparation (Exodus 2:1-15)**



Moses was the son of Amram and Jochebed, both of the tribe of Levi, who had two older children, Aaron and Miriam. At the time of Moses' birth in about 1525 B.C., the Egyptians were attempting to destroy all Hebrew male children as soon as they were born. Jochebed concealed her infant son in the home for three months. When this was no longer possible, she placed him in a waterproof reed basket "by the river's brink." His sister Miriam, was standing watch when the daughter of Pharaoh came to the river's edge and discovered the infant. The baby cried and the princess "had compassion on him." She accepted Miriam's quick-witted offer to secure a Hebrew nurse for the child, and Miriam ran for Jochebed.

Thus it came about that the Hebrew baby was adopted by Pharaoh's daughter, who called him Moses, "because," she said, "I drew him out of the water." The name Moses is derived from a Hebrew term meaning "to draw out." Acts 7:22 states, "*Moses was educated in all the wisdom of the Egyptians and was powerful in speech and action.*" He also grew in the spiritual knowledge of Jehovah under the apt tutelage of his own mother. When Moses "was grown," he began to realize the gulf between court life in Egypt and the slavery of his Hebrew kinsmen. He began now to live for the deliverance of his people from servitude.

### **Hebrews 11:24-27**

**By faith Moses, when he had grown up, refused to be known as the son of Pharaoh's daughter. He chose to be mistreated along with the people of God rather than to enjoy the pleasures of sin for a short time. He regarded disgrace for the sake of Christ as of greater value than the treasures of Egypt, because he was looking ahead to his reward. By faith he left Egypt, not fearing the king's anger; he persevered because he saw him who is invisible.**

One day, observing his people struggling with their burdens, Moses struck and killed an Egyptian who was brutally mistreating a Hebrew and hid the body in the sand. The next day he found that he had lost the confidence of the very people whom he was striving to help. More than that, he had incurred the wrath of Pharaoh to such an extent that the king was seeking to have him killed.

### **Exile in Midian (Exodus 2: 15-4: 31)**

Moses now fled to the land of Midian, east of the Red Sea. As he sat down by a well, the seven daughters of the priest Jethro (also known as Reuel) came to water their flocks. Bedouin shepherds tried to drive the sisters away, but Moses championed their cause, as he had tried to do earlier for his Hebrew brothers. When this deed of kindness was reported to the priest, Moses found refuge in the home of Jethro. Here he became shepherd of the flocks, and later married one of Jethro's daughters, Zipporah.

The Midianite country was located in the vicinity of rugged Sinai, where Moses was to spend 40 years in exile. As a shepherd, he could roam the valleys and wilderness, seeking water, food and shelter for his herds. With his previous understanding of the people in Egypt, he could study the customs of the Bedouin tribes with which he would have to deal with later. Moses now received the training which he needed for the great task that awaited him in the last 40 years of his life.

After Moses had been in Midian 40 years, and was 80 years old, the Lord appeared to him at Horeb, "the mount of God," in a burning bush which was not consumed. "I am the God of thy father, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob," Moses heard the Voice say. The people of Israel were crying unto the Lord for deliverance from their taskmasters in Egypt. God was now calling Moses. The commission was unmistakable:



### **Exodus 3:7-10**

**The LORD said, "I have indeed seen the misery of my people in Egypt. I have heard them crying out because of their slave drivers, and I am concerned about their suffering. So I have come down to rescue them from the hand of the Egyptians and to bring them up out of that land into a good and spacious land, a land flowing with milk and honey- the home of the Canaanites, Hittites, Amorites, Perizzites, Hivites and Jebusites. And now the cry of the Israelites has reached me, and I have seen the way the Egyptians are oppressing them. So now, go. I am sending you to Pharaoh to bring my people the Israelites out of Egypt."**

God renewed the covenant He had made with Abraham, giving to Moses the commission which once had been given to the patriarchs. As Moses hesitated, God assured him that, when He brought the Hebrews out of Egypt, they should worship on that same holy mountain. God revealed His redeeming name of Jehovah, that Moses might be accepted by his people when he went to them in the name of the God of their fathers.

### **Exodus 3:13-15**

**Moses said to God, "Suppose I go to the Israelites and say to them, 'The God of your fathers has sent me to you,' and they ask me, 'What is his name?' Then what shall I tell them?" God said to Moses, "I AM WHO I AM. This is what you are to say to the Israelites: 'I AM has sent me to you.'" God also said to Moses, "Say to the Israelites, 'The LORD, the God of your fathers- the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac and the God of Jacob- has sent me to you.' This is my name forever, the name by which I am to be remembered from generation to generation.**

Moses objected that the people would not believe him and that he was not eloquent in speech. The Lord promised him his brother, Aaron, three years older, as a spokesman. He was also bidden to take his rod, with which he would work mighty wonders in the deliverance of his people from Egypt.

God predicts that Pharaoh will harden his heart against God and will not let the Hebrew people go. Looks like a show down between God Almighty and the gods of Egypt; supernatural workings will allow all kinds of plagues to descend upon the Egyptians. Yet God's people were not going to leave Egypt empty handed- let's say over 400 years of back wages, payback time.

### **Exodus 3:18-22**

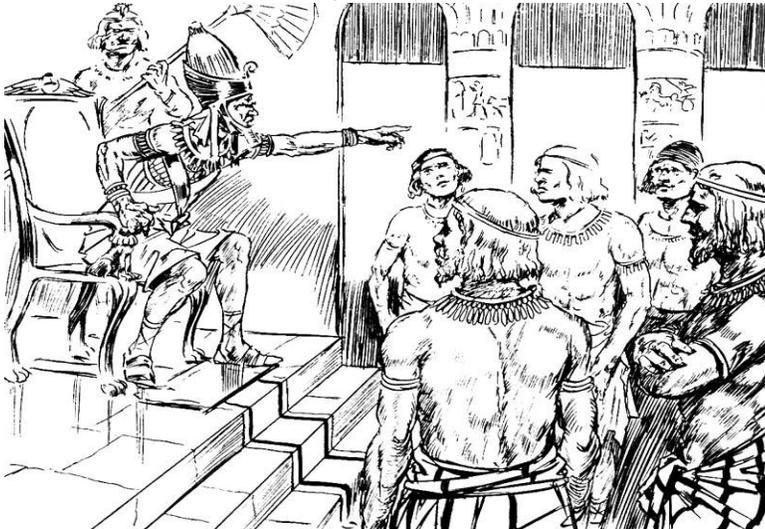
**“The elders of Israel will listen to you. Then you and the elders are to go to the king of Egypt and say to him, ‘The LORD, the God of the Hebrews, has met with us. Let us take a three-day journey into the desert to offer sacrifices to the LORD our God.’ But I know that the king of Egypt will not let you go unless a mighty hand compels him. So I will stretch out my hand and strike the Egyptians with all the wonders that I will perform among them. After that, he will let you go. And I will make the Egyptians favorably disposed toward this people, so that when you leave you will not go empty-handed. Every woman is to ask her neighbor and any woman living in her house for articles of silver and gold and for clothing, which you will put on your sons and daughters. And so you will plunder the Egyptians.”**

After the favorable interview with Jethro, his father-in-law, Moses “took the rod of God in his hand” and departed for Egypt. At “the mount of God” he met Aaron, who had been commanded to meet him in the Wilderness. Together they made the journey to Egypt. When they arrived, they summoned the elders of the tribes of Israel and announced to them God's purpose to deliver His afflicted people. Moses and Aaron confirmed their mission with miraculous signs, and the people gratefully accepted their leadership.

## **B. The Exodus**

### **(Exodus 5:1-15:21)**

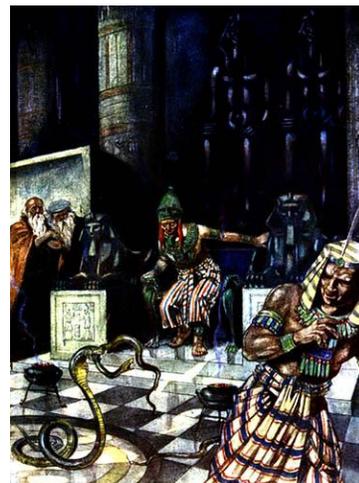
The next step was to confront Pharaoh. Moses and Aaron made the request that Pharaoh allow the Hebrew people to make a three days' journey into the wilderness in order to sacrifice to the Lord their God. This first attempt not only failed, but Pharaoh increased the amount of work required of the Israelites- now they had to find their own straw, but still meet the same quota of bricks. As Moses met the bitter reproaches of his people, God appeared to him and once more renewed the covenant which had been made with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.



### **Exodus 5:6-9**

**That same day Pharaoh gave this order to the slave drivers and foremen in charge of the people: “You are no longer to supply the people with straw for making bricks; let them go and gather their own straw. But require them to make the same number of bricks as before; don't reduce the quota. They are lazy; that is why they are crying out, ‘Let us go and sacrifice to our God.’ Make the work harder for the men so that they keep working and pay no attention to lies.”**

A second time Moses made the same request, and when Aaron cast down his rod it became a serpent. The magicians imitated this miracle, but Aaron's rod swallowed up their rods. The third demand was also refused, whereupon the miracle was wrought which was the beginning of the 10 plagues visited by the hand of God upon the people of Egypt.



### **Exodus 7:1-7**

**Then the LORD said to Moses, “See, I have made you like God to Pharaoh, and your brother Aaron will be your prophet. You are to say everything I command you, and your brother Aaron is to tell Pharaoh to let the Israelites go out of his country. But I will harden Pharaoh’s heart, and though I multiply my miraculous signs and wonders in Egypt, he will not listen to you. Then I will lay my hand on Egypt and with mighty acts of judgment I will bring out my divisions, my people the Israelites. And the Egyptians will know that I am the LORD when I stretch out my hand against Egypt and bring the Israelites out of it.” Moses and Aaron did just as the LORD commanded them. Moses was eighty years old and Aaron eighty-three when they spoke to Pharaoh.”**

Something important to understand is that God was not unfair as it pertains to the hardness of Pharaoh’s heart; it was a choice that he made and God allowed it. Since God sets the times and places where we should live, He predestined this character(Pharaoh) to be born in that generation and be king of Egypt. God used him and the stubbornness of his heart to display His Glory to the world- there is only one God of the Universe, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac and the God of Jacob.

### **Acts 17:26**

**From one man he made every nation of men, that they should inhabit the whole earth; and he determined the times set for them and the exact places where they should live.**

## 1. The Plagues

The plagues inflicted upon the rebellious Egyptians represented more than a contest between Moses and Pharaoh, or even a contest between a nation in slavery and its oppressors. They had a deep religious significance, and the outcome was to be a victorious conquest by Jehovah over Egypt’s pagan gods. Remember Satan knew that the “Seed” of the woman, the blessing of Abraham would come through the Jewish nation to destroy his kingdom of darkness. So it makes a lot of sense for the devil to use Pharaoh to oppress them in Egypt; not just for slave labor, but a futile attempt to make void the Promises of God concerning Israel and making it to the Promised Land.

The very nature of the plagues were obnoxious to the Egyptians who worshiped idols and animals- who prided themselves in being ceremonially clean. Even the Nile River was sacred, as was the soil which was cultivated for food. Many of the plagues involved pests which were known in Egypt. But their progressive order and increasing intensity served to bring about God’s purpose in the deliverance of His people.

The first nine plagues may be grouped into three series, with three plagues included in each series. The first series brought plagues of 1) blood Exodus 7:14-25; 2) frogs, Exodus 8:1-15; and 3) lice, Exodus 8:16-19. The second series was marked by plagues of (4) flies, Exodus 8:20-32; (5) livestock, Exodus 9:1-7; and (6) boils, Exodus 9:8-12. In the third series, there were plagues of (7) hail, Exodus 9:13-35; (8) locusts, Exodus 10:1-20; and (9) darkness, Exodus 10:21-27.

At the beginning of each series, the first miracle was announced to Pharaoh “in the morning” beside the river (7:15; 8:20; and 9:13). The second was declared to him in his royal palace. The third smote the Egyptians without any warning at all. In the first series, Aaron’s rod was used; in the second, no rod at all; and in the third series, Moses’ rod. In the first two plagues the magicians of Egypt attempted to compete with Aaron. They imitated the plagues of blood and frogs, but Pharaoh still had to call for Moses and Aaron to deliver him from the frogs. The third plague of lice they acknowledged to be “the finger of God,” and withdrew from the contest. After the third plague, Egyptians alone were afflicted. Israel’s protection was announced each time except before the pestilence of boils and locusts. Pharaoh appealed to Moses for help after the plagues of frogs and flies, and then all during the plagues of the third series. Each plea was with increasing eagerness, but never did the stubborn monarch yield to the Hebrews’ request for more than a short time.

### ***I. Blood- Exodus 7: 14-25***



What is amazing about this miracle is that water within wooden buckets and stone jars immediately turned to blood- all water in Egypt literally turned into blood, not muddy water. Pharaoh’s heart became hardened when his magicians used their secret arts (witchcraft) to do the same thing. If Jesus could turn water into literal real wine, why could God not change water into blood.

### ***II. Frogs- Exodus 8: 1-15***

Through Aaron, God caused a multitude of frogs to come from the Nile and cover the earth, and the magicians were able to reproduce it as well- Satan has power but it has its limits. So Pharaoh promised to let the people go, but Moses asked him when the plague should cease so he would know it was the Lord- he asked for the next day and it was so. Predictably when the plague was over, Pharaoh hardened his own heart and denied the Hebrews leave to go.

### ***III. Lice- Exodus 8:16-19***

It is not easy to identify the exact pests involved in the third and fourth plagues. Various translations have lice (KJV, NKJV), gnats (NASB, RSV, NIV), maggots (NEB), and sand flies and fleas (RSV).

With this plague the magicians could not reproduce and admitted that it was a result of God power, “This is the finger of God.”

#### *IV. Flies- Exodus 8:20-32*



#### **Exodus 8:22-23**

**“But on that day I will deal differently with the land of Goshen, where my people live; no swarms of flies will be there, so that you will know that I, the LORD, am in this land. I will make a distinction between my people and your people. This miraculous sign will occur tomorrow.”**

Up to this point the Hebrews in the land of Goshen were affected by the first three plagues, but not this time- God made a distinction between the Egyptians and Hebrews. When God removed the plague, it was stated that, “not a fly remained.”

#### *V. Livestock- Exodus 9:1-7*

God allowed a terrible plague to befall all the livestock in the field, but none of the livestock of the Israelites were affected.

#### **Exodus 9:7**

**Pharaoh sent men to investigate and found that not even one of the animals of the Israelites had died. Yet his heart was unyielding and he would not let the people go.**

#### *VI. Boil- Exodus 9:8-12*

The next plague was festering boils upon all people and animals as well. Again another supernatural judgment upon the Egyptians- the magicians could not stand before Moses since they were covered with boils. Sad that Pharaoh’s stubbornness resulted in such pain, suffering and loss for his people.

#### *VII. Hail- Exodus 9:13-35*

God begins to turn up the heat on Pharaoh and lets him know, it is only by His mercy that He has allowed his nation to survive- remember Sodom and Gomorrah. So God gives them a warning to take shelter; sad that some still defiantly resist.

#### **Exodus 9:13-18**

**“This is what the LORD, the God of the Hebrews, says: Let my people go, so that they may worship me, or this time I will send the full force of my plagues against you and against your officials and your people, so you may know that there is no one like me in all the earth.” For by now I could have stretched out my hand and struck you and your people with a plague that would have wiped you off the earth. But I have raised you up for this very purpose, that I might show you my power and that my name might be proclaimed in all the earth. You still set yourself against my people and will not let them go. Therefore, at this time tomorrow I will send the worst hailstorm that has ever fallen on Egypt, from the day it was founded till now.”**

God again makes a distinction between Israel and Egypt and no devastating hail falls upon the land of Goshen. When things got bad with this plague, Pharaoh was quick to repent and gave God lip service. However, once the plague stopped he changed his mind. Wicked men back then are the same as wicked men in the future as mentioned in the book of Revelation, when God once again will pour out plagues; this time upon the whole earth.

#### **Revelation 9:20-21**

**The rest of mankind that were not killed by these plagues still did not repent of the work of their hands; they did not stop worshiping demons, and idols of gold, silver, bronze, stone and wood- idols that cannot see or hear or walk. Nor did they repent of their murders, their magic arts, their sexual immorality or their thefts.**

#### **Revelation 16:21**

**From the sky huge hailstones of about a hundred pounds each fell upon men. And they cursed God on account of the plague of hail, because the plague was so terrible.**



#### ***VIII. Locusts- Exodus 10:1-20***

So whatever was left green in Egypt was about to be devoured by swarms of Locusts(grasshoppers)- Exodus 10:5 *“They will devour what little you have left after the hail, including every tree that is growing in your fields.”*

#### **Exodus 10:7, 13-15**

**Pharaoh’s officials said to him, “How long will this man be a snare to us? Let the people go, so that they may worship the LORD their God. Do you not yet realize that Egypt is ruined?” So Moses stretched out his staff over Egypt, and the LORD made an east wind blow across the land all that day and all that night. By morning the wind had brought the locusts; they invaded all Egypt and settled down in every area of the country in great numbers. Never before had there been such a plague of locusts, nor will there ever be again. They covered all the ground until it was black. They devoured all that was left after the hail- everything growing in the fields and the fruit on the trees. Nothing green remained on tree or plant in all the land of Egypt.**

#### ***IX. Darkness- Exodus 10:1-20***

Again, another supernatural working of God’s awesome power. Total darkness covered all of Egypt for three days- a darkness that could be felt. It was so intense that no one could see anyone else or leave his place- this was a supernatural act of God that cannot be explained away by some natural consequence. I believe that this was a foreshadowing of God’s judgment upon the ungodly when they meet their doom into utter darkness for all of eternity. Even in Revelation 16:10, the Scriptures speak of God plunging the Anti-Christ’s kingdom into this same kind of darkness. Egypt is often used in the Scriptures as a metaphor, speaking figuratively of the “world system” under Satan’s control.

#### **Jude 13**

**They are wild waves of the sea, foaming up their shame; wandering stars, for whom blackest darkness has been reserved forever.**

## Revelation 16:10-11

The fifth angel poured out his bowl on the throne of the beast, and his kingdom was plunged into darkness. Men gnawed their tongues in agony and cursed the God of heaven because of their pains and their sores, but they refused to repent of what they had done.

Pharaoh threatens Moses with a death sentence upon seeing Pharaoh's face again. This time a righteous indignation comes upon Moses and he pronounces the last plague.

## X. Firstborn- Exodus 11:1-12:42

I love God's style, he instructs Moses to tell the Israelites to ask their neighbors for articles of silver and gold- back pay for over 400 years. God gave the people of Israel favor with the Egyptians, so they ended up plundering Egypt.



### Exodus 11:2; 12:35-36

“Tell the people that men and women alike are to ask their neighbors for articles of silver and gold.” The Israelites did as Moses instructed and asked the Egyptians for articles of silver and gold and for clothing. The LORD had made the Egyptians favorably disposed toward the people, and they gave them what they asked for; so they plundered the Egyptians.

Interesting that Moses was highly respected and regarded by Pharaoh's officials and the people of Egypt- Exodus 11:3, “*Moses himself was highly regarded in Egypt by Pharaoh's officials and by the people.*”

This last plague will become the proverbial last straw that broke the camel's back. Considering the nation of Egypt was in a shamble, absolutely devastated and traumatized, the loss of their first born, a death in every household proves to be too much.

### Exodus 12:30

Pharaoh and all his officials and all the Egyptians got up during the night, and there was loud wailing in Egypt, for there was not a house without someone dead.

Unit 8 Review:

What an incredible statement God makes in regards to His purpose for Israel- “treasured possession.” In light of this, what was God’s plan for the nation of Israel?

---

---

---

A new king in Egypt arose, give some of the reasons for his brutal treatment of the Hebrews.

---

---

---

Provide a brief overview of the three periods of the life of Moses.

---

---

---

What is significant concerning the hardness of Pharaoh’s heart, and how did God use it?

---

---

---

What was really going on behind the scenes in the spirit realm during the Exodus from Egypt?

---

---

---

## C. Passover

(pas'-o-ver) (pecach, from pacach, "to pass" or "spring over" or "to spare")

Exodus Chapter 12 begins with the creation of the Jewish calendar- Exodus 12:1-2, "*The LORD said to Moses and Aaron in Egypt, 'This month is to be for you the first month, the first month of your year.'*"

The Lord went on to instruct them that on the tenth day of the new month they are to take a lamb for his family, one for each household- they must be year old males without defect or blemish. They are to keep the lamb with the family for the next four days so they become familiar and attached to it- making the sacrifice that much more personal. Why a lamb and not an adult sheep or goat, perhaps the lamb symbolizes innocence, being only a year old.

At twilight on the fourteenth day of the month, all the people of the community must slaughter their lamb. Then take some of the blood and put it on the sides and tops of the doorframes of the houses where they eat the lambs which were roasted with fire along with bitter herbs, and bread made without yeast. They were to eat it in haste, fully dressed and ready to leave- it is the Lord's Passover.



Now this is no small town affair, there are literally tens of thousands of people killing lambs, sprinkling the blood on the doorposts, and going inside to roast the lambs- they were all doing it at the same time. You can imagine that the land of Goshen smelled like one great big lamb cookout. Think what it would be like today, if all the citizens of a city of two million residents went in their backyard at the same time and grilled steaks. Why you could smell those steaks and see that smoke for miles and miles. That's what is happening with the Hebrews. You would smell those lambs being roasted all over Egypt. As the scent of the smoke ascended up into the heavens, it reached the very nostrils of God. It was the evidence to God that the blood, representing the covenant relationship with Abraham's descendants, had been applied. Now the covenant meal was being consumed to celebrate the communion of that covenant.

Did you notice that God required a perfect lamb without defect or blemish to be chosen for the sacrifice. The life of a lamb in substitution for the lives of those living in the house. We understand according to Romans 3:23 that the wages of sin is death, someone has to die, justice has to be satisfied. However, justice will only accept an innocent sacrifice to take the place of a guilty person. A condemned man cannot pay the crimes committed by another condemned man, he has to pay for his own. God used the innocent lamb as a type of Jesus being the perfect, sinless sacrifice for mankind.

I have enclosed a number of Scriptures that point to this revelation- enjoy!

**Isaiah 53:7**

**He was oppressed and afflicted, yet he did not open his mouth; he was led like a lamb to the slaughter, and as a sheep before her shearers is silent, so he did not open his mouth.**

### **John 1:29**

The next day John saw Jesus coming toward him and said, "Look, the Lamb of God, who takes away the sin of the world!"

### **1 Peter 1:18-21**

For you know that it was not with perishable things such as silver or gold that you were redeemed from the empty way of life handed down to you from your forefathers, but with the precious blood of Christ, a lamb without blemish or defect. He was chosen before the creation of the world, but was revealed in these last times for your sake. Through him you believe in God, who raised him from the dead and glorified him, and so your faith and hope are in God.

### **Revelation 7:14, 12:11, 13:8, 17:14**

They have washed their robes and made them white in the blood of the Lamb. They overcame him by the blood of the Lamb and by the word of their testimony; they did not love their lives so much as to shrink from death. All inhabitants of the earth will worship the beast- all whose names have not been written in the book of life belonging to the Lamb that was slain from the creation of the world. They will make war against the Lamb, but the Lamb will overcome them because he is Lord of lords and King of kings-and with him will be his called, chosen and faithful followers.

### **Revelation 19:7-9**

"Let us rejoice and be glad and give him glory! For the wedding of the Lamb has come, and his bride has made herself ready. Fine linen, bright and clean, was given her to wear." (Fine linen stands for the righteous acts of the saints.) Then the angel said to me, "Write: 'Blessed are those who are invited to the wedding supper of the Lamb!'" And he added, "These are the true words of God."

### **Revelation 22:3-5**

No longer will there be any curse. The throne of God and of the Lamb will be in the city, and his servants will serve him. They will see his face, and his name will be on their foreheads. There will be no more night. They will not need the light of a lamp or the light of the sun, for the Lord God will give them light. And they will reign forever and ever.

### **Revelation 5:6-14**

Then I saw a Lamb, looking as if it had been slain, standing in the center of the throne, encircled by the four living creatures and the elders. He had seven horns and seven eyes, which are the seven spirits of God sent out into all the earth. He came and took the scroll from the right hand of him who sat on the throne. And when he had taken it, the four living creatures and the twenty-four elders fell down before the Lamb. Each one had a harp and they were holding golden bowls full of incense, which are the prayers of the saints. And they sang a new song:

"You are worthy to take the scroll and to open its seals, because you were slain, and with your blood you purchased men for God from every tribe and language and people and nation. You have made them to be a kingdom and priests to serve our God, and they will reign on the earth."

Then I looked and heard the voice of many angels, numbering thousands upon thousands, and ten thousand times ten thousand. They encircled the throne and the living creatures and the elders. In a loud voice they sang: "Worthy is the Lamb, who was slain, to receive power and wealth and wisdom and strength and honor and glory and praise!" Then I heard every creature in heaven and on earth and under the earth and on the sea, and all that is in them, singing: "To him who sits on the throne and to the Lamb be praise and honor and glory and power, forever and ever!" The four living creatures said, "Amen," and the elders fell down and worshiped.

We know who the gods of Egypt were- they were demons. Satan and his hosts are so conceited and full of pride that they long to be worshiped- it was the original sin for Satan. Hence why idolatry is so evil!

### **1 Corinthians 10:18-21**

**Consider the people of Israel: Do not those who eat the sacrifices participate in the altar? Do I mean then that a sacrifice offered to an idol is anything, or that an idol is anything? No, but the sacrifices of pagans are offered to demons, not to God, and I do not want you to be participants with demons.**

Although the family was inside the house and couldn't see the blood covering, they had faith that God would save them because of it. As they ate their meal, God allowed death to sweep through the land. As he passed from door to door, he sought to enter every household. If the entrance was covered by blood the angel of death could not get in, but had to pass over that house. The blood was a seal protecting the people inside. However, if the entrance was not covered by blood, judgment would come upon that household as the first-born died.

The blood of the lamb was applied by dipping a bunch of hyssop in the blood and striking the two side posts and the upper post or lintel of the door. It typified the blood of Jesus sprinkled for believers. Notice that no blood was to be sprinkled on the threshold so that the feet would trample on it.



### **HYSSOP**

The marjoram (origanum) with long, straight stalk, downy leaf, and white blossom; common in Palestine and near mount Sinai; an aromatic plant. The simplest form of the hyssop sprinkler is the "bunch," which each father in Israel hastily prepared before leaving Egypt. In the Mosaic ritual the bunch of hyssop was tied with a scarlet thread (Numbers 19:6). In the account of the crucifixion (John 19:28-29) it is recorded, "they put a sponge full of sour wine upon a bunch of hyssop, and brought it to His mouth."

### **Exodus 12:22-23**

**Take a bunch of hyssop, dip it into the blood in the basin and put some of the blood on the top and on both sides of the doorframe. Not one of you shall go out the door of his house until morning. When the LORD goes through the land to strike down the Egyptians, he will see the blood on the top and sides of the doorframe and will pass over that doorway, and he will not permit the destroyer to enter your houses and strike you down.**

### **Hebrews 11:28**

**By faith Moses kept the Passover and the sprinkling of blood, so that the destroyer of the firstborn would not touch the firstborn of Israel.**

Why bread without yeast- yeast as you know is the substance that causes bread to rise through a fermentation process. The Bible refers to "yeast" as a type of sin.

### **1 Corinthians 5:6-8**

**Your boasting is not good. Don't you know that a little yeast works through the whole batch of dough? Get rid of the old yeast that you may be a new batch without yeast-as you really are. For Christ, our Passover lamb, has been sacrificed. Therefore let us keep the Festival, not with the old yeast, the yeast of malice and wickedness, but with bread without yeast, the bread of sincerity and truth.**

Bitter herbs were to be used with the meal. What kind is not specified, but it is thought they were chicory, wild lettuce and horehound. They were to remind Israel of their bitter slavery in Egypt from which God was now ready to deliver them.

### **Ephesians 2:1-5**

**As for you, you were dead in your transgressions and sins, in which you used to live when you followed the ways of this world and of the ruler of the kingdom of the air, the spirit who is now at work in those who are disobedient. All of us also lived among them at one time, gratifying the cravings of our sinful nature and following its desires and thoughts. Like the rest, we were by nature objects of wrath. But because of his great love for us, God, who is rich in mercy, made us alive with Christ even when we were dead in transgressions-it is by grace you have been saved.**

### **John 8:34-36**

**Jesus replied, "I tell you the truth, everyone who sins is a slave to sin. Now a slave has no permanent place in the family, but a son belongs to it forever. So if the Son sets you free, you will be free indeed."**

### **1. A Lamb Defeats a Serpent**

This was the Lord's Passover, and we see that He used the blood of the lamb as the means for bringing His people out of bondage to Egypt. Now the symbol of Egypt was the serpent. In the Bible, the serpent represents Satan- Genesis 3:15; Revelation 12:9. What God is saying with this exodus is that in His own appointed time, He will use the blood of the lamb to destroy Satan's power and set people free from bondage to him.

Remember that Egypt is a type of the "World System" that Satan dominates and had formerly held us in spiritual slavery through sin. The new birth represents our spiritual Exodus out of the kingdom of darkness. Our pathway out of spiritual 'Egypt', the world system that represented the life we once lived- an oppressive life dominated by Satan, Sin, Sickness and Poverty. Through Jesus Christ in His death, burial and resurrection we have been ransomed from sin through the blood of Jesus- Romans 6:15-23.

### **Colossians 1:13-14 AMP**

**[The Father] has delivered and drawn us to Himself out of the control and the dominion of darkness and has transferred us into the kingdom of the Son of His love, In Whom we have our redemption through His blood, [which means] the forgiveness of our sins.**

### **Exodus 12:29-30**

**At midnight the LORD struck down all the firstborn in Egypt, from the firstborn of Pharaoh, who sat on the throne, to the firstborn of the prisoner, who was in the dungeon, and the firstborn of all the livestock as well. Pharaoh and all his officials and all the Egyptians got up during the night, and there was loud wailing in Egypt, for there was not a house without someone dead.**

God made the Passover or the "Feast of Unleavened Bread" an ordinance for Israel to follow each year until its fulfillment in Jesus Christ at the Last Supper. At the Last Supper Jesus officially ended the ancient ordinance and instituted a new one under the New Covenant called Communion.

**Luke 22:1- Now the Feast of Unleavened Bread, called the Passover, was approaching...**

### **Mark 14:12**

**On the first day of the Feast of Unleavened Bread, when it was customary to sacrifice the Passover lamb, Jesus' disciples asked him, "Where do you want us to go and make preparations for you to eat the Passover?"**

## **A House Cleaning**

Now before the Passover celebration could begin, all the leaven was to be removed from the Hebrew's house. The leaven represented their old life of bondage in Egypt. So they were to purge out or remove the leaven from the house before they could have the covenant meal. In other words, they couldn't have leaven in the house while at the same time commune with God. So before partaking of the meal, the head of the house would take a lighted candle and diligently search through every nook and cranny of the house looking for any hidden leaven. If he found any, he would immediately remove it from the house. Then the family would be ready for communion with God.

## **The Cup**

Now when God renewed His covenant with Abraham, He made Abraham three promises. One promise was that Abraham would have so many descendants, that their number would be as the stars in the sky and the sands upon the sea shore. Another was that Abraham's descendants would possess the land God had given to Abraham. The third promise was that one would come as a descendant of Abraham who would be a blessing to the whole world. This (singular) of Abraham we have learned about already, it speaks of Jesus. The "coming one" would not only be their king, but somehow in a way they didn't fully understand, he would be "God living among them." He would be their God and they would be His people- Genesis 12:1-3; 13:15-16; 15:18; 17:1-8.

Now after the Hebrews possessed their promised land and became a great nation, they began to look for the fulfillment of this third promise; they began to look for the "coming one." What better way could they anticipate his coming than by setting aside a place for him at the Passover meal which symbolized their communion with God, and this they did. They placed a cup at the end of the table. It was called "the cup" or "the cup of blessing" in 1 Corinthians 10:16. No one could drink from "the cup" because it was reserved for the "coming one." According to tradition, when He came, He would drink of "the cup" and cut a new covenant with His people. So they left a place looking forward to this time. Imagine the impact upon the disciples when Jesus took that cup, drank from it and shared it with them in the Lord's Supper!

They also set aside a cup for Elijah. They believed that Elijah would come and announce the coming of the king- Malachi 3:1; 4:5-6. He would prepare the people to receive the "coming one." So at the beginning of the covenant meal, the youngest of the family would open the door and invite Elijah to come and join them in the meal. The entire family would stand and say, "Blessed is he that cometh." But he does not come. So the youngest returns to his place at the table.

Then they recite the following prayer: "How long, O Lord, how long wilt thy anger not be turned away from thy people Israel and wilt thou have mercy and restore us again to thy favor? Behold our sufferings: we are scattered among the heathen and they mock us saying: where is thy God, and where is the promise of His coming? We grow faint, yet we hope." So sad, Jesus, their Messiah had already come and they missed Him because He did not come and do as they expected.

## **The Bread**

Instead of putting unleavened bread on the plate, they began to put it in a small bag embroidered with gold thread. This bag had three compartments. Three pieces of unleavened bread, caned matza, were placed in the bag, one piece in each separate compartment. During the meal, the host would take out the middle piece of matza, break it, and pass it around the table. Each member would then break off a piece and eat it.

The Hebrew believed that these three pieces of bread represented their forefathers; Abraham, Isaac and Jacob. They broke the middle piece to symbolize Isaac being offered as a sacrifice.

But they didn't quite understand this Interpretation because Isaac was not really sacrificed. Even today, they can't satisfactorily explain it. The middle piece of matza that was broken, passed around and eaten, was called the afikomen. The word afikomen is derived from the Greek word aperchomenos which means the "Coming one."

### **The Temple Passover**

Later when the Temple was built, instead of killing the lambs at the doorpost, the people would bring the lambs to Jerusalem and kill them at the Temple. The Passover celebration was a time of great joy, praise and adoration in worship to God. As they sacrificed at the Temple, the Levites would lead the people in singing the Psalms of David. They specifically sang Psalm 113-118. They begin by all singing the first line of each Psalm. Then the Levites would sing the second line of each Psalm and the people would respond by saying "Hallelujah" or "Praise ye the Lord."

The singing was accompanied with musical instruments of trumpets, harps, flutes, tambourines, the cymbals, and other instruments. It reached its peak as the entire nation lifted their voices to God and sang Psalms 118:24, "This is the day the Lord has made; we will rejoice and be glad in it."

One Passover, during the reign of King Hezekiah, was such a wonderful festival of praise, that they continued it for seven more days according to Chronicles 30:23-24. It was like bringing God back for an encore. Later, King Josiah, not to be out done, personally contributed 30,000 animals for sacrifice in 2 Chronicles 35:7. So Passover was a time of great joy and celebration.

### **Temple Lambs**

As time passed however, it became more difficult for the people in the outlying areas to bring their sacrifice to Jerusalem. So the Levites began raising lambs for the Passover sacrifice right in Jerusalem and selling them at the Temple.

Then when the Hebrew came to Jerusalem to celebrate Passover, he could buy a lamb already set aside for sacrifice. It was a lamb that had been closely inspected and was without spot or blemish. It was a lamb that they found no fault in because it was born to die as a Passover lamb.

### **Arriving for Passover**

Put yourself in this scene and come along with me now to Jerusalem to celebrate Passover. It's always exciting to go to Jerusalem- this is the city of your God. As you arrive on the Outskirts of town, the majesty of the Temple dominates the city. All eyes are fixed on it, as the masses of people crowd into the temple area.

Somehow, in the midst of all the bumping, crowding and pushing, you make your way to purchase a lamb. You overheard someone say there are about 250,000 Passover lambs this year. (Josephus, a first-century Jewish historian reported there were 256,500.) A feeling that is difficult to explain covers your body as the sounds of hundreds of thousands of lambs waiting to be sacrificed fill the city.

There is an excitement in the air as people anticipate the festival of praise. It's not much time now until 3 o'clock when the lambs are to be slaughtered. So you hurriedly make your way and purchase your lamb. Then you move with the crowds towards the Altar at the Temple where the sacrifices will be made.

### **The Jerusalem Slaughter House**

The Levites are lined up in two long rows stretching from the Altar way out to the people. Each Levite has a basin in his hand to catch the blood. Just as the threshold caught the blood back in Egypt. The basin is pointed at the bottom to keep the Levite from setting it down, else the blood would congeal.

Finally the time everyone has been waiting for arrives- it is 3 o'clock. All you can see is the flashing of knives as the bloody animals are being slaughtered. When you cut the throat of your own lamb, the warm blood flows through your fingers. Although it's not like your pet lamb back home and is somewhat impersonal, still you can identify with the animal. The Levite standing before you catches the blood in the basin. Quickly he passes it up the line to the Levite nearest the Altar. Very methodically, he takes the basin and throws the blood against the altar. Then he passes the empty basin back down the line of Levites to catch the blood of another lamb. And so you rejoice and sing the great Psalms of praise to God as you prepare for your Passover meal.

## 2. Jesus Partook of Passover

Let's look at how Jesus partook of the Passover under the Old Covenant on that night when Jesus and His disciples met together to eat the Passover- Matthew 26:19; Mark 14:16; Luke 22:13. The manner in which the Passover feast was kept by the Jews of that period differed in many details from that originally prescribed by the rules of Exodus 12. The multitudes that came up to Jerusalem met as they could find accommodation. Either, family by family, in groups of friends, with one of their number as the celebrant, or "proclaimer" of the feast. The ceremonies of the feast took place in the following order:

### **Matthew 26:26-29 NKJV**

**And as they were eating, Jesus took bread, blessed and broke it, and gave it to the disciples and said, "Take, eat; this is My body." Then He took the cup, and gave thanks, and gave it to them, saying, "Drink from it, all of you. For this is My blood of the new covenant, which is shed for many for the remission of sins."**

1. The members of the company that were joined for this purpose met in the evening and reclined on couches, their position being a matter of rule based on standing- Matthew 26:20; Luke 22:14; and John 13:23, 25. The head of the household, or celebrant, began by a form of blessing "for the day and for the wine," pronounced over a cup, of which he and the others then drank. The wine was, according to rabbinic traditions, to be mixed with water; not for any mysterious reason, but because that was regarded as the preferred way of using the best wine.
2. All who were present then washed their hands; this also having a special benediction.
3. The table was then set out with the Passover lamb, unleavened bread, bitter herbs, and the dish known as Charoseth. A sauce made of dates, figs, raisins, and vinegar, designed to commemorate their bondage in Egypt.
4. The celebrant first, and then the others, dipped a portion of the bitter herbs into the Charoseth and ate them.
5. The dishes were then removed, and a cup of wine again brought. Then followed an interval which was allowed theoretically for the questions that might be asked by children or proselytes, who were astonished at such a strange beginning of a feast, and the cup was passed round and drunk at the close of it.
6. The dishes being brought on again, the celebrant repeated the commemorative words which opened what was strictly the Passover supper, and pronounced a solemn thanksgiving, followed by Psalms 113 and 114.
7. Then came a second washing of the hands, with a short form of blessing as before, and the celebrant broke one of the two loaves or cakes of unleavened bread, and gave thanks over it. All then took portions of the bread and dipped them, together with the bitter herbs, into the Charoseth, and ate.

8. After this they ate the flesh of the Passover lamb, with bread, and, after another blessing, a third cup, known especially as the “cup of blessing” was handed round.
9. This was succeeded by a fourth cup, and the recital of Psalms 115-118, followed by a prayer, and this was accordingly known as the cup of the Hallel, or of the Song.
10. There might be, in conclusion, a fifth cup, provided that the “great Hallel” (possibly Psalms 120-137) was sung over it.

The narratives of the Gospels show how strongly the disciples were impressed with the words which had given a new meaning to the old familiar acts. They leave unnoticed all the ceremonies of the Passover, except those which had thus been transferred to the Christian Church and perpetuated in it.

Old things were passing away, and all things becoming new. They had looked on the bread and the wine as memorials of the deliverance from Egypt. They were now told to partake of them “in remembrance” of their Master and Lord. The festival had been annual. No rule was given as to the time and frequency of the new feast that thus supervened on the old, but the command, “Do this as often as you drink it” (1 Corinthians 11:25), suggested the more continual recurrence of that which was to be their memorial of one whom they would never forget.

The words, “*This is my body,*” gave to the unleavened bread a new character. They had been prepared for language that would otherwise have been so startling by the teaching of John (John 6:32-58). They were taught to see in the bread, a broken body as a witness of the closest possible union and fellowship with their Lord. The cup, which was “the New Covenant” in His blood, would remind them, in like manner, of the wonderful prophecy in which the New Covenant had been foretold in Jeremiah 31:31-34. The crowning glory was in the promise, “I will forgive their iniquity, and I will remember their sin no more.” His blood was shed, as He told them, “for them and for many,” for the remission of sins. What He had been proclaiming throughout His whole ministry, was to seal a New Covenant; foretold through the sprinkling of blood from the time of Moses in Exodus 24:8.

### **1 Corinthians 11:23-26**

**For I received from the Lord what I also passed on to you: The Lord Jesus, on the night he was betrayed, took bread, and when he had given thanks, he broke it and said, “This is my body, which is for you; do this in remembrance of me.” In the same way, after supper he took the cup, saying, “This cup is the new covenant in my blood; do this, whenever you drink it, in remembrance of me.” For whenever you eat this bread and drink this cup, you proclaim the Lord’s death until he comes.**

### **The New Covenant**

Quite likely on this very same day, God sent forth His only Son who was born of the seed of woman - Galatians 4:4. He was born of the seed of woman because He was brought into the world through the womb of a woman who had never known a man. He was born of a virgin. God bypassed the natural reproduction process and prepared for Himself a body. He was referred to as Emmanuel which means “God is with us.” They called His name Jesus - Luke 1:27-31; Matthew 1:23.

A prophet in the spirit of Elijah proceeded Him to prepare the people to receive Jesus as the “coming one.” It was prophesied that this forerunner to Jesus would turn many of Abraham’s descendants to the Lord their God. John the Baptist was that voice crying in the wilderness, “... *Prepare the way of the Lord, make his paths straight.*”

### **Luke 1:16-17**

**“Many of the people of Israel will he bring back to the Lord their God. And he will go on before the Lord, in the spirit and power of Elijah, to turn the hearts of the fathers to their children and the disobedient to the wisdom of the righteous - to make ready a people prepared for the Lord.”**

### **Luke 3:3-4 NKJV**

**And he went into all the region around the Jordan, preaching a baptism of repentance for the remission of sins, as it is written in the book of the words of Isaiah the prophet, saying:**

**“The voice of one crying in the wilderness:  
‘Prepare the way of the Lord;  
Make His paths straight.’”**

John explained the meaning of these words as he preached in Matthew 3:2, *“Repent, for the kingdom of heaven is near (arrived).”* In essence, John was saying the King is coming, get ready to receive Him! Jesus said that John the Baptist was the one who would announce that the King is Coming- Isaiah 40:3; Malachi 3:1; 4:5-6; Matthew 3:2; 17:10-12; 21:12; Mark 1:2; Luke 1: 16-17; 7:27. But the King is introduced on the scene by John the Baptist as the “Lamb of God” who takes away the sin of the world in John 1:29.



### **Luke 3:21-22**

**When all the people were being baptized, Jesus was baptized too. And as he was praying, heaven was opened and the Holy Spirit descended on him in bodily form like a dove. And a voice came from heaven: “You are my Son, whom I love; with you I am well pleased.”**

In Luke 4:1-15, we see immediately after the proclamation of Jesus being the Lamb of God, He is led into the wilderness to do battle with the serpent; but he returns in the power of the Spirit and His fame begins to spread throughout the region.

Three years later on the 10<sup>th</sup> day of the month of Passover, which was exactly the same day the pet lambs were set aside back in Egypt, the real “Lamb of God” enters Jerusalem. The people take branches of palm trees and go out to meet Him. As He comes near, the people shout in John 12:13, *“... Hosanna! Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord! Blessed is the King of Israel.”* Jesus. Entering Jerusalem on a donkey, was fulfilling a 400 year old prophecy by the prophet Zechariah. Zechariah was speaking of this occasion when he said...

### **Zechariah 9:9**

**Rejoice greatly, O Daughter of Zion! Shout, Daughter of Jerusalem! See, your king comes to you, righteous and having salvation, gentle and riding on a donkey, on a colt, the foal of a donkey.**

Yet still the seed of the serpent, certain religious and political leaders, seek to kill Him. For five days they observe and test Him, but there's nothing wrong with Him. He is spotless and without blemish; they can find no fault in Him because He was born to die as a Passover lamb.

So as Passover begins on the evening of the 14<sup>th</sup>, Jesus is careful not to be seen around the Temple. He sends two of His disciples, Peter and John, into the city. They are to find a certain man who has purchased a lamb and prepared a room for them where they can safely have their Passover meal together in Luke 22:1-13. Jesus also knew Judas was going to betray Him and did not want him to know where.

Jesus, as the head of the group, explains the meaning of the Passover. No doubt He leads them in singing, "This is the day the Lord has made, let us rejoice and be glad in it."

### **The New Covenant Meal**

At the end of the meal, Jesus makes an unusual move. He picks up the bag with the bread in it and pulls out the middle piece. Then Jesus breaks the middle piece, gives it to His disciples and says in Luke 22:19, ". . . *This is my body given for you; do this in remembrance of me.*" It's not Abraham, Isaac and Jacob after all. It's Father, Son and Holy Spirit. The middle piece didn't look back to Isaac who needed a substitute. It looked ahead to Jesus, the real "Lamb of God" who was to give Himself. Jesus is that broken matza. Then Jesus took "the cup," and gave it to His disciples and said...

### **Matthew 26:27-28**

**Then he took the cup, gave thanks and offered it to them, saying, "Drink from it, all of you. This is my blood of the covenant, which is poured out for many for the forgiveness of sins."**

Then Jesus said...

### **Matthew 26:29**

**"I tell you, I will not drink of this fruit of the vine from now on until that day when I drink it anew with you in my Father's kingdom."**

With these words Jesus was saying, "Men everywhere long for life. They seek a share in the life of God. They give of their own blood or the blood of a substitute. Then they drink the blood or the blood of the grapes as a substitute to express their desire for union with God. They then eat the flesh of the sacrifice to express their desire for communion with God. All that man reaches out for I supply, in Me is life, I am the "coming one" you've been waiting for. If you will partake of My life, you will partake of the life of God. This is the New Covenant in My blood."

## **3. The Lamb on the Cross**

Then Jesus went out and had a personal confrontation with Satan. At 9 o'clock that morning as the lambs were being prepared for sacrifice, Jesus was nailed to the cross in Mark 15:25. The third hour was 9 o'clock in the morning, Jewish time.

There He bore our griefs and carried our sorrows. He was wounded for our transgressions. He was bruised for our iniquities. The Lord laid on Jesus the iniquity of us all. He was oppressed and afflicted. Yet He opened not His mouth, like a lamb led to the slaughter. His strength was poured out like water. His bones were out of joint and His heart melted like wax. His strength dried up like sun-baked clay. His tongue stuck to His mouth. His bones protruded out of His body. He was sheared like a lamb at the slaughter house. His heel was bruised- See Isaiah 53; Psalms 22:14-17. These are prophecies describing Jesus' crucifixion.

When a person is crucified, he pushes himself up by his heel to get more air into his lungs. This act of pushing bruises his heel. Then at 3 o'clock as the people are singing praises to God that echo throughout the hills of Jerusalem, the lambs are slaughtered. At the same moment, as the shouts of "Hallelujah" and "Praise ye the Lord" ring out on the hill called Calvary, Jesus died. Like the doorpost back in Egypt, the blood of the lamb covered the cross. To perfectly fulfill the Old Covenant not one bone of the "Lamb of God" was broken- Exodus 12:46; Psalms 34:20; John 19:36. The entire lamb was consumed being roasted by the judgment fires of God as He became our sin substitute. Jeremiah wrote of this time and said God would send fire into His bones and consume the entire sacrifice- Lamentations 1:13. The Jews, not knowing they were further fulfilling prophecy, hurriedly look the body down before 6 o'clock, so that there would be nothing left over for the next day- Exodus 12:10; John 19:31.

### **Blood and Water**

I mentioned that the Hebrews back in Egypt used a hyssop bush to sprinkle the blood of the lamb on the doorpost. The hyssop bush carries water in its stem. When the blood was applied, water would flow out of the stem and cover the blood. So the entire entrance into the house was actually sealed with blood and water.

When Moses received the Ten Commandments, he took a hyssop bush dipped it into blood and sprinkled it over the stone tablets and all the people. Later, he sprinkled blood over the Tabernacle and all its furnishings used in worship as well as the priest. They were all sealed with blood and water. Then in order to enter the Tabernacle and approach God, the High Priest had to go by way of the blood at the Altar and the water at the laver. There he carried the name of each of the 12 tribes sealed in stone over his heart and on his shoulders.

Then later when the Temple was built, blood drained into basins underneath the Altar. Water flowed through these basins carrying the blood outside the Temple so that the people could see that their sacrifice had been accepted. They saw the blood and water. When Jesus was crucified, they pierced Him in the side and out flowed blood and water.

### **John 19:34-37**

**Instead, one of the soldiers pierced Jesus' side with a spear, bringing a sudden flow of blood and water . The man who saw it has given testimony, and his testimony is true. He knows that he tells the truth, and he testifies so that you also may believe. These things happened so that the scripture would be fulfilled: "Not one of his bones will be broken," and, as another scripture says, "They will look on the one they have pierced."**

All these sacrifices were pointing to Him as our Passover Lamb! *1 Corinthians 5:7-8, "Get rid of the old yeast that you may be a new batch without yeast — as you really are. For Christ, our Passover lamb, has been sacrificed."*

The blood represents a life given while the water represents a life received. Jesus gave His life for us at the cross. There His blood was poured out on our behalf, but we get no benefit from Him giving His life unless we personally receive it for ourselves. You see, the blood of Jesus alone will not save you unless you appropriate it for your own life through faith- Romans 10:9-10.

You appropriate it for your own life by asking Him to come into your life and be your Lord and Savior. You accept Him into your heart as the "Lamb of God" who died for your sins. Jesus then comes into your life through the person of the Holy Spirit. This is the meaning of the water that sealed every place where the blood was applied. It looked forward to us receiving the Holy Spirit. Whoever applies the blood of Jesus to their life is sealed with the Holy Spirit- Ephesians 1:13; 4:30; 2 Corinthians 1:22; 1 Peter 1:5. Water is a type of the Holy Spirit.

### **John 4:10**

**Jesus answered her, “If you knew the gift of God and who it is that asks you for a drink, you would have asked him and he would have given you living water.”**

### **John 7:38-39**

**“Whoever believes in me, as the Scripture has said, streams of living water will flow from within him.” By this he meant the Spirit, whom those who believed in him were later to receive. Up to that time the Spirit had not been given, since Jesus had not yet been glorified.**

Jesus was anointed with the Holy Spirit and Power, after He was water Baptized- the Holy Spirit came upon Him.

### **Luke 4:14**

**Jesus returned to Galilee in the power of the Spirit , and news about him spread through the whole countryside.**

### **Acts 10:38**

**How God anointed Jesus of Nazareth with the Holy Spirit and power, and how he went around doing good and healing all who were under the power of the devil, because God was with him.**

So now you see how in the Old Covenant, the water and blood was a type of Jesus and the Holy Spirit ushering in the New Covenant. As believers in Jesus Christ we are washed in the blood of Jesus and filled with the Holy Spirit; we too enter into God’s Kingdom through water and blood.

### **1 John 5:6-12**

**This is the one who came by water and blood — Jesus Christ. He did not come by water only, but by water and blood. And it is the Spirit who testifies, because the Spirit is the truth. For there are three that testify: the Spirit, the water and the blood ; and the three are in agreement. We accept man’s testimony, but God’s testimony is greater because it is the testimony of God, which he has given about his Son. Anyone who believes in the Son of God has this testimony in his heart. Anyone who does not believe God has made him out to be a liar, because he has not believed the testimony God has given about his Son. And this is the testimony: God has given us eternal life, and this life is in his Son. He who has the Son has life; he who does not have the Son of God does not have life.**

This is what the New Covenant meal is all about. When we partake of it, we are not just remembering a life given, we are celebrating a life received. It is God’s life and we have received it. This is why communion is to be a time of great joy, praise and worship.

Most communion services are dry and remind me of a funeral home. Everybody wears a long face and will hardly breathe lest their gasping for breath break the silence and offend God. We unwittingly have believed this “holy hush” is pleasing to God. Well, that’s okay if your god is dead.

But mine isn’t! The cross is bare! The tomb is empty! Jesus is alive! He publicly destroyed Satan at the cross where He purchased our salvation; Colossians 2:15 *“And having disarmed the powers and authorities, he made a public spectacle of them, triumphing over them by the cross.”* The blood of the Lamb destroyed the serpent and set us free from bondage to him. Death cannot enter the heart of one who is covered with the blood of Jesus and sealed with the Holy Spirit. Death is swallowed up in victory. God has given us the victory through Jesus Christ our Lord- 1 Corinthians 15:54-58, the war is over and we won! Yet we live on to fight the good fight of faith and enforce Satan’s defeat!

### **Ephesians 1:19-23**

**That power is like the working of his mighty strength, which he exerted in Christ when he raised him from the dead and seated him at his right hand in the heavenly realms, far above all rule and authority, power and dominion, and every title that can be given, not only in the present age but also in the one to come. And God placed all things under his feet and appointed him to be head over everything for the church, which is his body, the fullness of him who fills everything in every way.**

The seed of the woman bruised the head of the serpent through His resurrection. And now we have received that same life in us. We too have victory over Satan for greater is He who is in us than He who is in the world- 1 John 4:4.

### **4. The Lamb On the Throne**

In the Revelation of Jesus Christ, John stood before One on the throne who had a scroll with writing on the inside and the back. It was sealed with seven seals. John heard a mighty angel with a loud voice saying. "Who is worthy to open the book and loose the seals?" No one in heaven, nor in earth, nor under the earth was able to open the book. No one could even look upon it. Then John wept for no one was found worthy to open and read the book, neither to look upon it. One of the elders before the throne said unto John, "Weep not! Look, the lion of the tribe of Judah, the Root of David, has prevailed to open the book." As John turned to see this lion, he saw standing in the center of the Throne. A Lamb as it had been slain. The Greek word John chose to refer to this lamb is *arnios*. It means a little, "pet lamb." Just like back in Egypt.

### **Revelation 5:9-14**

**You are worthy to take the scroll and to open its seals, because you were slain, and with your blood you purchased men for God from every tribe and language and people and nation. You have made them to be a kingdom and priests to serve our God, and they will reign on the earth." Then I looked and heard the voice of many angels, numbering thousands upon thousands, and ten thousand times ten thousand. They encircled the throne and the living creatures and the elders. In a loud voice they sang:**

**"Worthy is the Lamb, who was slain,  
to receive power and wealth and wisdom and strength  
and honor and glory and praise!"**

**Then I heard every creature in heaven and on earth and under the earth and on the sea, and all that is in them, singing:**

**"To him who sits on the throne and to the Lamb be praise and honor and glory and power,  
forever and ever!" The four living creatures said, "Amen," and the elders fell down and  
worshipped.**

### **The King is Coming**

All who know Jesus as their Lord and Savior drink of the fruit of the vine in remembrance of His life given for us and to us. As we partake of the covenant meal we look forward to the time when we will partake of it with our heavenly Father at the "Marriage Supper of the Lamb" according to Revelation 19:1-9. It will be a time of great joy and praise and worship to God, echoing throughout the hills of the New Jerusalem. And instead of being on Mount Calvary it will be on Mount Zion where Jesus Christ, the "Lamb of God," will reign as King of kings and Lord of lords- Psalms 2:6-8; 48:1-2. There we shall reign with Him as kings and priests of the most high God.

The Jews complete their Passover service by saying. L'Shanah Ha, Baah, Bee-Ru-Sha La-Yim. Which means "next year in Jerusalem." So we partake of the covenant meal by saying, "next year at the Marriage Supper of the Lamb." Hallelujah! The King is coming.

### **The Covenant Terms**

Before partaking of the covenant meal. It is good to be reminded of the terms of the covenant. When we hear them, it fills our hearts with songs of joy and gladness, so that sorrow and mourning shall flee away (Isaiah 35:10; 51:11)- here are the terms.

### **Ezekiel 36:24-28**

**"For I will take you out of the nations; I will gather you from all the countries and bring you back into your own land. I will sprinkle clean water on you, and you will be clean; I will cleanse you from all your impurities and from all your idols. I will give you a new heart and put a new spirit in you; I will remove from you your heart of stone and give you a heart of flesh. And I will put my Spirit in you and move you to follow my decrees and be careful to keep my laws. You will live in the land I gave your forefathers; you will be my people, and I will be your God."**

Also in the book Hebrews God makes reference to His Covenant:

### **Hebrews 8:10-13**

**"This is the covenant I will make with the house of Israel after that time, declares the Lord. I will put my laws in their minds and write them on their hearts. I will be their God, and they will be my people. No longer will a man teach his neighbor, or a man his brother, saying, 'Know the Lord,' because they will all know me, from the least of them to the greatest. For I will forgive their wickedness and will remember their sins no more." By calling this covenant "new," he has made the first one obsolete; and what is obsolete and aging will soon disappear.**

### **There Is Only One Lamb**

We who are Christians all know God because the Holy Spirit within us bears witness to our human spirit that we are children of God by faith in Jesus Christ- Romans 8:15-16; Galatians 3:26. The "Lamb of God" has come to live in each of us in the person of the Holy Spirit. Although we, like the Jews, may come from different denominational tribes, we are all part of the same "Lamb of God."

There is no Catholic and Protestant "Lamb of God." Neither is there a Baptist, Methodist, Lutheran, Pentecostal, Presbyterian, etc., "Lamb of God." There is only one "Lamb of God," and He is in each of us who have received Jesus into our hearts as Lord and Savior. We're not in covenant with an organization; we are in covenant with a Person- He is the basis for our fellowship. Paul reminds us of this by saying...

### **1 Corinthians 10:16-17**

**Is not the cup of thanksgiving for which we give thanks a participation in the blood of Christ? And is not the bread that we break a participation in the body of Christ? Because there is one loaf, we, who are many, are one body, for we all partake of the one loaf.**

Therefore, all who know Christ Jesus are welcome to share in the covenant meal. All may feed at the table of communion. This is what is meant by open communion, which is a Biblical principle for those who have been redeemed by the blood of Jesus are part of one Faith, one Lord and one Baptism.

### **Ephesians 4:4-6**

**There is one body and one Spirit— just as you were called to one hope when you were called— one Lord, one faith, one baptism; one God and Father of all, who is over all and through all and in all.**

### **A Spiritual House Cleaning**

Remember the Hebrew had to purge out the leaven from his house before he could eat the communion meal. Well, in the Bible, leaven represents sin and Christians are now the spiritual house of God. Our body is the Temple of the Holy Spirit according to 1 Corinthians 3:16; 6:19-20.

So, we too must take a lighted candle, which is the Holy Spirit through the Word of God, and let Him search through every nook and cranny of our spiritual house looking for any hidden leaven (sin) that would keep us from enjoying fellowship with our heavenly Father.

### **1 Corinthians 5:7-8**

**Get rid of the old yeast that you may be a new batch without yeast — as you really are. For Christ, our Passover lamb, has been sacrificed. Therefore let us keep the Festival, not with the old yeast, the yeast of malice and wickedness, but with bread without yeast, the bread of sincerity and truth.**

As the head of the Hebrew household would not touch the exposed leaven, so God says to us in 2 Corinthians 6:17, “. . . *touch not the unclean thing; and I will receive you.*” Instead of burning leaven in a cloth, we let the fire of the Holy Spirit cleanse us through the washing of the water through the Word and by the blood of Jesus.

### **1 Corinthians 11:27-31**

**Therefore, whoever eats the bread or drinks the cup of the Lord in an unworthy manner will be guilty of sinning against the body and blood of the Lord. A man ought to examine himself before he eats of the bread and drinks of the cup. For anyone who eats and drinks without recognizing the body of the Lord eats and drinks judgment on himself. That is why many among you are weak and sick, and a number of you have fallen asleep. But if we judged ourselves, we would not come under judgment.**

We need to remember to walk in love toward others and keep ourselves from sin, in this way we judge ourselves and keep the door shut on the enemy. When we do sin we have 1 John 1:9 to receive forgiveness of our sins as believers. As a result, there is no more condemnation for those who are in Christ Jesus- Romans 8:1; Jude 24-25.

Unit 9 Review:

Why would God choose a lamb to be sacrificed for the Passover?

---

---

---

What does Egypt symbolically represent- how does it pertain to us today?

---

---

---

The ordinance of Communion for the Church is to be practiced for what reason?

---

---

---

The Bible points out the significance of blood and water- what is it?

---

---

---

What is meant by the expressions, “Open Communion” or “There is only One Lamb?”

---

---

---

What is leaven a type of in the Bible, and how does that apply to us?

---

---

---

## D. The Red Sea

In the terror of the Egyptians at the slaughter of their firstborn, the people of Israel began their exodus from Rameses to Succoth that memorable night in the month of Abib, or April, about 1450 B.C. There were about 600,000 men on foot besides women and children- so around 2 million, Exodus 12:37. The length of time the Israelites had been in Egypt according to Exodus 12:40 was 430 years to the day.



### **Exodus 12:31-36**

**During the night Pharaoh summoned Moses and Aaron and said, “Up! Leave my people, you and the Israelites! Go, worship the LORD as you have requested. Take your flocks and herds, as you have said, and go. And also bless me.” The Egyptians urged the people to hurry and leave the country. “For otherwise,” they said, “we will all die!” So the people took their dough before the yeast was added, and carried it on their shoulders in kneading troughs wrapped in clothing. The Israelites did as Moses instructed and asked the Egyptians for articles of silver and gold and for clothing. The LORD had made the Egyptians favorably disposed toward the people, and they gave them what they asked for; so they plundered the Egyptians.**

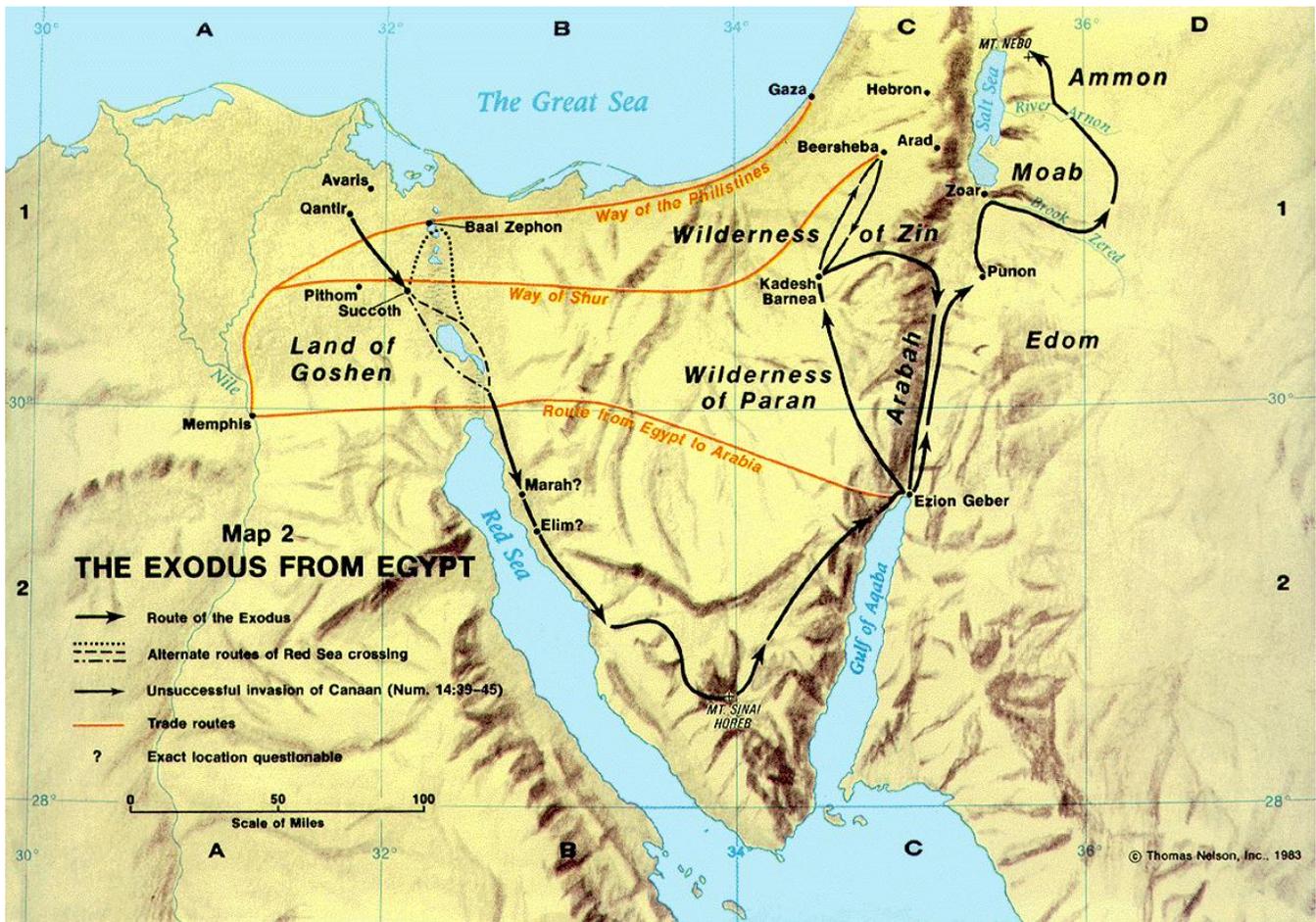
### **Exodus 13:17-18**

**When Pharaoh let the people go, God did not lead them on the road through the Philistine country, though that was shorter. For God said, “If they face war, they might change their minds and return to Egypt.” So God led the people around by the desert road toward the Red Sea. The Israelites went up out of Egypt armed for battle.**

Obviously God knew what He was doing, He had a specific plan when He led them out of Egypt. An interesting thing occurred concerning Joseph (Jacob’s son), Moses took his bones according to the oath Joseph made them take- Genesis 50:25; Exodus 13:19. An incredible supernatural sign occurred, God went before the people of Israel by day as a pillar of cloud and a pillar of fire at night.

### **Exodus 13:21-22**

**By day the LORD went ahead of them in a pillar of cloud to guide them on their way and by night in a pillar of fire to give them light, so that they could travel by day or night. Neither the pillar of cloud by day nor the pillar of fire by night left its place in front of the people.**



## The Exodus From Egypt

(indicating)

- Route of the [Exodus](#)
- Alternate routes of [Red Sea](#) crossing
- Unsuccessful invasion of [Canaan](#) ([Numbers 14:39-45](#))
- [Trade](#) routes
- Exact location questionable

I want to point something out for you in regards to God using angels as His agents in regards to fulfilling His covenant to Abraham, Isaac and Jacob.

### Acts 7:35-38

**“This is the same Moses whom they had rejected with the words, ‘Who made you ruler and judge?’ He was sent to be their ruler and deliverer by God himself, through the angel who appeared to him in the bush. He led them out of Egypt and did wonders and miraculous signs in Egypt, at the Red Sea and for forty years in the desert. This is that Moses who told the Israelites, ‘God will send you a prophet like me from your own people.’ He was in the assembly in the desert, with the angel who spoke to him on Mount Sinai, and with our fathers; and he received living words to pass on to us.”**

It was an angel that appeared to Moses in the burning bush: Acts 7:30-31, *“After forty years had passed, an angel appeared to Moses in the flames of a burning bush in the desert near Mount Sinai.”*

It was through an angel that God spoke to Moses and delivered the ten commandments.

**Galatians 3:19- The law was put into effect through angels by a mediator.**

It was an angel that protected them from Pharaoh's army at the Red Sea.

**Exodus 14:19**

**Then the angel of God, who had been traveling in front of Israel's army, withdrew and went behind them.**

It was an angel that protected them as they journeyed to the Promised Land- a land flowing with milk and honey!

**Exodus 23:20-22**

**See, I am sending an angel ahead of you to guard you along the way and to bring you to the place I have prepared. Pay attention to him and listen to what he says. Do not rebel against him; he will not forgive your rebellion, since my Name is in him.**

1. Pharaoh takes the Bait

What is incredible at this point is that God is not done with Pharaoh yet. The king of Egypt gets lured into a trap by God Himself! Pharaoh's army according to Josephus was 50,000 horsemen and 200,000 footmen. Now the Lord was going to finish them off once and for all.

**Exodus 14:1-4**

**Then the LORD said to Moses, "Tell the Israelites to turn back and encamp near Pi Hahiroth, between Migdol and the sea. They are to encamp by the sea, directly opposite Baal Zephon. Pharaoh will think, 'The Israelites are wandering around the land in confusion, hemmed in by the desert.' And I will harden Pharaoh's heart, and he will pursue them. But I will gain glory for myself through Pharaoh and all his army, and the Egyptians will know that I am the LORD." So the Israelites did this.**

What was sad about the Israelites is that for most of them, even though God got them out of Egypt, it seemed impossible to get Egypt out of them. When Pharaoh and his army approached the Israelite camp, they began to panic and give into fear and doubt. Yet you might say that was a natural reaction, but what about the mighty deliverance that just took place and the pillar of cloud by day and fire by night?

**Exodus 14:10-12**

**As Pharaoh approached, the Israelites looked up, and there were the Egyptians, marching after them. They were terrified and cried out to the LORD. They said to Moses, "Was it because there were no graves in Egypt that you brought us to the desert to die? What have you done to us by bringing us out of Egypt? Didn't we say to you in Egypt, 'Leave us alone; let us serve the Egyptians'? It would have been better for us to serve the Egyptians than to die in the desert!"**

Yet like so many times that Moses would have to still the people, he tried to get their focus on God as their deliverer and have faith in Him!

**Exodus 14:13-14**

**Moses answered the people, "Do not be afraid. Stand firm and you will see the deliverance the LORD will bring you today. The Egyptians you see today you will never see again. The LORD will fight for you; **you need only to be still.**"**

The Pentateuch

I love God's response at this moment- Exodus 14:15, "Then the LORD said to Moses, 'Why are you crying out to me? Tell the Israelites to move on.'" I believe this scripture gives us some insight that God is not too fond of His people whining, complaining and being in despair. Unfortunately, this habit of the Israelites brings God close to exterminating them on many occasions, if it was not for Moses' intercession for them- also read Mark 9:21-27, "'If you can?' said Jesus. 'Everything is possible for him who believes.'"

God provides a protective barrier between the children of Israel and the Egyptians. This alone should have scared off Pharaoh, but his heart was so hard with pride! Perhaps he was thinking, "Better to die in battle with God than to live in shame." It would have to be extreme hardness of heart and stubbornness on the part of man to fight God under these circumstances.

#### **Exodus 14:19-20**

**Then the angel of God, who had been traveling in front of Israel's army, withdrew and went behind them. The pillar of cloud also moved from in front and stood behind them, coming between the armies of Egypt and Israel. Throughout the night the cloud brought darkness to the one side and light to the other side; so neither went near the other all night long.**

**Then Moses stretched out his hand over the sea, and all that night the LORD drove the sea back with a strong east wind and turned it into dry land. The waters were divided, and the Israelites went through the sea on dry ground, with a wall of water on their right and on their left.**

**Exodus 14:21-22**



Now the bottom of the Red Sea was actually made dry. At the place where Israel crossed, it was about 12 miles wide, and from 75 to 100 feet deep. Imagine a wide path with walls of water suspended by the hand of God on either side 75 to 100 feet high- now that is a MIRACLE of God! The next portion of Scripture is just classic, the Egyptians follow them into the sea between the divided waters, I wonder what was going through their minds? God had a little surprise for them, He threw the Egyptians into confusion...

#### **Exodus 14:23-25**

**The Egyptians pursued them, and all Pharaoh's horses and chariots and horsemen followed them into the sea. During the last watch of the night the LORD looked down from the pillar of fire and cloud at the Egyptian army and threw it into confusion. He made the wheels of their chariots come off so that they had difficulty driving. And the Egyptians said, "Let's get away from the Israelites! The LORD is fighting for them against Egypt."**

The Lord was fighting against Egypt because of the covenant He had made with Abraham, Isaac and Jacob and God was honoring it- there was no other reason. This covenant bound God by His own Word to defend Israel (in spite of their unbelief) and fulfill His promises to Abraham, to preserve his lineage and bring the promised Savior to the world- Jesus Christ! Since we are now in covenant with God through faith in Jesus, we also have a host of promises that God will protect us- there are too numerous to mention now in the Old and New Covenants, but here are a few.

**Psalms 32:7; 56:4**

**You are my hiding place; you will protect me from trouble and surround me with songs of deliverance. In God, whose word I praise, in God I trust; I will not be afraid. What can mortal man do to me?**

**2 Timothy 4:18**

**The Lord will rescue me from every evil attack and will bring me safely to his heavenly kingdom. To him be glory forever and ever. Amen.**

**1 John 5:18**

**We know that anyone born of God does not continue to sin; the one who was born of God keeps him safe, and the evil one cannot harm him.**

As long as we have faith in God and the New Covenant, we can rest secure in the hands of Almighty God! Once all the Israelites made it across the other side, the Lord instructed Moses to stretch out his hand over the sea so that the waters would once again be joined and destroy Pharaoh and his army once and for all!

**Exodus 14:26-31**

**Then the LORD said to Moses, “Stretch out your hand over the sea so that the waters may flow back over the Egyptians and their chariots and horsemen.” Moses stretched out his hand over the sea, and at daybreak the sea went back to its place. The Egyptians were fleeing toward it, and the LORD swept them into the sea. The water flowed back and covered the chariots and horsemen — the entire army of Pharaoh that had followed the Israelites into the sea. Not one of them survived. But the Israelites went through the sea on dry ground, with a wall of water on their right and on their left. That day the LORD saved Israel from the hands of the Egyptians, and Israel saw the Egyptians lying dead on the shore. And when the Israelites saw the great power the LORD displayed against the Egyptians, the people feared the LORD and put their trust in him and in Moses his servant.**



There is an important type here that took place when the people of Israel crossed the red sea. It was their rite of passage out of Egypt (type of the “world system, the place of bondage to sin”) through the Red sea (type of “New birth, salvation and water baptism”) on their way to their Promised Land (type of “Baptism in the Holy Spirit, glorious inheritance and promises of God in Christ”). The Promised Land is not a Type of heaven; as there are no battles to be fought in heaven, as there are for the believer today; the good fight of faith, taking God at His Word and taking claim of his/her glorious redemption in Jesus.

**Hebrews 11:29**

**By faith the people passed through the Red Sea as on dry land; but when the Egyptians tried to do so, they were drowned.**

## 1 Corinthians 10:1-2

For I do not want you to be ignorant of the fact, brothers, that our forefathers were all under the cloud and that they all passed through the sea. They were all baptized into Moses in the cloud and in the sea.



Then Miriam the prophetess, Aaron's sister, took a tambourine in her hand, and all the women followed her, with tambourines and dancing. Miriam sang to them:

“Sing to the LORD,  
for he is highly exalted.  
The horse and its rider  
he has hurled into the sea.”

Exodus 15:20-21

## E. The Law

### 1. Mount Sinai

Next Moses led the Israelites through the towering mountains into the wilderness of Sinai, and they encamped on an extensive plain at the base of the “mount of God.” This was the birthplace of the Hebrew nation. The peninsula is shaped like a triangle, and is an area of great contrasts. It appears to hang from the southeast corner of the Mediterranean Sea with its base serving as the land bridge between Egypt and Israel. The peninsula is bounded on the west by the Gulf of Suez and on the east by the Gulf of Aqaba.

The Sinai peninsula is about 240 kilometers (150 miles) wide at the northern end and about 400 kilometers (250 miles) long. Its land area is wilderness and a tableland rising to about 762 meters (2,500 feet). On the north, the Sinai plateau slopes away to the Mediterranean Sea. Near the south end of the peninsula, a series of granite mountains rise 1,209 to 2,743 meters (4,000 to 9,000 feet) high, in striking contrast to the surrounding wastelands. Mount Sinai stands in the center of the peninsula which lies between the two horns of the Red Sea. It is a wedge shaped mass of granite and porphyry plutonic rocks, rising almost 9,000 ft. above the sea.

When Bible refers to the Wilderness in Exodus 19:1, that “*in the third month after the children of Israel had gone out of the land of Egypt, on the same day, they came to the Wilderness of Sinai.*” This phrase may refer only to the particular wilderness which lies at the foot of Mount Sinai and in which the Israelites pitched their camp. But the phrase may also refer in a broader sense to the entire wilderness area of the Sinai Peninsula.

If this is the case, it would include the Wilderness of Sin, through which the Israelites passed between Elim and Mount Sinai (Exodus 16:1); the Wilderness of Paran, in the central Sinaitic Peninsula (Numbers 10:12); the Wilderness of Shur, east of Egypt in the northern Sinai (Genesis 16:7); and the Wilderness of Zin, close to the border of Canaan (Numbers 13:21).

Moses shares with the people of Israel what the Lord had said and they accepted His calling for them, Exodus 19:8, *“The people all responded together, ‘We will do everything the LORD has said.’ So Moses brought their answer back to the LORD.”*

Next, the Lord provides instructions in preparation for the people to hear God’s voice for the first time, all 2 million plus of them. According to the Lord’s word, Moses put a perimeter around the base of the mountain that no person or animal could cross; otherwise they would be stoned to death or pierced with arrows- Exodus 19:12-13; 20-25. Even though the people had consecrated themselves, in order to present themselves before the Lord, sin kept them from coming close to God. As we will learn, the Old Covenant had strict regulations that had to be followed to prevent judgment from occurring and terminating folks lives.

### **Hebrews 12:18-29**

**You have not come to a mountain that can be touched and that is burning with fire; to darkness, gloom and storm; to a trumpet blast or to such a voice speaking words that those who heard it begged that no further word be spoken to them, because they could not bear what was commanded: “If even an animal touches the mountain, it must be stoned.” The sight was so terrifying that Moses said, “I am trembling with fear.” But you have come to Mount Zion, to the heavenly Jerusalem, the city of the living God. You have come to thousands upon thousands of angels in joyful assembly, to the church of the firstborn, whose names are written in heaven.**

**You have come to God, the judge of all men, to the spirits of righteous men made perfect, to Jesus the mediator of a new covenant, and to the sprinkled blood that speaks a better word than the blood of Abel. See to it that you do not refuse him who speaks. If they did not escape when they refused him who warned them on earth, how much less will we, if we turn away from him who warns us from heaven?**

**At that time his voice shook the earth, but now he has promised, “Once more I will shake not only the earth but also the heavens.” The words “once more” indicate the removing of what can be shaken-that is, created things- so that what cannot be shaken may remain. Therefore, since we are receiving a kingdom that cannot be shaken, let us be thankful, and so worship God acceptably with reverence and awe, for our “God is a consuming fire.”**

However, we live under a New and Superior Covenant that allows us to approach God, since the blood of Jesus has forever eradicated our sin. God’s judgment for our sins was placed upon Jesus, so we can come into God’s presence with freedom and confidence, without guilt or condemnation- Hallelujah!

### **Ephesians 3:12**

**In Jesus and through faith in Him we may approach God with freedom and confidence.**

### **Hebrews 4:16**

**Let us then approach the throne of grace with confidence, so that we may receive mercy and find grace to help us in our time of need.**

## 2. The Ten Commandments

Greek- deka, “Ten” Logos, “Word”

The Decalogue (from the Greek, “10 words” or “10 sayings”) given to Moses at Mt. Sinai was a moral code of 10 commandments written on two tables of stone. In Hebrew the name is “Ten Commandments” (Exodus 34:28; Deuteronomy 4:13; 10:4). It is also called “the moral law,” “the two tablets of the testimony” (Exodus 34:29), “the tablets of the covenant” (Deuteronomy 9:9), and “His covenant” (Deuteronomy 4:13). In the New Covenant it is called “the commandments”, (Matthew 19:17; Romans 13:9) and “the Law” (1 Timothy 1:7-10).

There are two versions of the Ten Commandments given in the Pentateuch. The first is contained in Exodus 20, the second in Deuteronomy 5. These are substantially and almost verbally identical, there is only a slight difference in wording as it pertains to keeping the Sabbath, the difference is really inconsequential.

It is commonly supposed that the first four commandments were written on one tablet and the last six on the other. Thus, the first tablet set forth the duties of a holy people to a holy God; and the second asserted the ethical duties of man to his neighbor. The commandments, as arranged on the two tablets, may be summarized as follows:

- |                                                        |                                      |
|--------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. You shall have no other gods before Me.             | 5. Honor your father and your mother |
| 2. You shall not make unto yourself any graven image.  | 6. You shall not murder.             |
| 3. You shall not misuse the name of the Lord your God. | 7. You shall not commit adultery     |
| 4. Remember the Sabbath day to keep it holy.           | 8. You shall not steal               |
|                                                        | 9. You shall not bear false witness  |
|                                                        | 10. You shall not covet              |

Although God gave the Ten Commandments to His people through Moses at Mount Sinai more than 3,000 years ago, they are still relevant today. They have an abiding significance, for God’s character is unchangeable. These laws originate from God and from His eternal character; therefore, their moral value cannot change. The world desperately needs to see the name and character of God displayed in the lives of Christians who still take His Word seriously. These Commandments, particularly coupled with the teachings of Jesus, are still the best guidelines for practical daily living known to man.

### **1. “You shall have no other gods before Me” (Exodus 20:3)**

Since God’s character forms the basis of the covenant with His people. He demands absolute loyalty. And when the intent of the heart is to put God first, a person’s outward actions will reveal it. Then others will see what God’s character is like through the actions of His people. The Scriptures state that God is a jealous God, and He will not share His glory with another- Deuteronomy 4:23-24; Isaiah 42:8.

### **2. “You shall not make for yourself a carved image” (Exodus 20:4)**

The second commandment is necessary because people do not always keep the first. The Israelites made a golden calf to worship even as the Lord gave the laws to Moses. Since Israel had so many contacts with people who did worship images, including replicas of their earthly rulers, God gave them this law. God has never been a tangible, visible Being (Deuteronomy 4:12), but always a Spirit (John 4:24). It requires faith to serve God, but He rewards those who diligently seek Him according to Hebrews 11:6.

### **3. “You shall not take the name of the Lord your God in vain” (Exodus 20:7)**

God’s name and His character are inseparable. Using His holy name lightly in a vain, empty manner is insulting and degrading. This could be done by perjuring oneself in a court of law or by cursing. However, this commandment also applies to hypocritical worship, using God’s Name in meaningless prayer and praise (Isaiah 29:13). Sad that Hollywood has no clue in this area when they make their films, so unnecessary and pointless to constantly use the Lord’s Name in vain.

### **4. “Remember the Sabbath day, to keep it holy” (Exodus 20:8)**

Sabbath means “rest,” but God intended for this day to stand for more than an absence of work. It was to be a day of worship as well, a day for setting aside all thoughts of materialistic gain and thinking about Him. God Himself set the pattern by ceasing from His labors after creating the world. Why, then, must modern-day Christians feel that being busy is equated with being spiritual? Our culture drives us to a point where we are too busy for God or worn out when we do have a little time.

### **5. “Honor your father and your mother, that your days may be long upon the land” (Ex. 20:12)**

God established parents as the authority figures in the family unit. Children often get their first impressions about God from their parents. Parents who walk in the Spirit, honestly desiring to follow the guidelines of the Scriptures, will set better examples for their children. And children who want to please God will respect their parents, regardless of pressure from the world and their peers. Children learn submission and authority principles from parents, a rebellious nature will not live long on the earth.

### **6. “You shall not murder” (Exodus 20:13)**

Commandments six through nine pertain to our relationships with one another. The breakdown of these guidelines has plunged many civilizations into decay. A person who cares about others, beginning with those in the home, does not want to harm them. This law reveals God’s attitude toward people created in His image. No one has the right to take that life from another with evil intent- Genesis 9:5-6! This also applies to taking life inside the womb as it does outside.

### **7. “You shall not commit adultery” (Exodus 20:14)**

Technically, this commandment refers to being sexually involved with a married person; but it is traditionally used to prohibit all sexual relationships outside of marriage. Again, this commandment involves a right relationship with God and with others. Adultery is possible only if people are prepared to hurt others, to enjoy themselves at the expense of other people- a very selfish act, there is no love in it. A right attitude toward keeping God first and not harming others is tied together in these commandments. A person who does not steal will not take another’s mate. And he does not allow covetous thoughts to grow in his mind. He wants God to have his total allegiance.

### **8. “You shall not steal” (Exodus 20:15)**

Stealing involves taking something that does not belong to you. This could be another’s life, marriage partner, or reputation. This law also emphasizes the importance of getting all you own through lawful channels. As you can see, the command has broad implications in regards to theft.

### **9. “You shall not bear false witness against your neighbor” (Exodus 20:16)**

A good relationship demands honesty in speaking of another. The old saying, “A man’s word is as good as his name” is sometimes a joke today. But God’s people ought to cherish their own reputations and that of others. If a person is unwilling to speak ill of another, he is less likely to steal from him or to commit murder. Obviously any form of lying, falsehood, exaggerations or intent to deceive is sin- Proverbs 26:18-19; Colossians 3:9.

### **10. “You shall not covet” (Exodus 20:17)**

Jesus elaborated on this commandment by stating, “You shall love your neighbor as yourself” (Matthew 22:39). The negative and the positive work together. You do not harm people you care about. This tenth commandment is an outgrowth of the first. If a person’s heart is fixed on the Lord, he will have the right attitude toward others. Consequently, the desires that rise from his heart will not cause pain or loss to others. The right motive (pleasing God who is first in your life) will result in obeying the other commandments (not hurting others). Jesus enlarged on the idea prevalent in the Ten Commandments by emphasizing the heart attitude: “Blessed are the pure in heart, for they shall see God” in Matthew 5:8.

The ten great words; the Law is perfect- Psalm 19:7-11. Ten being considered the most perfect of numbers.

About 1,300 years after God gave the Law, Jesus upheld them perfectly; calling them the “commandments” and listing five of them for the rich young ruler in Matthew 19:16-22. And in the Sermon on the Mount, Jesus showed that His coming had not canceled the Commandments. He specifically mentioned the laws against murder (Matthew 5:21) and committing adultery (Matthew 5:27).

### **Matthew 5:27-28**

**“You have heard that it was said, ‘Do not commit adultery.’ But I tell you that anyone who looks at a woman lustfully has already committed adultery with her in his heart.”**

Jesus made the same distinction between the duties to God and duties to man when He summarized the commandments- Deuteronomy 6:5 and Leviticus 19:18.

### **Matthew 22:37-40**

**“Jesus replied: ‘Love the Lord your God with all your heart and with all your soul and with all your mind.’ This is the first and greatest commandment. And the second is like it: ‘Love your neighbor as yourself.’ All the Law and the Prophets hang on these two commandments.”**

Jesus actually placed these laws on a higher plane by demanding that the spirit as well as the legal aspects of the law be kept. Jesus placed His eternal stamp of approval on the law by declaring, “*Do not think that I came to destroy the Law or the Prophets. I did not come to destroy but to fulfill*” in Matthew 5:17-19. Jesus took the law from external observance to a matter of the heart in preparation for the New Covenant.

### **Hebrews 8:10-13**

**This is the covenant I will make with the house of Israel after that time, declares the Lord. I will put my laws in their minds and write them on their hearts. I will be their God, and they will be my people. No longer will a man teach his neighbor, or a man his brother, saying, ‘Know the Lord,’ because they will all know me, from the least of them to the greatest. For I will forgive their wickedness and will remember their sins no more.” By calling this covenant “new,” he has made the first one obsolete; and what is obsolete and aging will soon disappear.**

Even for those who do not hear the gospel message, God uses His universal Law that is inherently and instinctively written upon the conscience of every human being as the standard for judgment.

### **Romans 2:12-16**

**All who sin apart from the law will also perish apart from the law, and all who sin under the law will be judged by the law. For it is not those who hear the law who are righteous in God's sight, but it is those who obey the law who will be declared righteous. 14(Indeed, when Gentiles, who do not have the law, do by nature things required by the law, they are a law for themselves, even though they do not have the law, since they show that the requirements of the law are written on their hearts, their consciences also bearing witness, and their thoughts now accusing, now even defending them.) This will take place on the day when God will judge men's secrets through Jesus Christ, as my gospel declares.**

### **3. The Mosaic Law**

The Ten Commandments are a statement of the terms of the covenant God made with His chosen people; and in this respect they are to be distinguished from the elaborate system of law known as the Mosaic. The vast legal system of Israel's civil, criminal, judicial, and ecclesiastical systems were framed after the covenant law- not with a view of expanding it, but to enforce it. The elaborate system was designed as an educator, to lead the people into the great principles of life embodied in the Ten Commandments and afterward exhibited in Jesus. The Mosaic law was only a temporary expediency to achieve a given end, whereas the Ten Commandments are a statement of principles to continue for all time.

This unique place of the Ten Commandments is seen in the circumstance of their delivery. The rest of the law was given by God through the lips of Moses, but these were spoken by God Himself and with an awful display of splendor and solemnity never before witnessed- Exodus 19. It appears also that angels were active in the proclamation of the law ("holy ones," Deuteronomy 33:2-3; "angels," Acts 7:53; Galatians 3:19; Hebrews 2:2). In addition, these laws were written by God's own finger, and on durable tablets of stone (Deuteronomy 9:11). In the symbolism of the East, the stone signified the perpetuity of the law written upon it. Written on both sides, it meant the completeness of the code.

Still another fact marks the unique place of the Ten Commandments. The tablets of stone were put in the most sacred place in the world- in the Tabernacle, in the "holy of holies," in the Ark of the Covenant. Thus they were plainly recognized as containing in themselves the sum and substance of what was held to be strictly required by the covenant.

### **Romans 2:17-24**

**Now you, if you call yourself a Jew; if you rely on the law and brag about your relationship to God; if you know his will and approve of what is superior because you are instructed by the law; if you are convinced that you are a guide for the blind, a light for those who are in the dark, an instructor of the foolish, a teacher of infants, because you have **in the law the embodiment of knowledge and truth**- you, then, who teach others, do you not teach yourself? You who preach against stealing, do you steal? You who say that people should not commit adultery, do you commit adultery? You who abhor idols, do you rob temples? You who brag about the law, do you dishonor God by breaking the law? As it is written: "God's name is blasphemed among the Gentiles because of you."**

### **Acts 7:37-38**

**"This is that Moses who told the Israelites, 'God will send you a prophet like me from your own people.' He was in the assembly in the desert, with the angel who spoke to him on Mount Sinai, and with our fathers; and **he received living words to pass on to us.**"**

In regards to the Ten Commandments containing the essential principles of the moral law, and are therefore of permanent obligation, is affirmed in the New Covenant- Jesus held the Ten Commandments up as the perfect code. When the young man asked Him the way of attaining eternal life, Jesus quoted from the Ten Commandments and told him to obey them and live (Mark 10:19; Luke 18:18-20). And again, after assenting to the two features of the Ten Commandments as the very essence of the law, He said, *“Do this, and you will live”* (Luke 10:28; Matthew 19:17).

In His dispute with the Pharisees the chief point at issue was this: They exalted the minor law, the ceremonial observance, and threw the duties in the Ten Commandments in the background; Jesus brought the Ten Commandments forward and gave them their true place. So did the apostles in Romans 13:9. In the protracted discussion concerning the law, all Paul’s examples are taken from these tablets or from what they clearly forbade or required.

The foundation and source of the moral law is God’s character. *“I am the Lord your God, who brought you out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of slavery”* is the way the Ten Commandments are introduced. The Hebrew name here used (Everlasting Eternal Almighty) intimates that the principles of Law have their standing in the character of God. *“I am . . . you shall.”* That is the connection. And that is what makes the moral law so awful in its unchangeable majesty. It is law because God is. It cannot be changed without changing the character of Jehovah Himself. Right is what it is, because God is what He is, and therefore it is as unchangeable as God. Remember, Jesus came not to abolish but to fulfill the Law in Matthew 5:17, by living the perfect life. The Law of the New Covenant is “Agape Love”, God is love and God’s Law is fulfilled in our lives when we walk in the God kind of love in the New Covenant, by the Spirit and not in our own strength.

#### **John 13:34-35**

**“A new command I give you: Love one another. As I have loved you, so you must love one another. By this all men will know that you are my disciples, if you love one another.”**

#### **John 15:12-14**

**My command is this: Love each other as I have loved you. Greater love has no one than this, that he lay down his life for his friends. You are my friends if you do what I command.**

#### **Romans 13:8-10**

**Let no debt remain outstanding, except the continuing debt to love one another, for he who loves his fellowman has fulfilled the law. The commandments, “Do not commit adultery,” “Do not murder,” “Do not steal,” “Do not covet,” and whatever other commandment there may be, are summed up in this one rule: “Love your neighbor as yourself.” Love does no harm to its neighbor. Therefore love is the fulfillment of the law.**

The fact that God has placed the law of His own character on man is proof that man is capable of the divine. Expressing as it does man’s true nature, to vary from its requirements is to fall below the dignity of true manhood. In this sense the Ten Commandments are, as the Reformers taught, identical with the “eternal law of nature.”

The Ten Commandments are a series of prohibitions. The negative form is due to the shocking depravity of those to whom it was addressed. A prohibition means a disposition to do the thing prohibited. If men were not inclined to worship something other than God, the first commandment would not be needed. If there were no murder in men’s hearts the sixth commandment would not be required. And this is true of all the laws. Paul says, “The law was added because of transgressions” (Galatians 3:19). The law is put in the negative form for another reason: the law can only provide a standard and a consequence to restrain the act. It cannot implant the positive virtue to do right- that is where the New Birth comes in.

By becoming a New Creation according to 2 Corinthians 5:17, the Law is fulfilled in Christ. Statutory law may restrain and regulate actions, but it cannot transform the sinful heart- 1 Timothy 1:8-11.

Thank God for the New Covenant which gives us tremendous understanding as to the role and purpose of the Law; however, let's cover a little background information first. The Law or 10 commandments represents God's absolute standard of right and wrong, black and white. There is no room for negotiation or compromise, it is what it is; either we accept it or reject it. God is a Holy God and a God of justice that demands absolute obedience and the perfect life. Well, we have a problem because mankind is inherently sinful by nature and opposed to God's Holy Law. As a result, God's justice requires punishment for the evil doer, the same justice that condemns Satan, the fallen angels, demons and their rebellion. God cannot judge the devil and let mankind slide, that would make Him unjust which is an impossibility. So what is God to do, He wants to send the host of darkness to the Lake of Fire (Matthew 25:41) and reconcile mankind to Himself (1 Timothy 2:3-4; 2 Peter 3:9). This is where Jesus the lamb of God, slain before the foundations of the world comes in! He alone will be our sin substitute, bearing God's wrath for our sin, appeasing His justice and rescuing us from the power of darkness- Jesus alone is our God and Savior! In this way God's Law is upheld and salvation is afforded for mankind- a true 'Win-Win' accomplishment.

First, we understand that in the Garden of Eden, Adam and Eve were first introduced to a test of obedience that would ratify their free will: to serve God or not, obedience or rebellion, stay in God's camp or join Satan. This was accomplished through the prohibition to not eat from the Tree of the Knowledge of Good and Evil. Unfortunately, you know the rest of the story, and the consequences of that fatal bite that released death into the world through sin.

#### **Romans 5:12-14**

**Therefore, just as sin entered the world through one man, and death through sin, and in this way death came to all men, because all sinned- for before the law was given, sin was in the world. But sin is not taken into account when there is no law. Nevertheless, death reigned from the time of Adam to the time of Moses, even over those who did not sin by breaking a command, as did Adam, who was a pattern of the one to come.**

Thanks to Adam's transgression, his blood was contaminated with a sinful nature that is passed through conception from one human being to another like a 'STD' every human body has been infected by this spiritual disease except for one. Jesus was born of a virgin, since He pre-existed, His blood was free from this sin; as a result, His blood was perfect to pay the ultimate price as our sin sacrifice. Yet the body Jesus lived in was still weak, and He was tempted in all points as we are, yet He did not sin- Hebrews 2:18;4:15. Jesus is our true Savior, Hero and Champion!

#### **Romans 7:5-6**

**For when we were controlled by the sinful nature, the sinful passions aroused by the law were at work in our bodies, so that we bore fruit for death. But now, by dying to what once bound us, we have been released from the law so that we serve in the new way of the Spirit, and not in the old way of the written code.**

#### **Romans 7:21-25**

**So I find this law at work: When I want to do good, evil is right there with me. For in my inner being I delight in God's law; but I see another law at work in the members of my body, waging war against the law of my mind and making me a prisoner of the law of sin at work within my members. What a wretched man I am! Who will rescue me from this body of death? Thanks be to God-through Jesus Christ our Lord! So then, I myself in my mind am a slave to God's law, but in the sinful nature a slave to the law of sin.**

Notice in Romans 5:13, that the Law of God holds sin accountable, provides a punishment for it. The wages of sin is death (Romans 6:23) and we see its effects clearly throughout human history. We brought this tragedy upon ourselves, God is never to blame. We subjected God's creation to the curse of sin, we opened Pandora's box and released hell on earth, committed high treason and gave our dominion to the devil- that is why the world is in such a mess, but it was not that way in the beginning. We created this mess and God is in the process of cleaning it up, we don't deserve it, but He is doing it anyway because of His love, mercy and grace- Romans 5:15-18!

### **Romans 8:20-21**

**For the creation was subjected to frustration, not by its own choice, but by the will of the one who subjected it, in hope that the creation itself will be liberated from its bondage to decay and brought into the glorious freedom of the children of God.**

So every baby born today is already hardwired to sin and selfishness, we are all under sin (Romans 3:9-18). You may say, that is not fair or my fault, but if you or I was in Adam's shoes we would have done the same thing and disobeyed God. Romans chapter six has some wonderful revelation concerning our body of sin and God's provision of grace through Jesus to have the ability now to honor God with our bodies.

### **Romans 5:19-21**

**For just as through the disobedience of the one man the many were made sinners, so also through the obedience of the one man the many will be made righteous. The law was added so that the trespass might increase. But where sin increased, grace increased all the more, so that, just as sin reigned in death, so also grace might reign through righteousness to bring eternal life through Jesus Christ our Lord.**

### **1 Corinthians 15:56-57**

**The sting of death is sin, and the power of sin is the law. But thanks be to God! He gives us the victory through our Lord Jesus Christ.**

**Romans 4:15- because law brings wrath. And where there is no law there is no transgression.**

So now we understand man's dilemma and God's solution, let's look at the purpose of the Law. God's law holds all mankind accountable. One big reason for the Law is that it identifies what sin is for us.

### **Romans 3:19-20**

**Now we know that whatever the law says, it says to those who are under the law, so that every mouth may be silenced and the whole world held accountable to God. Therefore no one will be declared righteous in his sight by observing the law; rather, through the law we become conscious of sin.**

### **Romans 7:7-8**

**What shall we say, then? Is the law sin? Certainly not! Indeed I would not have known what sin was except through the law. For I would not have known what coveting really was if the law had not said, "Do not covet." But sin, seizing the opportunity afforded by the commandment, produced in me every kind of covetous desire. For apart from law, sin is dead.**

There is a concept referred to as, "The age of accountability" that holds human beings accountable for sin when they are old enough to choose for themselves, right from wrong. I believe there is no set age, but rather awareness of sin and the ability to make a choice is the pre-requisite. At that point, whatever age that revelation comes to a person, an individual will choose to break one of these 10 commandments and he/she at that moment dies spiritually- the forbidden fruit has been eaten all over again.

If they were to die physically prior to being aware of sin, he/she would have gone to heaven, but not now. When that first conscious sin is made, he/she is now accountable for their actions in the sight of God- death enters into their spirit and they take on the spiritual nature of Satan and become his child.

### **Romans 7:9-13**

**Once I was alive apart from law; but when the commandment came, sin sprang to life and I died. I found that the very commandment that was intended to bring life actually brought death. For sin, seizing the opportunity afforded by the commandment, deceived me, and through the commandment put me to death. So then, the law is holy, and the commandment is holy, righteous and good. Did that which is good, then, become death to me? By no means! But in order that sin might be recognized as sin, it produced death in me through what was good, so that through the commandment sin might become utterly sinful.**

### **1 John 3:10**

**This is how we know who the children of God are and who the children of the devil are: Anyone who does not do what is right is not a child of God; nor is anyone who does not love his brother.**

### **1 John 5:19**

**We know that we are children of God, and that the whole world is under the control of the evil one.**

### **Galatians 3:22**

**But the Scripture declares that the whole world is a prisoner of sin...**

While we live on this earth at this time as born again believers in Jesus Christ, there will be this constant battle to keep our bodies under control, it will always gravitate towards evil. Even though our spiritual nature has been re-created with the life and nature of God, our minds need to be renewed and reprogrammed with God's Word. It's God's will that we bring our bodies under subjection and use them for His glory by His grace and our faith in God's Word- 1 Thessalonians 4:1-8.

## **4. The Purpose of the Law**

The purpose of the Law was to frustrate us, God's perfect standard was unattainable in our own strength, devices or pursuits. We simply cannot live the perfect life in motive, thought and action that God requires. The Law reveals our awful dilemma, doomed to destruction as the devil and his crowd is, but in the midst of this despair, God revealed His answer, a Savior- Galatians 4:21-29; Acts 28:23-24.

### **Luke 2:10-12**

**But the angel said to them, "Do not be afraid. I bring you good news of great joy that will be for all the people. Today in the town of David a Savior has been born to you; he is Christ the Lord. This will be a sign to you: You will find a baby wrapped in cloths and lying in a manger."**

### **Romans 3:21-24**

**But now a righteousness from God, apart from law, has been made known, to which the Law and the Prophets testify. This righteousness from God comes through faith in Jesus Christ to all who believe. There is no difference, for all have sinned and fall short of the glory of God, and are justified freely by his grace through the redemption that came by Christ Jesus.**

The law is impossible to be kept perfectly because of our sinful human nature, as was just explained, we are all born into sin because of Adam's transgression. The Law is strict in the extreme, Hebrews 10:28 "Anyone who rejected the law of Moses died without mercy on the testimony of two or three witnesses."

In 2 Corinthians 3:6 it goes on to say, *“for the letter kills, but the Spirit gives life”* - Hebrews 2:1-4. The Law was a means to an end under the Old Covenant, even though it represents God’s eternal Holy nature; it was never meant for mankind to uphold apart from God’s Grace. From birth, we were setup for failure, so now man is looking for a savior- either religion, science, or himself! For us, Jesus is the only Way, the only Truth and the only Life! The following passage of Scripture in Galatians says it all! God had given Abraham a promise that he believed by faith that God would solve the sin problem.

### **Galatians 3:17-25**

**What I mean is this: The law, introduced 430 years later, does not set aside the covenant previously established by God and thus do away with the promise. For if the inheritance depends on the law, then it no longer depends on a promise; but God in his grace gave it to Abraham through a promise. What, then, was the purpose of the law? It was added because of transgressions until the Seed to whom the promise referred had come. The law was put into effect through angels by a mediator. A mediator, however, does not represent just one party; but God is one. Is the law, therefore, opposed to the promises of God? Absolutely not! For if a law had been given that could impart life, then righteousness would certainly have come by the law. But the Scripture declares that the whole world is a prisoner of sin, so that what was promised, being given through faith in Jesus Christ, might be given to those who believe. Before this faith came, we were held prisoners by the law, locked up until faith should be revealed. **So the law was put in charge to lead us to Christ that we might be justified by faith.** Now that faith has come, we are no longer under the supervision of the law.**

It was a gift of God’s grace not by works that brings salvation! There are so many Scriptures that support this truth that it’s undeniable, but that is what all the religions of the world are all about; trying to earn their way into heaven. The falsity of the presumption that my good works will somehow outweigh my bad works; making me acceptable in God’s sight is just flat wrong! The Scriptures declare that just one sin, dooms a person to eternal perdition. We cannot recall the punishment of our sin as much as a murderer can pardon himself by being a good person for the rest of his life- when we commit the crime, we have to do the time. Unless we are able to find a willing substitute to take our place; one who has never committed a sin- that would be JESUS! I owed a debt I could not pay, He paid a debt He did not owe; we all need a Savior, Jesus Christ to save us from our sins and the penalty of sin- death!

### **James 2:8-11**

**If you really keep the royal law found in Scripture, “Love your neighbor as yourself,” you are doing right. But if you show favoritism, you sin and are convicted by the law as lawbreakers. For whoever keeps the whole law and yet stumbles at just one point is guilty of breaking all of it. For he who said, “Do not commit adultery,” also said, “Do not murder.” If you do not commit adultery but do commit murder, you have become a lawbreaker.**

### **Galatians 2:15-16**

**“We who are Jews by birth and not ‘Gentile sinners’ know that a man is not justified by observing the law, but by faith in Jesus Christ. So we, too, have put our faith in Christ Jesus that we may be justified by faith in Christ and not by observing the law, because by observing the law no one will be justified.”**

### **Galatians 2:18-21**

**If I rebuild what I destroyed, I prove that I am a lawbreaker. For through the law I died to the law so that I might live for God. I have been crucified with Christ and I no longer live, but Christ lives in me. The life I live in the body, I live by faith in the Son of God, who loved me and gave himself for me. I do not set aside the grace of God, for if righteousness could be gained through the law, Christ died for nothing!**

If as Christians, we try to serve God in our own strength or make up our own rules and depart from revelation in Scripture, we are in effect putting ourselves under the curse of the law. This is religion, and it only produces death. Certainly, God wants us to produce good works; God's method is by His grace and through our faith in His Word. Allowing the transforming power of His Word and Spirit to change us, but not by works of our own self-righteousness, trying to earn God's favor through our convenient relative moralism- Deuteronomy 27:26.

### **Galatians 3:1-12**

**You foolish Galatians! Who has bewitched you? Before your very eyes Jesus Christ was clearly portrayed as crucified. I would like to learn just one thing from you: Did you receive the Spirit by observing the law, or by believing what you heard? Are you so foolish? After beginning with the Spirit, are you now trying to attain your goal by human effort? Have you suffered so much for nothing-if it really was for nothing? Does God give you his Spirit and work miracles among you because you observe the law, or because you believe what you heard? Consider Abraham: "He believed God, and it was credited to him as righteousness." Understand, then, that those who believe are children of Abraham. The Scripture foresaw that God would justify the Gentiles by faith, and announced the gospel in advance to Abraham: "All nations will be blessed through you." So those who have faith are blessed along with Abraham, the man of faith. All who rely on observing the law are under a curse, for it is written: "Cursed is everyone who does not continue to do everything written in the Book of the Law." Clearly no one is justified before God by the law, because, "The righteous will live by faith." The law is not based on faith; on the contrary, "The man who does these things will live by them."**

### **Ephesians 2:8-10**

**For it is by grace you have been saved, through faith-and this not from yourselves, it is the gift of God- not by works, so that no one can boast. For we are God's workmanship, created in Christ Jesus to do good works, which God prepared in advance for us to do.**

### **Galatians 5:2-6**

**Mark my words! I, Paul, tell you that if you let yourselves be circumcised, Christ will be of no value to you at all. Again I declare to every man who lets himself be circumcised that he is obligated to obey the whole law. You who are trying to be justified by law have been alienated from Christ; you have fallen away from grace. But by faith we eagerly await through the Spirit the righteousness for which we hope. For in Christ Jesus neither circumcision nor uncircumcision has any value. The only thing that counts is faith expressing itself through love.**

Again I declare to you that the Old Covenant Law was never achievable for humanity apart from God's grace. Through the New Covenant, God's nature is put into us, providing the godly desire within to live for God.

### **1 John 3:4-9**

**Everyone who sins breaks the law; in fact, sin is lawlessness. But you know that he appeared so that he might take away our sins. And in him is no sin. No one who lives in him keeps on sinning. No one who continues to sin has either seen him or known him. Dear children, do not let anyone lead you astray. He who does what is right is righteous, just as he is righteous. He who does what is sinful is of the devil, because the devil has been sinning from the beginning. The reason the Son of God appeared was to destroy the devil's work. No one who is born of God will continue to sin, because God's seed remains in him; he cannot go on sinning, because he has been born of God.**

The Old Covenant failed to bring righteousness to humanity, but it succeeded in leading us to Jesus Christ as our one and only Savior by frustrating us into failure to seek deliverance from God!

### Hebrews 7:18-19

The former regulation is set aside because it was weak and useless (for the law made nothing perfect), and a better hope is introduced, by which we draw near to God.

### Hebrews 8:7-8, 13

For if there had been nothing wrong with that first covenant, no place would have been sought for another. But God found fault with the people... by calling this covenant “new,” he has made the first one obsolete; and what is obsolete and aging will soon disappear.

The Law is only upheld through faith in Jesus Christ, and while we are still in this body of sin, we have the blood of Jesus to purify us from sin and cleanse us from a guilty conscience- 1 John 1:9.

### Romans 3:28, 31

For we maintain that a man is justified by faith apart from observing the law. Do we, then, nullify the law by this faith? Not at all! Rather, we uphold the law.

### Romans 4:4-8

Now when a man works, his wages are not credited to him as a gift, but as an obligation. However, to the man who does not work but trusts God who justifies the wicked, his faith is credited as righteousness. David says the same thing when he speaks of the blessedness of the man to whom God credits righteousness apart from works: “Blessed are they whose transgressions are forgiven, whose sins are covered. Blessed is the man whose sin the Lord will never count against him.”

### The Law of the Covenant

If you remember earlier, we went into great detail concerning the dynamics of a covenant. God had entered into covenant with the people of Israel as a continuation of the covenant He had with Abraham. A covenant if you recall is a binding, life and death agreement between two parties, Moses acted as a mediator between God and Israel- Galatians 3:19, “*The law was put into effect through angels by a mediator.*”



With every covenant there is a blessing and cursing part to it. The Law of the covenant stipulates the requirements or commands that must be kept. When these mandates are kept, the blessings of the covenant are enjoyed, when they are violated, the curses are invoked. God had just given His 10 commandments which represent the Law of this Covenant.

In Deuteronomy Chapter 28 the specifics of the blessings for obedience and curses for disobedience are outlined in great detail. Remember that Satan is the agent through which the curse is administered to the violators of this covenant. Thank God in the New Covenant, Jesus has redeemed us from this curse of the law according to Galatians 3:13.

### **Galatians 3:13-14**

**Christ redeemed us from the curse of the law by becoming a curse for us, for it is written: “Cursed is everyone who is hung on a tree.” He redeemed us in order that the blessing given to Abraham might come to the Gentiles through Christ Jesus, so that by faith we might receive the promise of the Spirit.**

There is a blessing and a curse to the Covenant. When it comes to establishing a covenant, the parties involved, first sit down and negotiate the conditions of the Covenant- what it’s going to be about.

Those are the articles of the Covenant, that is the LAW of that Covenant.

Jesus actually placed these laws on a higher plane by demanding that the spirit as well as the legal aspects of the law be kept.

So now we have a covenant with one another and a law for this covenant. Now we establish a curse associated with the covenant. We would go through all the curses if you do not feed me like you are suppose to or fight for me against an enemy- may you die of the ring worm of the nose if you fail. Now we have a covenant, a Law and a Curse. So we would think twice about breaking that covenant.

In Exodus 20:18, after God had spoken to the people from Mount Sinai, they were understandably terrified, but God had done that by design in order to brand the fear of God into them so they would hopefully be less inclined to sin and violate the covenant.

### **Exodus 20:18-21**

**When the people saw the thunder and lightning and heard the trumpet and saw the mountain in smoke, they trembled with fear. They stayed at a distance and said to Moses, “Speak to us yourself and we will listen. But do not have God speak to us or we will die.” Moses said to the people, “Do not be afraid. God has come to test you, so that the fear of God will be with you to keep you from sinning.” The people remained at a distance, while Moses approached the thick darkness where God was.**

Moses was about to ascend into the Mountain in order to receive from God, the Law of the Covenant inscribed on two stones. The Lord specifically, deliberately warns the children of Israel, to not make an idol of gold or silver. He already knew what was about to take place- the golden calf abomination!

### **Exodus 20:22-23**

**Then the LORD said to Moses, “Tell the Israelites this: ‘You have seen for yourselves that I have spoken to you from heaven: Do not make any gods to be alongside me; do not make for yourselves gods of silver or gods of gold.’”**

An interesting point that is seen in regards to God’s specifications in building an altar for sacrifice in Exodus 20:25-26, *“do not build it with dressed stones, for you will defile it if you use a tool on it.”* I interpret ‘dressed stones’ as a type of man’s effort, works and religion to make things better. Since our self-righteousness is as filthy rags to God (Isaiah 64:6, Hebrew meaning ‘Menstrual cloth’), He wants our sacrifices to Him to be an act of pure obedience to His requirements with no help from us.

The Law of Moses or the Mosaic law, which follows the Decalogue (The Law of the Covenant) in the Exodus account, contains chiefly judicial statutes pertaining to Israel’s new national life, as growing out of the moral requirements of the Decalogue- Exodus 21 – 23:19.

First, Israel's worship should be at an altar which Jehovah would indicate, reducing the temptation to idolatry. Second, the value of human life should be recognized in the administration of justice to all, including slaves, and in retribution in general. There are many other civil and social directives in the Pentateuch that are purely civil in nature seeing that the nation of Israel was originally a theocracy; a nation ruled by God, so God was providing rule of law and national stipulations for conduct. Finally, as an item of ceremonial legislation, three annual feasts were commanded: Unleavened Bread, Firstfruits, and Ingathering. In the Book of Leviticus, others were added, a calendar of Holy Days- Leviticus 23:1-25:55; Deuteronomy 16:1-17.

### **God's Angel to Prepare the Way**

All throughout the Bible, God uses His angels to fulfill His purposes in the earth and accomplish His will. As it pertains to leading the children of Israel to the Promised Land, God uses an angel to do it; through the cloud by day and the pillar of fire by night.

### **Exodus 23:20**

**See, I am sending an angel ahead of you to guard you along the way and to bring you to the place I have prepared.**

Yet, God warns that this angel is not to be trifled with. Obedience is so important in God's Kingdom. There are so many wonderful promises, benefits, privileges and blessings if we just obey God's Word. The Lord warns them not to worship other gods, but to destroy any remnant of them. Likewise, we too must purge out of our lives any remnant of worldly ungodliness.

### **Exodus 23:21-24**

**Pay attention to him and listen to what he says. Do not rebel against him; he will not forgive your rebellion, since my Name is in him. If you listen carefully to what he says and do all that I say, I will be an enemy to your enemies and will oppose those who oppose you. My angel will go ahead of you and bring you into the land of the Amorites, Hittites, Perizzites, Canaanites, Hivites and Jebusites, and I will wipe them out. Do not bow down before their gods or worship them or follow their practices. You must demolish them and break their sacred stones to pieces.**

God provides some wonderful promises for His covenant people, which also pertains to us as well. Remember, according to 2 Corinthians 1:20, "*For no matter how many promises God has made, they are 'Yes' in Christ.*" Through Jesus Christ, we are just as qualified, if not more so through the blood of Jesus to partake of all God's precious promises- READ also Deuteronomy chapter 7.

- 1- God's blessing would be upon our food and water so we would not get sick. That was particularly important back then, since they did not have refrigeration.
- 2- God will prevent any sickness from coming near us and protect women in child bearing. In ancient times, having children was critical to their social order and success.
- 3- Long life, a timeless pursuit of every generation- serving God reaps great results, 1 Timothy 4:8!

### **Exodus 23:25-26**

**Worship the LORD your God, and his blessing will be on your food and water. I will take away sickness from among you, and none will miscarry or be barren in your land. I will give you a full life span.**

In the remainder of Exodus chapter 23, God promises to drive out the current tenants of the Promised Land of that time. Here we see a couple of God's weapons that He uses throughout the Bible to defeat Israel's enemies, "Terror and Confusion"- Joshua 10:10; 1 Samuel 14:20; 2 Chronicles 14:14. The Lord did something special by sending in hornets ahead of them to drive out the Canaanites.

This is to be taken literally, for such insects (large species of wasp) are said to be about an inch long and in mass numbers could route large amounts of people- ancient writers claim that entire tribes were sometimes driven out of a country by them. If they stung in vital spots, it is claimed that four hornets could even kill a horse. So savage were these insects when disturbed; even Egyptian soldiers used hornets as a symbol of their military might.

The Promised Land was a very large area, to be taken over in a process of time- little by little. The land of Canaan stretched from the Jordan River on the east to the Mediterranean Sea on the west. From south to north, it covered the territory between the Sinai Peninsula and the ancient coastal nation of Phoenicia. Much of this territory was dry, mountainous, and rocky, unfit for cultivation. But it also contained many fertile farmlands, particularly in the river valleys and the coastal plains along the sea.

The land of Canaan was ideally situated on the trade routes that stretched from Egypt in the south to Syria and Phoenicia in the north and the ancient Babylonian Empire to the east. This location gave the small region a strategic position in the ancient world.

After the Israelites captured the land of Canaan, they developed a thriving commercial system by trading goods with other nations along these routes. God makes it very clear, to exterminate completely the inhabitants of the land and purge it of all idols, otherwise they would become a snare to them. When we read the account of the children of Israel in the Old Covenant, this very thing happens and ultimately leads to their exile in Babylon. One may wonder why God would destroy the inhabitants of Canaan.

#### **Deuteronomy 9:4-6**

**After the LORD your God has driven them out before you, do not say to yourself, “The LORD has brought me here to take possession of this land because of my righteousness.” No, it is on account of the wickedness of these nations that the LORD is going to drive them out before you. It is not because of your righteousness or your integrity that you are going in to take possession of their land; but on account of the wickedness of these nations, the LORD your God will drive them out before you, to accomplish what he swore to your fathers, to Abraham, Isaac and Jacob. Understand, then, that it is not because of your righteousness that the LORD your God is giving you this good land to possess, for you are a stiff-necked people.**

### 5. The Covenant Confirmed by Blood

When Moses had conferred upon the people all the Lord’s words and laws they responded with one voice, “Everything the LORD has said we will do.” Moses wrote down everything the Lord had said and build an altar at the foot of the mountain- Exodus 24:1-4. Something extremely important was now to take place- sealing God’s covenant with the People of Israel through blood. According to Hebrews 9:18, the first covenant was put into effect through blood.



#### **Hebrews 9:19-22**

**When Moses had proclaimed every commandment of the law to all the people, he took the blood of calves, together with water, scarlet wool and branches of hyssop, and sprinkled the scroll and all the people. He said, “This is the blood of the covenant, which God has commanded you to keep.” In the same way, he sprinkled with the blood both the tabernacle and everything used in its ceremonies. In fact, the law requires that nearly everything be cleansed with blood, and without the shedding of blood there is no forgiveness.**

As you may recall our earlier teaching in this lesson about the importance of blood in God’s economy of things. The universal law of God required payment for sin, a blood sacrifice is the only acceptable way to pay the penalty of sin. Innocent blood had to be shed to redeem a guilty individual.

#### **Exodus 24:5-8**

**Then he sent young Israelite men, and they offered burnt offerings and sacrificed young bulls as fellowship offerings to the LORD. Moses took half of the blood and put it in bowls, and the other half he sprinkled on the altar. Then he took the Book of the Covenant and read it to the people. They responded, “We will do everything the LORD has said; we will obey.” Moses then took the blood, sprinkled it on the people and said, “This is the blood of the covenant that the LORD has made with you in accordance with all these words.”**

Something amazing happens next, we have an account where Moses, Aaron, Nadab and Abihu, along with 70 elders of Israel actually saw the God of Israel and ate and drank with Him- a covenant meal! Since we are made in the image of God, it is not surprising that God has feet and a form like ours.

#### **Exodus 24:9-11**

**Moses and Aaron, Nadab and Abihu, and the seventy elders of Israel went up and saw the God of Israel. Under his feet was something like a pavement made of sapphire, clear as the sky itself. But God did not raise his hand against these leaders of the Israelites; they saw God, and they ate and drank.**

God instructed Moses to come up the mountain alone to receive the 10 commandments on stone tablets with the law and commands of the covenant. Joshua, his aid accompanied Moses up the mountain, but Aaron and the elders remained behind.

#### **Exodus 24:12-18**

**The LORD said to Moses, “Come up to me on the mountain and stay here, and I will give you the tablets of stone, with the law and commands I have written for their instruction.” Then Moses set out with Joshua his aide, and Moses went up on the mountain of God. He said to the elders, “Wait here for us until we come back to you. Aaron and Hur are with you, and anyone involved in a dispute can go to them.” When Moses went up on the mountain, the cloud covered it, 16 and the glory of the LORD settled on Mount Sinai. For six days the cloud covered the mountain, and on the seventh day the LORD called to Moses from within the cloud. To the Israelites the glory of the LORD looked like a consuming fire on top of the mountain. Then Moses entered the cloud as he went on up the mountain. And he stayed on the mountain forty days and forty nights.**

Notice how the glory of God is described, like a cloud and a consuming fire. This supernatural spectacle is reminiscent throughout the Bible. By the Grace of God, Moses fasted while he was on Mount Sinai for those forty days.

In recap we learned how God reconfirmed His covenant with Abraham, promising to come to the earth and cut the covenant through the seed (singular) of Abraham. But first Abraham's descendants would be in bondage for 400 years (Genesis 15: 13-36) in a strange land, Egypt. But this is a blood covenant and God must honor it. He must bring them out of bondage into the land of promise.

How God remembered the covenant is recorded in Exodus 2-3. Exodus 2:23-24 says, "In the course of those many days the king of Egypt died. And the people of Israel groaned under their bondage, and cried out for help, and their cry under bondage came up to God. And God heard their groaning, and God remembered His covenant with Abraham, Isaac and Jacob." (RSV) Later, God miraculously appears to Moses to reveal His plan for deliverance.

### **Exodus 3:6-10**

**Then he said, "I am the God of your father, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac and the God of Jacob." At this, Moses hid his face, because he was afraid to look at God. The LORD said, "I have indeed seen the misery of my people in Egypt. I have heard them crying out because of their slave drivers, and I am concerned about their suffering. So I have come down to rescue them from the hand of the Egyptians and to bring them up out of that land into a good and spacious land, a land flowing with milk and honey — the home of the Canaanites, Hittites, Amorites, Perizzites, Hivites and Jebusites. And now the cry of the Israelites has reached me, and I have seen the way the Egyptians are oppressing them. So now, go. I am sending you to Pharaoh to bring my people the Israelites out of Egypt."**

We see that God had remembered His covenant with Abraham. With a great show of power, He delivers this nation of several million. The final escape brought about by parting the Red Sea for the Hebrews to pass through. When God took the children of Israel to Mount Sinai, and delivered the 10 commandments, it revealed to them how Holy God is and how sinful they were- Jeremiah 17:9

*"The heart is deceitful above all things and beyond cure. Who can understand it?"* Of Course, God never expected the Hebrews to keep these commandments. He knew they couldn't because of that sin nature within them. The commandments were to be a mirror for the people to see how holy He is and how sinful they were and how they desperately needed a Savior! Then when the people see who He really is, they'll fall down before Him in worship, praise and thanksgiving for His great grace to enter into covenant with them.

Unit 10 Review:

God had an interesting response in Exodus 14:15 to the Israelites despairing at the Red Sea- how does that apply to us today?

---

---

---

Explain the following types in the Bible for us today- “Egypt, the Red Sea and the Promised Land.”

---

---

---

Are the 10 commandments that were given some 3,000 years ago still relevant today? Why?

---

---

---

How did Jesus take the 10 commandments to a new level in the Gospels?

---

---

---

What is the difference between the Mosaic Law and the 10 Commandments?

---

---

---

What was the purpose of God introducing the Law?

---

---

---

## F. The Wilderness

The teaching on the “Wilderness” experience of the children of Israel will address the highlights and major events over a 40 year period. I will try to cover the material in sequential order as much as possible. The primary objective of this teaching series is to accomplish what is so eloquently stated in 1 Corinthians 10, *“Now these things occurred as examples to keep us from setting our hearts on evil things as they did.”* God records these events for our benefit as warnings and illustrations for us not to make the mistakes they made. So let’s learn from these historical events as New Covenant believers in Jesus!

### **1 Corinthians 10:1-14**

**For I do not want you to be ignorant of the fact, brothers, that our forefathers were all under the cloud and that they all passed through the sea. They were all baptized into Moses in the cloud and in the sea. They all ate the same spiritual food and drank the same spiritual drink; for they drank from the spiritual rock that accompanied them, and that rock was Christ. Nevertheless, God was not pleased with most of them; their bodies were scattered over the desert.**

**Now these things occurred as examples to keep us from setting our hearts on evil things as they did. Do not be idolaters, as some of them were; as it is written: “The people sat down to eat and drink and got up to indulge in pagan revelry.” We should not commit sexual immorality, as some of them did — and in one day twenty-three thousand of them died. We should not test the Lord, as some of them did — and were killed by snakes. And do not grumble, as some of them did — and were killed by the destroying angel.**

**These things happened to them as examples and were written down as warnings for us, on whom the fulfillment of the ages has come. So, if you think you are standing firm, be careful that you don’t fall! No temptation has seized you except what is common to man. And God is faithful; he will not let you be tempted beyond what you can bear. But when you are tempted, he will also provide a way out so that you can stand up under it. Therefore, my dear friends, flee from idolatry.**

### 1. Establishing Precedence

As we study God’s dealings with the people of Israel in the desert, all these things were written down as warnings for future generations. To put it plainly, the Lord is saying to us today, “Don’t do what they did in those areas!” It may appear that I am giving them a bad rap, ragging on them from my comfortable couch. Admittedly, I would have most likely been just like them. We also need to realize that they were not born again back then so they did not have the Holy Spirit living on the inside of them, helping and empowering them to live for God.

This is one reason why God worked such incredible signs and wonders on their behalf; since He could not influence their hearts and motivate them from the inside out. He had to appeal to their five senses and reveal Himself through outward manifestations and spectacular miracles. Most of them were like Thomas in the gospels in John 20:24-29, they would not believe until they saw it. Yet with all the miracles, you will see that in their hearts they still turned back to Egypt- the past life of bondage rather than embrace God’s Promised Land through faith.

This too is a very important lesson for us today. God performed sensational miracles for the people of Israel, and throughout their history many mighty deliverances as well. Remember the miracle that Jesus performed for the invalid in John 5:1-15, a man without faith turned on Jesus. Even the story of the rich man and Lazarus in Luke chapter 16, who thought that a man raised from the dead would convince his family to repent. Abraham responded by saying in Luke 16:31, *“He said to him, ‘If they do not listen to Moses and the Prophets, they will not be convinced even if someone rises from the dead.’”* Ultimately, signs don’t save people, only faith in God through His Word; signs just make people wonder, get their attention to listen to the gospel message. It’s hearing the message, believing it in the heart and confessed out of the mouth that brings salvation to a person- Romans Chapter 10!

Hebrews 11:6, states, *“And without faith it is impossible to please God, because anyone who comes to him must believe that he exists and that he rewards those who earnestly seek him.”* Regardless of what generation you are from, God looks for faith, people taking God at His Word and believing it in their hearts- that is the only thing that pleases Him and the only thing He honors. Yes, God will act out of mercy and in spite of ourselves, He will bless us as much as He can. However if we want to tap into the mother lode of God’s provision for our life, it’s going to take good ole Bible faith. God is not impressed with whining and crying, He wants us to grow up and be a man and woman of God, a people of faith.

**Luke 18:8- “However, when the Son of Man comes, will he find faith on the earth?”**

Unfortunately, with the children of Israel, what we see from most of them is ungrateful, nearsighted, grumbling, complaining and hard hearts that were full of bitterness. In this way they put the Lord to the test, and if it was not for Moses’ intercession for them, God would have wiped them all out many times.

**Hebrews 3:7-19**

**So, as the Holy Spirit says: “Today, if you hear his voice, do not harden your hearts as you did in the rebellion, during the time of testing in the desert, where your fathers tested and tried me and for forty years saw what I did. That is why I was angry with that generation, and I said, ‘Their hearts are always going astray, and they have not known my ways.’ So I declared on oath in my anger, ‘They shall never enter my rest.”** See to it, brothers, that none of you has a sinful, unbelieving heart that turns away from the living God. **But encourage one another daily, as long as it is called Today, so that none of you may be hardened by sin’s deceitfulness. We have come to share in Christ if we hold firmly till the end the confidence we had at first. As has just been said: “Today, if you hear his voice, do not harden your hearts as you did in the rebellion.”** Who were they who heard and rebelled? Were they not all those Moses led out of Egypt? And with whom was he angry for forty years? Was it not with those who sinned, whose bodies fell in the desert? **And to whom did God swear that they would never enter his rest if not to those who disobeyed? So we see that they were not able to enter, because of their unbelief.**

Note that half the murmuring was for food and water. Other times it was out of jealousy, or they were prompted by bitterness and cowardice.

## 2. The Waters of Marah

Their first test in the desert came after three days of being in the desert they came to a place called Marah (which means bitter) and found the water was bitter. Israel’s response was that they grumbled against Moses, an unfortunate and habitual pattern that would be repeated many times to their own demise. Yet in the New Covenant we are instructed in 1 Thessalonians 5:16-18, *“Be joyful always; pray continually; give thanks in all circumstances, for this is God’s will for you in Christ Jesus.”* We don’t give thanks for the circumstance, but in the circumstance we give God the glory!

### **Exodus 15:25-26 AMP**

**And he cried to the Lord, and the Lord showed him a tree which he cast into the waters, and the waters were made sweet. There [the Lord] made for them a statute and an ordinance, and there He proved them, Saying, If you will diligently hearken to the voice of the Lord your God and will do what is right in His sight, and will listen to and obey His commandments and keep all His statutes, I will put none of the diseases upon you which I brought upon the Egyptians, for I am the Lord Who heals you.**

We are to keep the law of God's Covenant, which for us under the New Covenant is the law of love. For those who lived under the Old Covenant, not only were they to keep the 10 commandments, but all the hundreds of rules and regulations under the Mosaic law as well. We can't expect to receive God's provision and blessing for our lives if we live in sin, give into doubt or are ignorant of God's promises. There are conditions that need to be met, it's not automatic. A life of obedience and faith needs to be maintained in order to receive God's best for our lives!

**John 13:34-35- "A new command I give you: Love one another. As I have loved you, so you must love one another. By this all men will know that you are my disciples, if you love one another."**

### **Romans 13:8-10**

**Let no debt remain outstanding, except the continuing debt to love one another, for he who loves his fellowman has fulfilled the law. The commandments, "Do not commit adultery," "Do not murder," "Do not steal," "Do not covet," and whatever other commandment there may be, are summed up in this one rule: "Love your neighbor as yourself." Love does no harm to its neighbor. Therefore love is the fulfillment of the law.**

Something to consider, God allows the consequences of sin to come upon men through the universal law of sowing and reaping- Galatians 6:7-8. The wages of sin is death according to Romans 6:23. Remember that Adam let death into the world through the original sin in the Garden of Eden.

### **Romans 5:12-14**

**Therefore, just as sin entered the world through one man, and death through sin, and in this way death came to all men, because all sinned- for before the law was given, sin was in the world. But sin is not taken into account when there is no law. Nevertheless, death reigned from the time of Adam to the time of Moses, even over those who did not sin by breaking a command, as did Adam, who was a pattern of the one to come.**

God permits people to reap the consequences of sin when they fail to repent. Satan is the agent through which death and the curse of the law is administered. When God lifts His hand of protection, the enemy comes in and does his work to kill, steal and destroy- John 10:10. It's not God's will that people perish or suffer, but He cannot condone sin- the wages of sin is death. When we study the life of Job, he had opened the door to the devil through fear- Job 3:25. The Bible has a lot to say about fear, to "Fear Not!" Fear is of Satan, God has not given us a spirit of fear (2 Timothy 1:7), but His love casts out all fear (1 John 4:18). The Bible in Ephesians 4:27 tells believers not to allow the devil a foothold or open door in their lives. Satan is the delivery boy of bad things, and they always happen for a reason- to make us a victim. If it ever entered the heart of God to be the afflicter of people than the Garden of Eden would have been a different place before the fall of man. We need to take responsibility for our choices and do our part not to open any doors to the devil and to resist him when he is on the prowl to try to rip us off.

**Hebrews 2:14-15- Since the children have flesh and blood, he too shared in their humanity so that by his death he might destroy him who holds the power of death-that is, the devil- and free those who all their lives were held in slavery by their fear of death.**

I don't have the time to go into great detail here about the theology of "Good God / Bad Devil", but it is essential for Christians to understand the source of good and bad and where it comes from and why. If we believe that God put cancer in our life to teach us something, than we won't be inclined to believe God for healing or resist the cancer; for that matter nor should we take any medicine since it would go against God's will- such logic is flawed and unscriptural. This kind of gross error has resulted in untold, needless and unnecessary suffering. Since faith begins where the will of God is known, we need to be fully convinced from God's Word that God does not change His mind in regards to His will and promises to heal us completely at all times and without exception! If there had been no sin, there would have been no curse. When a New Heaven and New Earth finally comes about there will be no more sickness- perfect wholeness will be universal and absolute (Rev. 21:1-22:6). Until then, while Satan is in this world trying to rob us of healing among other things, that was purchased for us 2,000 years ago, we need to fight the good fight of faith and lay hold of it and keep it! Just because God permits evil and the consequences of sin in the earth does not mean He is the author or condones it- Matthew 7:9-11.

### 3. Manna and Quail

For the 40 years the people of Israel were in the desert, God provided for their every need. God was revealing to them that He was their source; the provider, the supplier, their all in all. Just think, every day God was faithful to give them their daily bread until in Joshua 5:11, the manna stopped the day after they first ate the produce of the Promised Land.

**Exodus 16:1-3- The whole Israelite community set out from Elim and came to the Desert of Sin, which is between Elim and Sinai, on the fifteenth day of the second month after they had come out of Egypt. In the desert the whole community grumbled against Moses and Aaron. The Israelites said to them, "If only we had died by the LORD's hand in Egypt! There we sat around pots of meat and ate all the food we wanted, but you have brought us out into this desert to starve this entire assembly to death."**

Unfortunately, the children of Israel were anything but grateful to God for all He had done for them up to that point. A very important point is made during this event as it pertains to grumbling and complaining against our leaders. Moses declared that they were actually grumbling against the Lord in Exodus 16:6-8- Please also read Hebrews 13:17. The phrase, "you will see the glory of the Lord" in verse 7 as it pertains to God's power being manifest in a miraculous way. These words are used many times in the Bible, but it's referred to first here. The word "Manna" translated in Hebrew is "What is it?"

#### **Exodus 16:4-5**

**Then the LORD said to Moses, "I will rain down bread from heaven for you. The people are to go out each day and gather enough for that day. In this way I will test them and see whether they will follow my instructions. On the sixth day they are to prepare what they bring in, and that is to be twice as much as they gather on the other days."**

#### **Verses 13-15**

**That evening quail came and covered the camp, and in the morning there was a layer of dew around the camp. When the dew was gone, thin flakes like frost on the ground appeared on the desert floor. When the Israelites saw it, they said to each other, "What is it?" For they did not know what it was.**



The people of Israel were instructed to only collect what they needed each morning for the day; they were reassured that it would return again the next morning, but some did not believe it and collected more and kept it over night.

#### **Exodus 16:19-20**

**Then Moses said to them, “No one is to keep any of it until morning.” However, some of them paid no attention to Moses; they kept part of it until morning, but it was full of maggots and began to smell. So Moses was angry with them.**

They were also instructed on the eve of the Sabbath to go ahead and collect twice as much, so they could stay in their tents on the Sabbath and rest according to God’s command. The manna kept for the next day and did not rot, God preserved it.

#### **Exodus 16:27-30**

**Nevertheless, some of the people went out on the seventh day to gather it, but they found none. Then the LORD said to Moses, “How long will you refuse to keep my commands and my instructions? Bear in mind that the LORD has given you the Sabbath; that is why on the sixth day he gives you bread for two days. Everyone is to stay where he is on the seventh day; no one is to go out.” So the people rested on the seventh day.**

#### **Point to self, “Follow God’s instructions”**

The Lord commanded Moses to keep a jar of manna for generations to come as a reminder of how He provided for them all those years- *Hebrews 9:4* “...which had the golden altar of incense and the gold-covered ark of the covenant. This ark contained the gold jar of manna.”

#### **Exodus 16:32-35**

**Moses said, “This is what the LORD has commanded: ‘Take an omer of manna and keep it for the generations to come, so they can see the bread I gave you to eat in the desert when I brought you out of Egypt.’” So Moses said to Aaron, “Take a jar and put an omer of manna in it. Then place it before the LORD to be kept for the generations to come.” As the LORD commanded Moses, Aaron put the manna in front of the Testimony, that it might be kept. The Israelites ate manna forty years, until they came to a land that was settled; they ate manna until they reached the border of Canaan.**

#### **Psalms 78:24-25**

**He rained down manna for the people to eat, he gave them the grain of heaven. Men ate the bread of angels; he sent them all the food they could eat.**

#### **Fire From the Lord**

Let’s take a look in the book of Numbers where the good folks in the wilderness were getting into murmuring and complaining in the desert.

#### **Numbers 11:1-3**

**Now the people complained about their hardships in the hearing of the Lord, and when he heard them his anger was aroused. Then fire from the Lord burned among them and consumed some of the outskirts of the camp. When the people cried out to Moses, he prayed to the Lord and the fire died down. So that place was called Taberah, because fire from the Lord had burned among them.**

When we keep pushing the Lord, whining and crying, we can see with that kind of behavior, His anger gets stirred up. Not to say that God is harsh and insensitive, He is full of compassion and mercy. However, faith pleases God and He wants us to trust Him- in everything give thanks and rejoice!

The New Covenant makes similar admonitions to instruct and warn us to stay clear of complaining. But it is so easy to do though; fuss, fight, gripe and complain- it speaks of ingratitude and unbelief and is sin. In the New Covenant dispensation, God expects more from us since we are born again with better promises.

### **Philippians 2:14-18**

**Do everything without complaining or arguing, so that you may become blameless and pure, children of God without fault in a crooked and depraved generation, in which you shine like stars in the universe as you hold out the word of life — in order that I may boast on the day of Christ that I did not run or labor for nothing. But even if I am being poured out like a drink offering on the sacrifice and service coming from your faith, I am glad and rejoice with all of you. So you too should be glad and rejoice with me.**

### **Another Quail Incident**

Later during the desert travels of the Israelites we see a second incident of wide scale disgust for manna. In Numbers 11:4, the Bible refers to the complainers as “The rabble among them” began to crave other food. The Bible uses the word “Wailing,” with a little imagination you can get the picture, these folks were not happy campers!

### **Numbers 11:4-6**

**The rabble with them began to crave other food, and again the Israelites started wailing and said, “If only we had meat to eat! We remember the fish we ate in Egypt at no cost — also the cucumbers, melons, leeks, onions and garlic. But now we have lost our appetite; we never see anything but this manna!”**

There is a danger for the believer to look back and yearn for what we once had whether it was in the world or even past Christian experiences that were good. The Bible is clear about keeping our attention on God’s plan for the here and now and what He has placed before us. Don’t get me wrong, we can be grateful for God’s faithfulness to us in the past, just don’t live there.

### **Philippians 3:12-15**

**Not that I have already obtained all this, or have already been made perfect, but I press on to take hold of that for which Christ Jesus took hold of me. Brothers, I do not consider myself yet to have taken hold of it. But one thing I do: Forgetting what is behind and straining toward what is ahead, I press on toward the goal to win the prize for which God has called me heavenward in Christ Jesus. All of us who are mature should take such a view of things.**

In Numbers 11:10 it is stated, “*Moses heard the people of every family wailing, each at the entrance to his tent. The Lord became exceedingly angry, and Moses was troubled.*” It is very interesting if you read verse 12-15 Moses vents to God, in other words casting his cares upon the Lord, but he gets very emotional about it, not that I can blame him. We see a wonderful example of God providing delegation for Moses by anointing seventy of Israel’s elders with the Holy Spirit in Numbers 11:16-17.

From Numbers 11:18-20, God rebukes the people for their rejection of Him by saying, “*We were better off in Egypt. Why did we ever leave Egypt.*” It’s as if God was saying in a New York accent, “So you want some meat eh, manna is not good enough for you eh! I’ll give you meat, so much meat that it will come out of your nose”- paraphrase of what God said. I don’t know about you, through the Scriptures I see an interesting side of God- He does not put up with flack, personally I like that about God!

Moses responds with a little doubt himself, not seeing how God could feed 600,000 men on foot, not to mention women and children as well- read verses 21-22. I love the Lord's response to this in verse 23, *"The Lord answered Moses, 'Is the Lord's arm too short? You will now see whether or not what I say will come true for you.'"*

This reminds me of a time in the Gospels when Jesus was about to cast a demon out of a boy in Mark 9:7. Jesus shows the same disdain when men limit the power of God. I don't know about you, but I noticed a little holy sarcasm from Jesus, "If you can" like He was saying, "Are you kidding me, 'If you can!' I am the Alpha and Omega the Almighty God, you have got to be joking!"

#### **Mark 9:21-24**

**Jesus asked the boy's father, "How long has he been like this?" "From childhood," he answered. "It has often thrown him into fire or water to kill him. But if you can do anything, take pity on us and help us." "If you can," said Jesus. "Everything is possible for him who believes." Immediately the boy's father exclaimed, "I do believe; help me overcome my unbelief!"**

How often we limit and disappoint God, when He wants to do something so awesome in our midst to deliver, save and set the captives free. Sure sometimes in His mercy and in spite of our unbelief, He will manifest His power on our behalf, but most of the time like in His own home town not much of anything happens- Matthew 13:58, because of a lack of faith. According to Romans 3:3-4, it's not God's fault when people don't receive; nor should we spiritualize the situation and say that it isn't God's will.

Something really cool is worth mentioning, remember when God put the Holy Spirit upon the seventy elders. Well further in the chapter starting with verse 24, we see the Spirit descend and rested upon them and they prophesied. Yet the Scripture says in verse 25, *"... but they did not do so again."* It reminds me of those believers who get filled with the Spirit and speak in tongues, but never do so again- very sad!

Look in verses 26-29, consider the mature and humble position Moses took. Two of the 70 elders were not present, but were still in the camp. The Spirit of God came upon them and they prophesied, this news was brought to Moses. Joshua wanting to uphold Moses' honor wanted them to be stopped, but look at his reply. Not only was Moses' statement, a testament of his humility, but it was prophetic of God pouring out His Spirit on all people in the New Covenant.

#### **Numbers 11:29**

**But Moses replied, "Are you jealous for my sake? I wish that all the Lord's people were prophets and that the Lord would put his Spirit on them!"**

So we see in Numbers 11:31-35, the Hebrews finally got what they wanted and a little more than they expected. God brought the quail into the camp, about three feet deep and as far as a day's walk in any direction- we are talking millions of birds in a circumference of many miles, WOW! Unfortunately for the main agitators, when as they were taking their first bite, God permitted a severe plague to come in and many people died. God was not against them having this other food, it was the manner in which they went about it. Lesson learned, whining, wailing, complaining and grumbling will not win us brownie points with God. The enemy of our souls loves it when we entertain such folly.

#### **4. Water from the Rock**

##### **Exodus 17:3**

**But the people were thirsty for water there, and they grumbled against Moses. They said, "Why did you bring us up out of Egypt to make us and our children and livestock die of thirst?"**

Water is essential to sustain life, God knows this, and one could reason that if God delivered them from Egypt, surely He will not let them die from thirst. Unfortunately, they complained and quarreled with Moses again. Notice the response Moses gave in Exodus 17:2, *“Why do you quarrel with me? Why do you put the LORD to the test?”* Interesting, so complaining and grumbling about things is a lack of faith, a lack of trusting in God, giving into fear, worrying about the bad things that could happen- doubting God’s ability to take care of us! Notice how many times Jesus made reference to “little faith, small faith, lack of faith, and no faith.” Faith can be measured by the amount of God’s Word we have abiding in our heart, because what is in our heart is what comes out in our actions. There are numerous Scriptures on God’s provision for our lives, meditating (speaking the Word out loud Romans 10:17) on them produces faith, confidence, joy and peace to trust in God for our needs to be met and most importantly, for God’s kingdom to be advanced on the earth!

**Psalms 37:25**

**I was young and now I am old, yet I have never seen the righteous forsaken or their children begging bread.**



**Isaiah 48:21**

**They did not thirst when he led them through the deserts; he made water flow for them from the rock; he split the rock.**

**1 Corinthians 10:3-5**

**They all ate the same spiritual food and drank the same spiritual drink; for they drank from the spiritual rock that accompanied them, and that rock was Christ. Nevertheless, God was not pleased with most of them; their bodies were scattered over the desert.**

Moses cried out to God because the people were about to stone him to death, but God is so faithful! Notice what the Scripture says in the following passage...



**Exodus 17:5-7**

**The LORD answered Moses, “Walk on ahead of the people. Take with you some of the elders of Israel and take in your hand the staff with which you struck the Nile, and go. I will stand there before you by the rock at Horeb. Strike the rock, and water will come out of it for the people to drink.” So Moses did this in the sight of the elders of Israel. And he called the place Massah and Meribah because the Israelites quarreled and because they tested the LORD saying, **“Is the LORD among us or not?”**”**

The audacity to say, “Is the LORD among us or not?” Ouch, that is some nerve to make such an accusation against the Lord after all He had done for them up to that point- warning for us today!

## 5. The Amalekites Defeated

When Israel was vulnerable, the Amalekites attacked them- obviously used by Satan to exploit the people of God. However, God worked through Moses and Joshua in a mighty way. What was interesting is that while Moses had his hands upraised with the rod of God in his hand, the Israelites were winning the battle, but when his hands grew tired and were lowered they begin to lose. As a result, Aaron and Hur placed a stone for Moses to sit on and each one held up his hands. What a wonderful illustration of teamwork and supporting God's appointed leadership.



### Exodus 17:10-13

**So Joshua fought the Amalekites as Moses had ordered, and Moses, Aaron and Hur went to the top of the hill. As long as Moses held up his hands, the Israelites were winning, but whenever he lowered his hands, the Amalekites were winning. When Moses' hands grew tired, they took a stone and put it under him and he sat on it. Aaron and Hur held his hands up — one on one side, one on the other — so that his hands remained steady till sunset. So Joshua overcame the Amalekite army with the sword.**

### Jethro Visits Moses

Jethro was the father-in-law of Moses and he came out to visit Moses in the desert. Moses received him warmly and shared with him all that God had done for Israel. I love what Jethro said in response to all that Moses said- Exodus 18:11, *“Now I know that the LORD is greater than all other gods, for he did this to those who had treated Israel arrogantly.”*

Another interesting occurrence is when Jethro noticed that Moses was the only judge over all 2 million plus folks. There was no one else that an Israelite could take his/her complaints to be judged- Exodus 18:13 *“The next day Moses took his seat to serve as judge for the people, and they stood around him from morning till evening.”* Jethro had some great advice in the area of delegation:

### Exodus 18:17-23

**Moses' father-in-law replied, “What you are doing is not good. You and these people who come to you will only wear yourselves out. The work is too heavy for you; you cannot handle it alone. Listen now to me and I will give you some advice, and may God be with you. You must be the people's representative before God and bring their disputes to him. Teach them the decrees and laws, and show them the way to live and the duties they are to perform. But select capable men from all the people — men who fear God, trustworthy men who hate dishonest gain — and appoint them as officials over thousands, hundreds, fifties and tens. Have them serve as judges for the people at all times, but have them bring every difficult case to you; the simple cases they can decide themselves. That will make your load lighter, because they will share it with you. If you do this and God so commands, you will be able to stand the strain, and all these people will go home satisfied.”**

Fortunately for Moses and the people of Israel, he took Jethro's advice on this matter. This is the earliest instance of governmental organization among the Hebrews, and was an important step toward the later organization of the nation at Sinai into a theocracy (a government in which authority is derived from the command of God).

## 6. The Golden Calf

This event is probably one of the most famous in the Old Covenant. It represents supreme betrayal and rebellion. God had delivered the nation from hundreds of years of bondage, parted the red sea, supernaturally fed them and led them by a pillar of fire by night and a cloud of smoke by day. Just prior to Moses ascending Mount Sinai, God appeared to the people in a cloud of glory and spoke to them- the Covenant confirmed and the fear of God was put into them not to sin and break the Covenant.

### Hebrews 12:18-21

**You have not come to a mountain that can be touched and that is burning with fire; to darkness, gloom and storm; to a trumpet blast or to such a voice speaking words that those who heard it begged that no further word be spoken to them, because they could not bear what was commanded: "If even an animal touches the mountain, it must be stoned." The sight was so terrifying that Moses said, "I am trembling with fear."**

Moses, along with Joshua his aide went up the mountain to receive the covenant law for the people.

### Exodus 24:12-18

**The Lord said to Moses, "Come up to me on the mountain and stay here, and I will give you the tablets of stone, with the law and commands I have written for their instruction." Then Moses set out with Joshua his aide, and Moses went up on the mountain of God. He said to the elders, "Wait here for us until we come back to you. Aaron and Hur are with you, and anyone involved in a dispute can go to them." When Moses went up on the mountain, the cloud covered it, and the glory of the Lord settled on Mount Sinai. For six days the cloud covered the mountain, and on the seventh day the Lord called to Moses from within the cloud. To the Israelites the glory of the Lord looked like a consuming fire on top of the mountain. Then Moses entered the cloud as he went on up the mountain. And he stayed on the mountain forty days and forty nights.**

### Exodus 31:18

**When the Lord finished speaking to Moses on Mount Sinai, he gave him the two tablets of the Testimony, the tablets of stone inscribed by the finger of God.**

After Moses had been on the mountain for 40 days and 40 nights, the natives had gotten restless in a bad way. They asked Aaron for a golden calf and out of peer pressure made one from the gold they had taken from Egypt. So Aaron fashioned the gold into an idol for the people to worship and proclaimed in Exodus 32:4, "*These are your gods, O Israel, who brought you up out of Egypt.*" No words can describe the level of such wicked treachery. They proceeded to have a pagan orgy in Exodus 32:6. We need to understand, that idol worship is more than just bowing down to a piece of wood or stone. In fact it's the worship of Satan and demons, the Jews committed high treason.

### 1 Corinthians 10:18-22

**Consider the people of Israel: Do not those who eat the sacrifices participate in the altar? Do I mean then that a sacrifice offered to an idol is anything, or that an idol is anything? No, but the sacrifices of pagans are offered to demons, not to God, and I do not want you to be participants with demons. You cannot drink the cup of the Lord and the cup of demons too; you cannot have a part in both the Lord's table and the table of demons. Are we trying to arouse the Lord's jealousy? Are we stronger than he?**

### Deuteronomy 32:15-21

He abandoned the God who made him and rejected the Rock his Savior. They made him jealous with their foreign gods and angered him with their detestable idols. **They sacrificed to demons,** which are not God — gods they had not known, gods that recently appeared, gods your fathers did not fear. You deserted the Rock, who fathered you; you forgot the God who gave you birth. The Lord saw this and rejected them because he was angered by his sons and daughters. “I will hide my face from them,” he said, “and see what their end will be; for they are a perverse generation, children who are unfaithful. They made me jealous by what is no god and angered me with their worthless idols. I will make them envious by those who are not a people; I will make them angry by a nation that has no understanding.

God was fed up with them and wanted to destroy them, and would have if Moses had not interceded for them. Within a short time of hearing the 10 commandments, the people broke them. Moses reasoned with God during his intercession for the people of Israel...

### Exodus 32:11-14

But Moses sought the favor of the Lord his God. “O Lord,” he said, “why should your anger burn against your people, whom you brought out of Egypt with great power and a mighty hand? Why should the Egyptians say, ‘It was with evil intent that he brought them out, to kill them in the mountains and to wipe them off the face of the earth’? Turn from your fierce anger; relent and do not bring disaster on your people. Remember your servants Abraham, Isaac and Israel, to whom you swore by your own self: ‘I will make your descendants as numerous as the stars in the sky and I will give your descendants all this land I promised them, and it will be their inheritance forever.’” Then the Lord relented and did not bring on his people the disaster he had threatened.

The Bible has a lot to say about intercession and standing in the gap on behalf of another. I would encourage you to look at these Scriptures: James 5:16-19; 1 John 5:16; 2 Corinthians 1:10-11; Romans 8:26-27. Moses returned down the mountain



### Exodus 32:17-20

When Joshua heard the noise of the people shouting, he said to Moses, “There is the sound of war in the camp.” Moses replied:

“it is not the sound of victory,  
it is not the sound of defeat;  
it is the sound of singing that I hear.”

When Moses approached the camp and saw the calf and the dancing, his anger burned and he threw the tablets out of his hands, breaking them to pieces at the foot of the mountain.

### Acts 7:39-43

**“But our fathers refused to obey him. Instead, they rejected him and in their hearts turned back to Egypt. They told Aaron, ‘Make us gods who will go before us. As for this fellow Moses who led us out of Egypt—we don’t know what has happened to him!’ That was the time they made an idol in the form of a calf. They brought sacrifices to it and held a celebration in honor of what their hands had made. But God turned away and gave them over to the **worship of the heavenly bodies**. This agrees with what is written in the book of the prophets:**

**‘Did you bring me sacrifices and offerings forty years in the desert, O house of Israel?**

**You have lifted up the shrine of Molech and the star of your god Rephan, the idols you made to worship. Therefore I will send you into exile’ beyond Babylon.’”**

Moses took the calf and ground it into powder and scattered it into the water in order to make the people drink it. About three thousand of them died at the hand of the Levites who rallied to the side of Moses. The Lord also permitted a plague in verse 35.



Aaron never really took responsibility for letting everything fall apart. Interesting that he claimed that he threw the gold into the fire and “poof” out came a golden calf all by itself.

### Exodus 32:22-24

**“Do not be angry, my lord,” Aaron answered. “You know how prone these people are to evil. They said to me, ‘Make us gods who will go before us. As for this fellow Moses who brought us up out of Egypt, we don’t know what has happened to him.’ So I told them, ‘Whoever has any gold jewelry, take it off.’ Then they gave me the gold, and I threw it into the fire, and out came this calf!”**

Moses did an incredible thing for the people of Israel, even though they caused him so much grief and headaches he did not allow God to destroy them even though it would have solved a lot of his problems. We can be that way can’t we, “Oh Lord just get rid of this person out of my life and everything will be better.” “Oh Lord if I just had a better spouse or children or job etc.” Moses risked his own salvation on behalf of the people; that is incredible commitment from a leader, something we can all learn from!

### Exodus 32:31-32

**So Moses went back to the Lord and said, “Oh, what a great sin these people have committed! They have made themselves gods of gold. But now, please forgive their sin — but if not, then blot me out of the book you have written.”**

The Lord forgave the people but made an incredible statement, Exodus 33:5 “Tell the Israelites, ‘You are a stiff-necked people. If I were to go with you even for a moment, I might destroy you.’” However, He would send His angel ahead of them to drive out the Canaanites in Exodus 33:1-6. You can read more about this incident with the golden calf in Deuteronomy 9:7-22.

## **The Death of Nadab and Abihu**

Here is a lesson about reverence for the Lord and respecting the office of ministry. God is a Holy God and must be respected accordingly. These two men were sons of Aaron and served as priests before God. Apparently they functioned in their ministry before the Lord in a drunken state and paid the ultimate price.

### **Leviticus 10:1-3**

**Aaron's sons Nadab and Abihu took their censers, put fire in them and added incense; and they offered unauthorized fire before the Lord, contrary to His command. So fire came out from the presence of the Lord and consumed them, and they died before the Lord. Moses then said to Aaron, "This is what the Lord spoke of when he said:**

**'Among those who approach me  
I will show myself holy;  
in the sight of all the people  
I will be honored.'**"

Aaron remained silent.

### **Leviticus 10:8-11**

**Then the Lord said to Aaron, "You and your sons are not to drink wine or other fermented drink whenever you go into the Tent of Meeting, or you will die. This is a lasting ordinance for the generations to come. You must distinguish between the holy and the common, between the unclean and the clean, and you must teach the Israelites all the decrees the Lord has given them through Moses."**

## **7. Miriam and Aaron Oppose Moses**

The following historical event is significant because it deals with the age old issue of submission and authority and man's continual challenge with authority. It also speaks of jealousy that takes place and the consequences of it.

Here we have Miriam and Aaron began to talk against Moses, first it began in regards to his Cushite wife and then crosses the line in Numbers 12:2, "*Has the Lord spoken only through Moses?' they asked. 'Hasn't he also spoken through us?' And the Lord heard this.*" Notice that the Lord heard this. When people talk of course God hears it, so how is it that we forget this simple fact and go on talking the way we do.

### **Malachi 3:13-18**

**"You have said harsh things against me," says the Lord. "Yet you ask, 'What have we said against you?' "You have said, 'It is futile to serve God. What did we gain by carrying out his requirements and going about like mourners before the Lord Almighty? But now we call the arrogant blessed. Certainly the evildoers prosper, and even those who challenge God escape.'" Then those who feared the Lord talked with each other, and the Lord listened and heard. A scroll of remembrance was written in his presence concerning those who feared the Lord and honored his name. "They will be mine," says the Lord Almighty, "in the day when I make up my treasured possession. I will spare them, just as in compassion a man spares his son who serves him. And you will again see the distinction between the righteous and the wicked, between those who serve God and those who do not.**

### **Matthew 12:36-37**

**“But I tell you that men will have to give account on the day of judgment for every careless word they have spoken. For by your words you will be acquitted, and by your words you will be condemned.”**

### **Hebrews 4:13**

**Nothing in all creation is hidden from God’s sight. Everything is uncovered and laid bare before the eyes of him to whom we must give account.**

Now Moses did not make a fuss and defend himself and put Miriam and Aaron in their place according to Numbers 12:3, *“Now Moses was a very humble man, more humble than anyone else on the face of the earth.”* What happens next is incredible, the Lord sticks up and defends Moses. The Lord calls for a special meeting for just the three of them to set the record straight.

### **Numbers 12:5-9**

**Then the Lord came down in a pillar of cloud; he stood at the entrance to the Tent and summoned Aaron and Miriam. When both of them stepped forward, he said, “Listen to my words:**

**When a prophet of the Lord is among you,  
I reveal myself to him in visions,  
I speak to him in dreams.  
But this is not true of my servant Moses;  
he is faithful in all my house.  
With him I speak face to face,  
clearly and not in riddles;  
he sees the form of the Lord.  
Why then were you not afraid  
to speak against my servant Moses?”**

**The anger of the Lord burned against them, and he left them.**



We need to be careful not to talk against our spiritual leaders, the Lord takes issue with that. Miriam ended up becoming a leper from head to foot, but Moses prayed for her and she was healed- Exodus 22:28, *“Do not blaspheme God or curse the ruler of your people.”*

### **Hebrews 13:17**

**Obey your leaders and submit to their authority. They keep watch over you as men who must give an account. Obey them so that their work will be a joy, not a burden, for that would be of no advantage to you.**

Another lesson to be learned here is that God will back us up, the Scriptures tell us to love our enemies and do good to those who use and take advantage of us according to Luke 6:27-36. One might say, “But who is going to stand up for me if I don’t stand up for myself and keep people from making me a doormat!” For those in the world, they are alone and no one will necessarily stand up for them, but God will stand up for His children and defend them. When we take matters into our own hands than we are on our own. However, if we put our trust in God and walk in love, God will make things right!

### **1 Peter 2:21-24**

To this you were called, because Christ suffered for you, leaving you an example, that you should follow in his steps. "He committed no sin, and no deceit was found in his mouth." When they hurled their insults at him, he did not retaliate; when he suffered, he made no threats. Instead, he entrusted himself to him who judges justly.

### **Romans 12:17-21**

Do not repay anyone evil for evil. Be careful to do what is right in the eyes of everybody. If it is possible, as far as it depends on you, live at peace with everyone. Do not take revenge, my friends, but leave room for God's wrath, for it is written: "It is mine to avenge; I will repay," says the Lord. On the contrary:

**"If your enemy is hungry, feed him;  
if he is thirsty, give him something to drink.  
In doing this, you will heap burning coals on his head."**

**Do not be overcome by evil, but overcome evil with good.**

## 8. Exploring Canaan

The place is Kadesh Barnea on the outskirts of the Promised Land; at last the people of Israel are on the verge of entering into their land flowing with milk and honey. This is the same land that God had promised Abraham for his decedents to inherit. After all this time, God's promise is about to be manifest. This is one of the great Old Covenant stories, for it teaches volumes on the principles of faith.

### **Hebrews 11:8-10**

**By faith Abraham, when called to go to a place he would later receive as his inheritance, obeyed and went, even though he did not know where he was going. By faith he made his home in the promised land like a stranger in a foreign country; he lived in tents, as did Isaac and Jacob, who were heirs with him of the same promise. For he was looking forward to the city with foundations, whose architect and builder is God.**

We will reference the book of Deuteronomy which makes an interesting point. It appears that Moses initially told the folks to just go straight in and take possession of what God had promised, but the people wanted to send in spies first. One leader from each tribe to explore the land of Canaan- 12 men from the twelve tribes of Israel- that decision to hesitate will cost them dearly!

### **Deuteronomy 1:21-25**

**"See, the Lord your God has given you the land. Go up and take possession of it as the Lord, the God of your fathers, told you. Do not be afraid; do not be discouraged." Then all of you came to me and said, "Let us send men ahead to spy out the land for us and bring back a report about the route we are to take and the towns we will come to." The idea seemed good to me; so I selected twelve of you, one man from each tribe. They left and went up into the hill country, and came to the Valley of Eshcol and explored it. Taking with them some of the fruit of the land, they brought it down to us and reported, "It is a good land that the Lord our God is giving us."**

I love how Moses told the people, "Go for it, reach out and take what belongs to you, which God has graciously promised on a oath!" Notice he said, don't be afraid or discouraged, these are the same stumbling blocks we have to deal with today, when it comes to us entering into our New Covenant promised land. Satan will try to use circumstances, fear and intimidation to get you and me to back down from receiving our blood bought inheritance in Jesus Christ!



### Numbers 13:21-25

So they went up and explored the land from the Desert of Zin as far as Rehob, toward Lebo Hamath. They went up through the Negev and came to Hebron, where Ahiman, Sheshai and Talmai, the descendants of Anak, lived. (Hebron had been built seven years before Zoan in Egypt.) When they reached the Valley of Eshcol, they cut off a branch bearing a single cluster of grapes. Two of them carried it on a pole between them, along with some pomegranates and figs. That place was called the Valley of Eshcol because of the cluster of grapes the Israelites cut off there. At the end of forty days they returned from exploring the land.

### The Evil Report

So after 40 days, the twelve spies returned and freely acknowledged that the land was everything it was said to be, a land flowing with milk and honey- **BUT!!!**

### Numbers 13:28-29

**“But the people who live there are powerful, and the cities are fortified and very large. We even saw descendants of Anak there. The Amalekites live in the Negev; the Hittites, Jebusites and Amorites live in the hill country; and the Canaanites live near the sea and along the Jordan.”**

Now what they said concerning their mere observations was correct, it was the conclusion they came to that was wrong. There is a big difference between truth and fact, it was a fact that the people of the land were great and powerful, but the truth was God had already delivered them into their hands. This reminds me of Abraham, he faced the fact that he and Sarah were too old to have children, but the greater truth was that God had promised them a son. So which one are we going to believe, the facts or the truth?

### Romans 4:17-21

As it is written: “I have made you a father of many nations.” He is our father in the sight of God, in whom he believed — the God who gives life to the dead and calls things that are not as though they were. Against all hope, Abraham in hope believed and so became the father of many nations, just as it had been said to him, “So shall your offspring be.” Without weakening in his faith, he **faced the fact** that his body was as good as dead — since he was about a hundred years old — and that Sarah’s womb was also dead. Yet he did not waver through unbelief regarding the promise of God, but was strengthened in his faith and gave glory to God, **being fully persuaded that God had power to do what he had promised.**

Immediately we see the faith of Caleb, one of the twelve spies begin to kick in. How do you see his faith you may wonder, listen to what he said- faith always has a distinguishing tone. Faith is of the heart, and Jesus had said that out of the abundance of the heart, the mouth will speak according to Matthew 12:34-35.

### Numbers 13:30

Then Caleb silenced the people before Moses and said, “We should go up and take possession of the land, for we can certainly do it.”

However, notice the response of the other spies, fear and doubt dominated them and what was in their hearts came out of their mouths as well. They spread a bad or evil report of doubt, unbelief and fear.

### **Numbers 13:31-33**

**But the men who had gone up with him said, “We can’t attack those people; they are stronger than we are.” And they spread among the Israelites a bad report about the land they had explored. They said, “The land we explored devours those living in it. All the people we saw there are of great size. We saw the Nephilim there (the descendants of Anak come from the Nephilim). We seemed like grasshoppers in our own eyes, and we looked the same to them.”**

Remember Og, king of Bashan, he was a descendent of giants, literally like goliath, these folks were a freak of nature. Recall our study of fallen angels cohabitating with women to create an evil race of giants.

### **Deuteronomy 3:11**

**Only Og king of Bashan was left of the remnant of the Rephaites. His bed was made of iron and was more than thirteen feet long and six feet wide. It is still in Rabbah of the Ammonites.**

So when the spies said they looked like grasshoppers, now we know why. So the people were left with a choice, on the one side they had God’s Word, a sworn oath that He would fight for them and send His angel ahead of them to drive the Canaanites out before them. Now there are many more references to this truth, but the following will make our point.

### **Exodus 13:4-5**

**Today, in the month of Abib, you are leaving. When the Lord brings you into the land of the Canaanites, Hittites, Amorites, Hivites and Jebusites — the land he swore to your forefathers to give you, a land flowing with milk and honey**

### **Exodus 23:23**

**My angel will go ahead of you and bring you into the land of the Amorites, Hittites, Perizzites, Canaanites, Hivites and Jebusites, and I will wipe them out.**

### **Exodus 23:27-31**

**“I will send my terror ahead of you and throw into confusion every nation you encounter. I will make all your enemies turn their backs and run. I will send the hornet ahead of you to drive the Hivites, Canaanites and Hittites out of your way. But I will not drive them out in a single year, because the land would become desolate and the wild animals too numerous for you. Little by little I will drive them out before you, until you have increased enough to take possession of the land. “I will establish your borders from the Red Sea to the Sea of the Philistines, and from the desert to the River. I will hand over to you the people who live in the land and you will drive them out before you.”**

On the other hand, we have the report of the majority of the spies who walked by sight and not by faith, who rejected what God had said and allowed what they saw, their perception of the situation to become their reality. The Bible calls their testimony a “bad report” because it flies smack in the face of what God had promised them, basically calling God a liar and too weak to fulfill His promises to them. Unfortunately the people embraced the “bad report” to their own loss of their Promised Land. Here we see a classic example of the power of words, life and death are in the power of the tongue.

### **Numbers 14:1-4**

**That night all the people of the community raised their voices and wept aloud. All the Israelites grumbled against Moses and Aaron, and the whole assembly said to them, “If only we had died in Egypt! Or in this desert! Why is the Lord bringing us to this land only to let us fall by the sword? Our wives and children will be taken as plunder. Wouldn’t it be better for us to go back to Egypt?” And they said to each other, “We should choose a leader and go back to Egypt.”**

How pathetic, after all that God has done for them, yet we too find ourselves in the same mire of self-pity and despair even today, don’t we? It was an incredible disappointment, when we consider the children of Israel at the brink of possessing their Promised Land and then fall short of it.

It was not without reason that Moses and Aaron fell face down in front of the whole assembly, “Uh Oh, how will God respond to this one!” Joshua and Caleb made one last attempt to encourage and rally the people to believe God. What they said will forever be a tribute to them and their courage to take a stand and trust God.

### **Numbers 14:6-9**

**Joshua son of Nun and Caleb son of Jephunneh, who were among those who had explored the land, tore their clothes and said to the entire Israelite assembly, “The land we passed through and explored is exceedingly good. If the Lord is pleased with us, he will lead us into that land, a land flowing with milk and honey, and will give it to us. Only do not rebel against the Lord. And do not be afraid of the people of the land, because we will swallow them up. Their protection is gone, but the Lord is with us. Do not be afraid of them.”**

The last straw, now the Hebrews were beyond hope, they now talked about stoning Joshua and Caleb for their stand of faith in verse 10. Which is typical, the greatest persecution will not be from the world, but from religious folks who are bound by their physical senses; what they can see, touch and hear. See how this religion of doubt, unbelief and fear turned from weeping and wailing to hatred and murder so quickly. Unbelief, a deliberate refusal to believe is rebellion, and is the worst of all sins in my opinion. This is a huge lesson for us today!

### **Hebrews 3:7-19**

**So, as the Holy Spirit says: “Today, if you hear his voice, do not harden your hearts as you did in the rebellion, during the time of testing in the desert, where your fathers tested and tried me and for forty years saw what I did. That is why I was angry with that generation, and I said, ‘Their hearts are always going astray, and they have not known my ways.’ So I declared on oath in my anger, ‘They shall never enter my rest.’” See to it, brothers, that none of you has a sinful, unbelieving heart that turns away from the living God. But encourage one another daily, as long as it is called Today, so that none of you may be hardened by sin’s deceitfulness. We have come to share in Christ if we hold firmly till the end the confidence we had at first. As has just been said: “Today, if you hear his voice, do not harden your hearts as you did in the rebellion.” Who were they who heard and rebelled? Were they not all those Moses led out of Egypt? And with whom was he angry for forty years? Was it not with those who sinned, whose bodies fell in the desert? And to whom did God swear that they would never enter his rest if not to those who disobeyed? So we see that they were not able to enter, because of their unbelief.**

Well, God had heard enough, we learn through the Scriptures that He is longsuffering, but His patience is not everlasting. He will work with people for a time, giving them many opportunities to repent, but only for a season- Revelation 2:20-23. Today is the Day of Salvation, but it will not always be Today- 2 Corinthians 6:1-2.

### **Numbers 14:11-12**

**The Lord said to Moses, “How long will these people treat me with contempt? How long will they refuse to believe in me, in spite of all the miraculous signs I have performed among them? I will strike them down with a plague and destroy them, but I will make you into a nation greater and stronger than they.”**

I think by now most of us would say, “Yes Lord please do us both a favor and rid the earth of them!” But that is not what Moses did, he again interceded for them and God forgave them again, but not without a consequence.

### **Numbers 14:20-25**

**The Lord replied, “I have forgiven them, as you asked. Nevertheless, as surely as I live and as surely as the glory of the Lord fills the whole earth, not one of the men who saw my glory and the miraculous signs I performed in Egypt and in the desert but who disobeyed me and tested me ten times — not one of them will ever see the land I promised on oath to their forefathers. No one who has treated me with contempt will ever see it. But because my servant Caleb has a different spirit and follows me wholeheartedly, I will bring him into the land he went to, and his descendants will inherit it. Since the Amalekites and Canaanites are living in the valleys, turn back tomorrow and set out toward the desert along the route to the Red Sea.”**

Wow, their unbelief cost them the Promised Land, by their own choice and with the words of their mouth they determined their destiny- death in the desert. Was this God’s perfect will, No! A thousand times No! Yet is not God Sovereign, could He not have made them do the right thing and inherit the land. Yes God is Sovereign as the Scriptures dictates that He is, but He will not violate free will or His own Word.

The first desert experience in route to the Promised Land was God’s will; the 40 years of extra desert wandering was not God’s will. As Christians we can’t assume that the deserts of trials and tests alone make a person holy, the Hebrews seemed to be worse off at the end of their desert experience. We can have 10 miles of tests and not grow an inch unless we overcome those trials through faith in God’s Word. The simple truth is tests, trials and temptations come from Satan, and are designed to kill, steal and destroy us- to sift us as wheat. There are many people who have become bitter and fallen away from God due to tests and trials.

I believe that God uses His Word and the sanctifying work of the Holy Spirit to purify His children. Certainly as we go through this world we will be persecuted, we will suffer temptation as we learn to crucify our flesh, but only through faith in God’s Word will we overcome these things that seek to destroy us. Let’s remember the source, so we can resist the devil when he comes by to peddle his evil goods for our lives. Jesus came that we may have life and have it to the full- John 10:10. Just as the world calls tornados and hurricanes an act of God, our Father gets the same bad rap from Christians who claim that He makes us sick or poor in order to teach us something. I don’t see that anywhere in the New Covenant. We need to be on our guard against religious speculation, tradition and false humility- Colossians 2:18. God uses His Word through the Holy Spirit to train and discipline us.

**James 1:16-17- Don’t be deceived, my dear brothers. Every good and perfect gift is from above, coming down from the Father of the heavenly lights, who does not change like shifting shadows.**

### **Matthew 7:9-11**

**“Which of you, if his son asks for bread, will give him a stone? Or if he asks for a fish, will give him a snake? If you, then, though you are evil, know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father in heaven give good gifts to those who ask him!”**

So the verdict is in, those 20 years of age and older will never make it into the Promised Land.

### **Numbers 14:26-38**

**The Lord said to Moses and Aaron: “How long will this wicked community grumble against me? I have heard the complaints of these grumbling Israelites. So tell them, ‘As surely as I live, declares the Lord, I will do to you the very things I heard you say: In this desert your bodies will fall — every one of you twenty years old or more who was counted in the census and who has grumbled against me. Not one of you will enter the land I swore with uplifted hand to make your home, except Caleb son of Jephunneh and Joshua son of Nun. As for your children that you said would be taken as plunder, I will bring them in to enjoy the land you have rejected. But you — your bodies will fall in this desert. Your children will be shepherds here for forty years, suffering for your unfaithfulness, until the last of your bodies lies in the desert. For forty years — one year for each of the forty days you explored the land — you will suffer for your sins and know what it is like to have me against you.’**

**I, the Lord, have spoken, and I will surely do these things to this whole wicked community, which has banded together against me. They will meet their end in this desert; here they will die.” So the men Moses had sent to explore the land, who returned and made the whole community grumble against him by spreading a bad report about it — these men responsible for spreading the bad report about the land were struck down and died of a plague before the Lord. Of the men who went to explore the land, only Joshua son of Nun and Caleb son of Jephunneh survived.**

It all comes down to faith, believing and acting on God’s Word is the difference between life and death, blessing or still living under the oppression of the Devil. Interesting that the people received a self-fulfilled prophecy, God quoted from their own mouths, and that is what happened- what you say will be what you get if you keep on saying it. Both Faith and Fear come by the principles of hearing words over and over again. Hearing God’s Words produces faith, hearing the words of the devil produces fear. The men responsible for the “Bad Report” died immediately, so unnecessary so tragic, but it happens even today. Good folks falling short of God’s best for their lives, but it does not mean that God or His word failed, we just failed to believe God- Romans 3:2-3.

### **Hebrews 4:1-3**

**Therefore, since the promise of entering his rest still stands, let us be careful that none of you be found to have fallen short of it. For we also have had the gospel preached to us, just as they did; but the message they heard was of no value to them, because those who heard did not combine it with faith. Now we who have believed enter that rest , just as God has said,**

**“So I declared on oath in my anger,  
‘They shall never enter my rest .’”**

### **Hebrews 4:6**

**It still remains that some will enter that rest, and those who formerly had the gospel preached to them did not go in, because of their disobedience.**

Finally we see one last example of folly, the Israelites regret their sin instead of repenting of their sin. For in their presumption they disobey the Lord’s instruction and try to take the Promised Land on their own, unfortunately it is too late for that generation- Please read this account in Numbers 14:39-45. For some more helpful insight into this account, read from the book of **Deuteronomy 1:19-46; 9:23-29**. It contains things that were said that make the picture even more clear, it would behoove you to read it.

Unit 11 Review:

What benefit do we have of studying the children of Israel according to 1 Corinthians chapter 10? Also, do miracles in themselves save people, why or why not?

---

---

---

Why it is essential for Christians to understand the source of good and bad and where it comes from and why?

---

---

---

We see that God is not a big fan of mumbling, grumbling and complaining- why?

---

---

---

What was so significant concerning the incident of the golden calf at Mount Sinai?

---

---

---

What can we learn from the devotion and commitment of Moses for the people Israel?

---

---

---

What was the difference between the facts and truth concerning the exploration of Canaan?

---

---

---

There are many types and shadows for us to learn from the people of Israel on their journey to the Promised Land. Here are a few to consider that were record in the Old Covenant and parallels with the New Covenant:

### **1 Corinthians 10:2**

**They were all baptized into Moses in the cloud and in the sea.**

#### **Baptized into Moses at the Red Sea- New Birth**

Egypt is a type of the World System, when God's people came out of Egypt and passed through the Red Sea, it was symbolic of the New Birth and water baptism.

#### **The Jordan River – Baptism of the Holy Spirit**

On the verge of entering into the Promised Land, the people passed through the Jordan river like the Red Sea, it was parted before them and they walked on dry ground. The Baptism of the Holy Spirit is the door way into partaking of all of God's promises and power for this life, and to do His will.

#### **Promised Land- Our glorious inheritance and redemption in Jesus**

Yes there are giants in the land in this day, but the fight we fight today is by faith, but the battle has already been won through Jesus Christ.

The Israelites serve as a type and shadow for us today, since we too face our Promised Land, a spiritual kingdom flowing with life, and that more abundantly. Yes there are giants of doubt, fear, cancer, lack and the like, but we have God's Word that cannot fail. The Word of God will always work when we mix it with faith. If it did not work, it's because we did not work it according to the principles in the Bible. Ask God for wisdom and go after it again, because God rewards those who diligently seek Him and do not take "No" for an answer- Hebrews 11:6. It's all about God's glory and seeing His Kingdom advance!

## 9. Korah's Rebellion

### **Jude 11**

**Woe to them! They have taken the way of Cain; they have rushed for profit into Balaam's error; they have been destroyed in Korah's rebellion .**

As you can imagine, the Hebrews were very upset about missing their Promised Land. All they had to look forward to was to spend the rest of their lives in the desert- the only hope was for their children to enter in on their behalf. I would imagine that a number of them allowed themselves to become very bitter, but it was their own fault- don't blame God.

Korah was a Levite, and along with a few others: Reubenites, Dathan and Abiram become insolent and rose up in rebellion against Moses in Numbers chapter 16. With them 250 Israelite men, well-known community leaders who had been appointed members to the council.

### **Numbers 16:3**

**They came as a group to oppose Moses and Aaron and said to them, "You have gone too far! The whole community is holy, every one of them, and the Lord is with them. Why then do you set yourselves above the Lord's assembly?"**

I believe that Moses knew this was a death sentence for them, they obviously did not take into account what had happened to Miriam and the case of leprosy that she had.

### Numbers 16:4-7

**When Moses heard this, he fell facedown. Then he said to Korah and all his followers: “In the morning the Lord will show who belongs to him and who is holy, and he will have that person come near him. The man he chooses he will cause to come near him. You, Korah, and all your followers are to do this: Take censers and tomorrow put fire and incense in them before the Lord. The man the Lord chooses will be the one who is holy. You Levites have gone too far!”**

Notice that Moses gets angry with the Levities and proceeds to rebuke them in Numbers 16:8-12. The Levities were called to serve as ministers before the Lord, but they had less authority than the priests from Aaron’s lineage. I suppose Korah and some of his fellow Levities were tired of playing second fiddle to the priests. It reminds me of Lucifer’s rebellion and one third of the angels who were seeking a power grab- rebellion in the kingdom of God is a very serious matter!

### Numbers 16:11

**“It is against the Lord that you and all your followers have banded together. Who is Aaron that you should grumble against him?”**

Now when Moses had summoned Dathan and Abiram, the leaders from the tribe of Rueben, but they refused; here is where we see their bitterness in full bloom- being denied from the Promised Land which was their own doing. Moses gets pretty steamed at this insolent response by these men in verse 15.

### Numbers 16:12-14

**Then Moses summoned Dathan and Abiram, the sons of Eliab. But they said, “We will not come! Isn’t it enough that you have brought us up out of a land flowing with milk and honey to kill us in the desert? And now you also want to lord it over us? Moreover, you haven’t brought us into a land flowing with milk and honey or given us an inheritance of fields and vineyards. Will you gouge out the eyes of these men? No, we will not come!”**

I love how God backs up His Man Moses when the people get together the next morning. The Lord does not waste any time in wanting to destroy the whole community, but Moses intercedes that only those who specifically rebelled should be punished- Numbers 16:23-24, *“Then the Lord said to Moses, say to the assembly, ‘Move away from the tents of Korah, Dathan and Abiram.’”* Moses warned the people to move their tents away from these men in verses 25-27.

### Numbers 16:28-35

**Then Moses said, “This is how you will know that the Lord has sent me to do all these things and that it was not my idea: If these men die a natural death and experience only what usually happens to men, then the Lord has not sent me. But if the Lord brings about something totally new, and the earth opens its mouth and swallows them, with everything that belongs to them, and they go down alive into the grave, then you will know that these men have treated the Lord with contempt.” As soon as he finished saying all this, the ground under them split apart and the earth opened its mouth and swallowed them, with their households and all Korah’s men and all their possessions. They went down alive into the grave, with everything they owned; the earth closed over them, and they perished and were gone from the community. At their cries, all the Israelites around them fled, shouting, “The earth is going to swallow us too!” And fire came out from the Lord and consumed the 250 men who were offering the incense.**



What is incredible here is that the people of Israel after seeing how God deals with rebellion revolt against Moses for what had justly happened to these evil men.

#### **Numbers 16:42-45**

**But when the assembly gathered in opposition to Moses and Aaron and turned toward the Tent of Meeting, suddenly the cloud covered it and the glory of the Lord appeared. Then Moses and Aaron went to the front of the Tent of Meeting, and the Lord said to Moses, “Get away from this assembly so I can put an end to them at once.” And they fell facedown.**

Again, Moses intercedes for them but this time he instructs Aaron to take his censer and offer atonement for the people because of their sin which incurred upon themselves a severe plague that was already in progress. Wow, you would think these folks would be grateful for Moses saving their lives time and time again, but they were insistent in wanting to stone the messenger.

#### **Numbers 16:46-50**

**Then Moses said to Aaron, “Take your censer and put incense in it, along with fire from the altar, and hurry to the assembly to make atonement for them. Wrath has come out from the Lord; the plague has started.” So Aaron did as Moses said, and ran into the midst of the assembly. The plague had already started among the people, but Aaron offered the incense and made atonement for them. He stood between the living and the dead, and the plague stopped. But 14,700 people died from the plague, in addition to those who had died because of Korah. Then Aaron returned to Moses at the entrance to the Tent of Meeting, for the plague had stopped.**

I love the wording in verse 48, “*He stood between the living and the dead, and the plague stopped.*” It speaks of what an intercessor does, stands in the gap on behalf of another.

#### **1 Peter 2:5, 9-10**

**You also, like living stones, are being built into a spiritual house to be a holy priesthood, offering spiritual sacrifices acceptable to God through Jesus Christ. But you are a chosen people, a royal priesthood, a holy nation, a people belonging to God, that you may declare the praises of him who called you out of darkness into his wonderful light.**

#### **1 Timothy 2:1-4**

**I urge, then, first of all, that requests, prayers, intercession and thanksgiving be made for everyone—for kings and all those in authority, that we may live peaceful and quiet lives in all godliness and holiness. This is good, and pleases God our Savior, who wants all men to be saved and to come to a knowledge of the truth.**

As ministers of the New Covenant, we have a priestly duty of proclaiming the Good News of the Gospel to the lost, to stand in the gap and intercede for the lost and for the saints. This is our primary way of being a salt and a light; salt preserves, our prayers avail much to keep back the plans of Satan to kill, steal and destroy. I fully believe that what happens on this earth in large part, whether good or bad is the result of the Church praying or not praying; being faithful to pray that God’s will be done on earth as it is in heaven. So many wars, death and famine could be avoided if the Church of the Lord Jesus Christ would exercise her authority in the spiritual realm and bind the forces of the enemy.

#### **Romans 15:16**

**To be a minister of Christ Jesus to the Gentiles with the priestly duty of proclaiming the gospel of God, so that the Gentiles might become an offering acceptable to God, sanctified by the Holy Spirit.**

## **Jude 22-23**

**Be merciful to those who doubt; snatch others from the fire and save them; to others show mercy, mixed with fear-hating even the clothing stained by corrupted flesh.**

As a light, we show the world in a tangible way the love and mercy of God through good works, healing, deliverance and proclaiming the gospel of Jesus Christ- Acts 10:38; Hebrews 13:15-16.

## **The Budding of Aaron's staff**

God wanted to get rid of this constant grumbling of who is approved by God, so the Lord asks for twelve staffs from each tribe with their name on it. Moses placed them before the Lord in the Tent of the Testimony. The next day, an amazing miracle takes place with Aaron's rod.

## **Numbers 17:8-11**

**The next day Moses entered the Tent of the Testimony and saw that Aaron's staff, which represented the house of Levi, had not only sprouted but had budded, blossomed and produced almonds. Then Moses brought out all the staffs from the Lord's presence to all the Israelites. They looked at them, and each man took his own staff. The Lord said to Moses, "Put back Aaron's staff in front of the Testimony, to be kept as a sign to the rebellious. This will put an end to their grumbling against me, so that they will not die." Moses did just as the Lord commanded him.**

## **10. Water from the Rock**

As the Hebrews moved back into the desert, there was no water for them to drink; you know the drill already- they complained about it.

## **Numbers 20:2-5**

**Now there was no water for the community, and the people gathered in opposition to Moses and Aaron. They quarreled with Moses and said, "If only we had died when our brothers fell dead before the Lord! Why did you bring the Lord's community into this desert, that we and our livestock should die here? Why did you bring us up out of Egypt to this terrible place? It has no grain or figs, grapevines or pomegranates. And there is no water to drink!"**

There is something very significant about this event as it pertains to Moses. The Lord tells Moses to speak to the rock this second time instead of striking it like he did before in Exodus 17:1-7. This was prophetic since the rock speaks symbolically of Jesus that accompanied them. Jesus was struck once speaking of the crucifixion which was to be done once for all men, that is why Moses struck the rock the first time. However, this second time the Lord instructs Moses to speak to the rock and living water would flow- now all we have to do is ask in Jesus' Name to receive from God.

## **1 Corinthians 10:3-5**

**They all ate the same spiritual food and drank the same spiritual drink; for they drank from the spiritual rock that accompanied them, and that rock was Christ. Nevertheless, God was not pleased with most of them; their bodies were scattered over the desert.**

Unfortunately, Moses, being fed up with the children of Israel, strikes the rock two times instead. He disobeyed a direct command from the Lord, and it would cost him the Promised Land. Nevertheless, water still flowed for the Israelites to drink.

With great position comes great responsibility and Moses knew this. The more light we have of God's Word the more responsible we are for what we do with it- Luke 12:48, "*From everyone who has been given much, much will be demanded; and from the one who has been entrusted with much, much more will be asked.*" You can also refer to James 3:1 and 1 Timothy 4:16.

### **Numbers 20:10-12**

**He and Aaron gathered the assembly together in front of the rock and Moses said to them, “Listen, you rebels, must we bring you water out of this rock?” Then Moses raised his arm and struck the rock twice with his staff. Water gushed out, and the community and their livestock drank. But the Lord said to Moses and Aaron, “Because you did not trust in me enough to honor me as holy in the sight of the Israelites, you will not bring this community into the land I give them.”**

### **The Death of Aaron**

At a ripe old age Aaron dies and his son Eleazar take his place as High Priest. The Levitical Priesthood was meant to be a temporary order under the Old Covenant, lasting until Jesus would come and take His place as our Great High Priest.

### **Hebrews 7:23-25**

**Now there have been many of those priests, since death prevented them from continuing in office; but because Jesus lives forever, he has a permanent priesthood. Therefore he is able to save completely those who come to God through him, because he always lives to intercede for them.**

### **The Bronze Snake**

Okay, here we go again, the Israelites are at it again, murmuring and complaining about their unpleasant conditions that they had brought upon themselves. This time God allows venomous snakes to come in among them; they bit the people and many Israelites died.

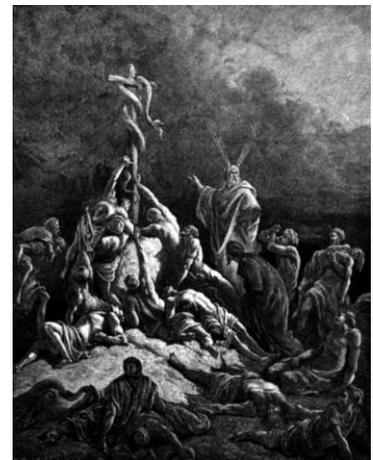
### **Numbers 21:4-5**

**They traveled from Mount Hor along the route to the Red Sea, to go around Edom. But the people grew impatient on the way; they spoke against God and against Moses, and said, “Why have you brought us up out of Egypt to die in the desert? There is no bread! There is no water! And we detest this miserable food!”**

The people repented and ask Moses for help, so Moses prayed for the people and the Lord instructed him to do the following:

### **Numbers 21:8-9**

**The Lord said to Moses, “Make a snake and put it up on a pole; anyone who is bitten can look at it and live.” So Moses made a bronze snake and put it up on a pole. Then when anyone was bitten by a snake and looked at the bronze snake, he lived.**



There is something extremely significant that needs to be pointed out because it has huge prophetic significance for us as believers today. At the time, the bronze snake was a means of physical healing for the Hebrews. Remember that snakes in the Bible are a type of Satan, who came into the camp because the people had opened the door through their sin- Luke 10:19. Yes God allowed it, but it was not His will for that to happen.

Now there is a principle in the Bible concerning a capital offense. In Bible times, the person was put to death by being hung on a tree. That was symbolic of that person being under God's curse.

### **Deuteronomy 21:22-23**

**If a man guilty of a capital offense is put to death and his body is hung on a tree, you must not leave his body on the tree overnight. Be sure to bury him that same day, because anyone who is hung on a tree is under God's curse. You must not desecrate the land the Lord your God is giving you as an inheritance.**

### **Acts 5:30-32**

**“The God of our fathers raised Jesus from the dead — whom you had killed by hanging him on a tree. God exalted him to his own right hand as Prince and Savior that he might give repentance and forgiveness of sins to Israel. We are witnesses of these things, and so is the Holy Spirit, whom God has given to those who obey him.”**

The bronze snake is a type of Jesus becoming a curse for us, having been hung on a tree at Cavalry. Everyone who looks to Jesus as the Hebrews did to the bronze snake, receives healing and deliverance. God made Jesus who knew no sin to be sin for us according to 2 Corinthians 5:21. Jesus became the snake for us on the cross. Jesus became our curse, received God's wrath on our behalf so we would be saved.

### **Galatians 3:13-14**

**Christ redeemed us from the curse of the law by becoming a curse for us, for it is written: “Cursed is everyone who is hung on a tree.” He redeemed us in order that the blessing given to Abraham might come to the Gentiles through Christ Jesus, so that by faith we might receive the promise of the Spirit.**

## 11. Balak and Balaam

Balaam was a magician or soothsayer who was summoned by the Moabite king Balak to curse the Israelites before they entered Canaan in Numbers 22:5-24:25; Deuteronomy 23:4-5.

Balaam lived in ARAM in the town of Pethor on the Euphrates River. A curious mixture of good and evil, Balaam wavered when he was asked by Balak to curse the Israelites. But he finally agreed to go when the Lord specifically instructed him to go to Balak in Numbers 22:20.

In the morning Balaam proceeded with the princes of Moab. But *“God was angry because he was going, and the angel of the Lord took his stand in the way as an adversary against him”* in Numbers 22:22. Though Balaam did not see the angel, the donkey that he rode was aware of his presence. At first it turned into the field; again, in its terror, it pressed against the wall, squeezing Balaam's foot; upon the third appearance of the angel, there being no way of escape, it fell down. This greatly enraged Balaam, who struck it with a stick, whereupon the donkey questioned Balaam as to the cause of the beating. He soon became aware of the presence of the angel, who accused him of perverseness.

### Numbers 22:28-33

Then the Lord opened the donkey's mouth, and she said to Balaam, "What have I done to you to make you beat me these three times?" Balaam answered the donkey, "You have made a fool of me! If I had a sword in my hand, I would kill you right now." The donkey said to Balaam, "Am I not your own donkey, which you have always ridden, to this day? Have I been in the habit of doing this to you?" "No," he said. Then the Lord opened Balaam's eyes, and he saw the angel of the Lord standing in the road with his sword drawn. So he bowed low and fell facedown. The angel of the Lord asked him, "Why have you beaten your donkey these three times? I have come here to oppose you because your path is a reckless one before me. The donkey saw me and turned away from me these three times. If she had not turned away, I would certainly have killed you by now, but I would have spared her."

Balaam offered to return, but the angel however told him to go on, but to speak only as God would direct him. Meeting Balak, he announced to him his purpose of saying only what the Lord would reveal. According to his direction seven altars were prepared, upon each of which Balak and Balaam offered a bull and a ram. Three times Balaam tried to speak against Israel, but his utterances were overruled by God, so that instead of cursing, there were blessings and magnificent prophecies, reaching forward until they told of "a star" coming "forth from Jacob" in Numbers 24:17.

Abraham's covenant of protection continued to extend towards his descendents, Numbers 24:9  
*"May those who bless you be blessed and those who curse you be cursed!"*

### Numbers 24:10-11

Then Balak's anger burned against Balaam. He struck his hands together and said to him, "I summoned you to curse my enemies, but you have blessed them these three times. Now leave at once and go home! I said I would reward you handsomely, but the Lord has kept you from being rewarded."

What is interesting to note is that even though Balaam could not curse Israel he did not want to leave empty handed since he was apparently a covetous man. He gave Balak some advice as to a manner by which he can do harm to Israel. Balaam is accused by Moses of seducing the Israelites to commit fornication in Numbers 31:16. The affect of this is recorded in chapter 25. A battle was fought afterward with the Midianites, in which Balaam sided with them and was slain according to Numbers 31:8.

The **"error of Balaam"** in Jude 11 was the diviner-prophet's mistake of pitting God against Israel. Concluding that if he could entice Israel to sin, God would be obligated to judge them for it.

### Jude 11

**Woe to them! They have taken the way of Cain; they have rushed for profit into Balaam's error; they have been destroyed in Korah's rebellion.**

The **"way of Balaam"** in 2 Peter 2:15 is the covetous conduct of the typical hireling prophet, solicitous only to commercialize his gift.

### 2 Peter 2:15-16

**They have left the straightway and wandered off to follow the way of Balaam son of Beor, who loved the wages of wickedness. But he was rebuked for his wrongdoing by a donkey — a beast without speech — who spoke with a man's voice and restrained the prophet's madness.**

The **“teaching of Balaam”** in Revelation 2:14 was the teaching of the mercenary seer to abandon godly character and separation from the world in favor of worldly indulgence.

#### **Revelation 2:14**

**Nevertheless, I have a few things against you: You have people there who hold to the teaching of Balaam, who taught Balak to entice the Israelites to sin by eating food sacrificed to idols and by committing sexual immorality.**

This tactic of doing harm to God’s people by enticing them into sin is a practice that was conceived by Satan and is what the World System is all about.

#### **2 Corinthians 6:14-7:1**

**Do not be yoked together with unbelievers. For what do righteousness and wickedness have in common? Or what fellowship can light have with darkness? What harmony is there between Christ and Belial? What does a believer have in common with an unbeliever? What agreement is there between the temple of God and idols? For we are the temple of the living God. As God has said: “I will live with them and walk among them, and I will be their God, and they will be my people.”**

**“Therefore come out from them  
and be separate,  
says the Lord.**

**Touch no unclean thing,  
and I will receive you.”  
“I will be a Father to you,  
and you will be my sons and daughters,  
says the Lord Almighty.”**

**Since we have these promises, dear friends, let us purify ourselves from everything that contaminates body and spirit, perfecting holiness out of reverence for God.**

**1 John 2:15-17- Do not love the world or anything in the world. If anyone loves the world, the love of the Father is not in him. For everything in the world — the cravings of sinful man, the lust of his eyes and the boasting of what he has and does — comes not from the Father but from the world. The world and its desires pass away, but the man who does the will of God lives forever.**

## **12. Joshua Succeeds Moses**

When the Lord was preparing Moses for his death, He reminded him that he had disqualified himself from entering in due to striking the rock instead of speaking to it as instructed. Yet Moses was not bitter from what we can tell, as a matter of fact the first thing that was on his mind was to ask the Lord to find a replacement for him to continue to watch over the people as a shepherd .

#### **Numbers 27:15-17**

**Moses said to the Lord, “May the Lord, the God of the spirits of all mankind, appoint a man over this community to go out and come in before them, one who will lead them out and bring them in, so the Lord’s people will not be like sheep without a shepherd.”**

Moses was a true leader even to the end, yes he made some mistakes along the way, received advice from his father-in-law Jethro but over all there has been no one like him in all history.

## The Borders of the Promised Land

For more reading: **Number 33:50-34:18; 36; Dt 3:12-20**

Not exactly the size of the nation of Israel today- missed God's best, a lesson for all of us.



### **Taking Canaan- Deuteronomy 7; 9:1-6**

Some very important instructions were given to Israel in regards to them taking possession of the Promised Land. God made it very clear for them to completely destroy these nations, down to the last person. This may seem harsh, but these folks had become so corrupt, it was an act of mercy preventing others from being born under such wicked circumstances. In Genesis, God makes reference of this to Abraham.

### **Genesis 15:16**

**“In the fourth generation your descendants will come back here, for the sin of the Amorites has not yet reached its full measure.”**

This special directive from God was unique to that dispensational period under the Old Covenant, where the whole nation of Israel belonged to God. There is no such directive for the Dispensation of Grace that we live under today. For us, the message is a gospel of reconciliation to the nations. When Jesus returns for the Church, that dispensation ends and Daniel’s seventieth week (7 year tribulation period) commences. The nation of Israel is permitted one last time to fulfill their destiny and evangelize the world- 144,000 Jewish witnesses. All of this is pertinent to Eschatology or End Time teaching, we can’t get into that right now. At the second return of Jesus, He puts to death everyone who had accepted the mark of the Beast and rejected God’s plan of salvation for them- Revelation 19:11-21. The point is, I believe that it was unscriptural to have the Crusades during the Middle Ages, we do not advance Christianity through violence on people during this age of Grace. Our warfare is not with flesh and blood but with the powers of darkness- Ephesians 6:10-20.

### **Deuteronomy 7:6**

**For you are a people holy to the Lord your God. The Lord your God has chosen you out of all the peoples on the face of the earth to be his people, his treasured possession.**

God makes some real powerful points concerning Israel. Why all the special attention given to them instead of anybody else, is God a respecter of persons? No I don’t believe He is! In the Garden of Eden God promised that a man born of woman would come and crush Satan’s head, take the authority he had stolen from Adam. God needed a nation to bring this about, He found Abraham and chose him because God foreknew the qualities of the man, particularly that he would be faithful to pass this covenant down to his children so that all that God had promised would come to pass.

### **Genesis 17:3-8**

**Abram fell facedown, and God said to him, “As for me, this is my covenant with you: You will be the father of many nations. No longer will you be called Abram; your name will be Abraham, for I have made you a father of many nations. I will make you very fruitful; I will make nations of you, and kings will come from you. I will establish my covenant as an everlasting covenant between me and you and your descendants after you for the generations to come, to be your God and the God of your descendants after you. The whole land of Canaan, where you are now an alien, I will give as an everlasting possession to you and your descendants after you; and I will be their God.”**

### **Genesis 18:19**

**“For I have chosen him, so that he will direct his children and his household after him to keep the way of the Lord by doing what is right and just, so that the Lord will bring about for Abraham what he has promised him.”**

So the bottom line is, God kept His Covenant obligations that enabled Him to act on their behalf on such a grand scale. God was showing Himself to the world as the One True God through Israel so they would come to him and enter into Covenant, looking forward to the coming Savior through Israel.

This is why Satan hates Israel so much, because of this everlasting covenant. It was through Israel that Jesus came and defeated him 2,000 years ago. During the millennial reign, Jerusalem will be the capital of the world, where Jesus will rule in a earthly kingdom while Satan is locked away for 1,000 years in the Abyss- Revelations chapter 20, very cool stuff!

### **Deuteronomy 7:8-10**

**But it was because the Lord loved you and kept the oath he swore to your forefathers that he brought you out with a mighty hand and redeemed you from the land of slavery, from the power of Pharaoh king of Egypt. Know therefore that the Lord your God is God; he is the faithful God, keeping his covenant of love to a thousand generations of those who love him and keep his commands.**

God warned the people of Israel not to intermarry with their neighbors or have a treaty with them of any kind; less their pagan idolatrous ways would infiltrate their society and cause them to commit spiritual adultery. This in turn would bring about their demise which history proved out to be the case.

### **James 4:4 AMP**

**You [are like] unfaithful wives [having illicit love affairs with the world and breaking your marriage vow to God]! Do you not know that being the world's friend is being God's enemy? So whoever chooses to be a friend of the world takes his stand as an enemy of God.**

Oh the incredible potential they had of blessing and protection, to be God's showcase on the earth, if they would just obey His commands- that was it, simple right?

### **Deuteronomy 7:11-12**

**Therefore, take care to follow the commands, decrees and laws I give you today. If you pay attention to these laws and are careful to follow them, then the Lord your God will keep his covenant of love with you, as he swore to your forefathers.**

**\*\*\* The following is a series of Admonitions(Warnings) for the people of Israel \*\*\***

### 13. Don't Forget the Lord - **Deuteronomy 8:1-20**

There is a key to understanding why God led them through the desert and provided for them as He did. The Lord was trying to instill in them a lifestyle of obedience to God's Word, to seek God first in everything as their source. To never put confidence in man, but to honor the Lord by obeying His Word always. God speaks prophetically concerning the future, in regards to the Promised Land; God's awesome provision for their lives, God's Covenant promise to Abraham.

However, God warns them about the trap of self-sufficiency, becoming arrogant, forgetting about God who graciously had given them all this. Being so presumptuous as to think, by their own skill and wisdom they became wealthy, taking the credit; but it was God who gave them this ability, because He honors His Covenant of Love- so it is for us today, please don't forget this principle! God gave them a solemn warning, that if they became unfaithful in their relationship with Him, they would be no different than the world and would suffer as they have at the hand of Satan. This principle is absolute in the Scriptures and is referred to numerous times in different ways!

Please read Nehemiah 9:9-37 – A warning concerning Israel's prosperity – caused them to forget God!

### **Fear the Lord - Deuteronomy 10:12-22**

To fear the Lord is a reverential awe of God. One would not dare to do anything that would displease Him, because our God is an awesome God. This does not speak of the tormenting variety of fear that Satan uses; a spirit of fear to hold people in bondage.

### **Deuteronomy 10:12-13**

**And now, O Israel, what does the Lord your God ask of you but to fear the Lord your God, to walk in all his ways, to love him, to serve the Lord your God with all your heart and with all your soul, and to observe the Lord's commands and decrees that I am giving you today for your own good?**

This kind of fear has a purifying and consecrating affect that keeps us from evil. This would make a great word study, "Fear of the Lord" as mentioned often times in the book of Proverbs.

### **Proverbs 16:6**

**Through love and faithfulness sin is atoned for; through the fear of the Lord a man avoids evil.**

### **Love and Obey the Lord - Deuteronomy 11; 32:44-47**

For Old Covenant and New Covenant saints alike; it really comes down to simple obedience to God's Word. Obey God and be blessed, disobey God and the devil is just waiting to wreak havoc in our life.

### **1 John 5:2-3**

**This is how we know that we love the children of God: by loving God and carrying out his commands. This is love for God: to obey his commands. And his commands are not burdensome.**

Like with Abraham, the key to perpetual obedience is to impress these things on each new generation so they can carry on in God's commandments and remain faithful to His Covenant- it is true today. This is why children and youth ministry is so vital. That is why Satan is so diligent to target the young with his propaganda so they will follow his agenda instead of God's will.

### **Deuteronomy 11:13-21**

**So if you faithfully obey the commands I am giving you today — to love the Lord your God and to serve him with all your heart and with all your soul — then I will send rain on your land in its season, both autumn and spring rains, so that you may gather in your grain, new wine and oil. I will provide grass in the fields for your cattle, and you will eat and be satisfied. Be careful, or you will be enticed to turn away and worship other gods and bow down to them. Then the Lord's anger will burn against you, and he will shut the heavens so that it will not rain and the ground will yield no produce, and you will soon perish from the good land the Lord is giving you. Fix these words of mine in your hearts and minds; tie them as symbols on your hands and bind them on your foreheads. Teach them to your children, talking about them when you sit at home and when you walk along the road, when you lie down and when you get up. Write them on the doorframes of your houses and on your gates, so that your days and the days of your children may be many in the land that the Lord swore to give your forefathers, as many as the days that the heavens are above the earth.**

### **Life and Death - Deuteronomy 30:11-20**

This is a very famous passage of Scripture in the Bible because it sets the ultimate ultimatum for mankind. It calls upon our God given free-will to choose. Our decisions determine our destiny, so God is beseeching that all mankind choose God's way of life and blessing, the alternative is death. Remember that the blessings and promises in the Old Covenant can be claimed by us in the New Covenant according to 2 Corinthians 1:18-20; Satan still works those same curses today as well.

## Some More Great Reading:

The Lord is God-	Deuteronomy 4:32-40; 6:1-25
Reward for Obedience -	Leviticus 26:1-13; Deuteronomy 4:1-31; 28:1-14; 30:1-10
Punishment for Disobedience -	Leviticus 26:14-46; Deuteronomy 28:15-68
Israel's Rebellion Predicted-	Deuteronomy 31:14-29
Worshipping other gods	Deuteronomy 13
Detestable Practices	Deuteronomy 18:9-13; Leviticus 18

## Bonus Reading:

The Prophet-	Deuteronomy 18:14
Going to War-	Deuteronomy 20
Two or Three Witnesses –	Deuteronomy 19:15
The First Born-	Deuteronomy 21:15
Rebellious Son-	Deuteronomy 21:18

## **Moses Dies - Deuteronomy 32:48-52; 34**

The Lord instructs Moses to climb Mount Nebo to look at the Promised Land that he was not allowed to enter. Even though he was 120 years old, he still had his eyesight and strength- God is good!

### **Deuteronomy 34:5-8**



**And Moses the servant of the Lord died there in Moab, as the Lord had said. He buried him in Moab, in the valley opposite Beth Peor, but to this day no one knows where his grave is. Moses was a hundred and twenty years old when he died, yet his eyes were not weak nor his strength gone. The Israelites grieved for Moses in the plains of Moab thirty days, until the time of weeping and mourning was over**

Moses makes the Faith Hall of fame, a fitting tribute to a life of great meaning and worth!

## **Hebrews 11:23-29**

**By faith Moses' parents hid him for three months after he was born, because they saw he was no ordinary child, and they were not afraid of the king's edict. By faith Moses, when he had grown up, refused to be known as the son of Pharaoh's daughter. He chose to be mistreated along with the people of God rather than to enjoy the pleasures of sin for a short time. He regarded disgrace for the sake of Christ as of greater value than the treasures of Egypt, because he was looking ahead to his reward. By faith he left Egypt, not fearing the king's anger; he persevered because he saw him who is invisible. By faith he kept the Passover and the sprinkling of blood, so that the destroyer of the firstborn would not touch the firstborn of Israel. By faith the people passed through the Red Sea as on dry land; but when the Egyptians tried to do so, they were drowned.**

An interesting side note concerning the body of Moses after his death in the book of Jude 9 *"But even the archangel Michael, when he was disputing with the devil about the body of Moses, did not dare to bring a slanderous accusation against him, but said, 'The Lord rebuke you!'"*

Unit 12 Review:

Using Korah's rebellion as an example; why is intercession important to us today?

---

---

---

How is the "Bronze Snake" significant to us today as a type and shadow back then?

---

---

---

What does the Scriptures mean by "Balaam's error" and why could he not curse Israel?

---

---

---

What impresses you the most about Moses, his life and ministry- any lessons learned?

---

---

---

Why did God choose Israel, what was His purpose in forming this nation?

---

---

---

"Don't forget the Lord!" How does that admonition apply to us today especially in America?

---

---

---

## IV. The Old Order

Along with giving the Ten Commandments, God gave some additional directions. He gave special instructions for building a Tabernacle, for establishing an elaborate system of sacrifices, and for ordaining a priesthood. After receiving these instructions, Moses built an altar and offered a sacrifice to God. He took the blood of the sacrificed animals and splashed it against the altar. Then after publicly reading the Ten Commandments and other laws before the nation, he applied blood to the people themselves.

In the same manner, he sprinkled blood over the Book of the Covenant containing the Ten Commandments and all the laws. Later he would sprinkle blood over the Tabernacle and all its furnishings used in worship as well as those who would minister as priests- Hebrews 9:18-22.

### **Exodus 24:8**

**Moses then took the blood, sprinkled it on the people and said, “This is the blood of the covenant that the LORD has made with you in accordance with all these words.”**

As we see, God never intended for the Hebrews to approach Him by trying to keep the Ten Commandments. The Ten Commandments can't offer the blood evidence of a life given. God intended the Hebrews to approach Him the way He had always intended, through a blood sacrifice for the forgiveness of sin. That's His provision. That's His only provision. Just as in the beginning, Abel offered God a blood sacrifice that God was pleased with; while Cain offered the fruit of the land, the works of his hands which did not meet God's specifications. These two offerings speak prophetically to human history. Either we follow God's requirements for blood or we invent something on our own called religion- See Romans 10:1-10.

### **Genesis 4:2-7**

**Now Abel kept flocks, and Cain worked the soil. In the course of time Cain brought some of the fruits of the soil as an offering to the LORD. But Abel brought fat portions from some of the firstborn of his flock. The LORD looked with favor on Abel and his offering, but on Cain and his offering he did not look with favor. So Cain was very angry, and his face was downcast. Then the LORD said to Cain, “Why are you angry? Why is your face downcast? **If you do what is right, will you not be accepted?** But if you do not do what is right, sin is crouching at your door; it desires to have you, but you must master it.”**

God had in mind that when the Hebrew heard the Ten Commandments he would run as fast as he could to the Tabernacle, kill a lamb and offer the blood in his place as a substitute sin offering to a holy God. Therefore God established a Tabernacle, a sacrifice system and a priesthood as the way for the Hebrew to approach Him.

The Hebrew was not to approach God by The Ten Commandments but through the sacrifices administered by the priest at the Tabernacle. The purpose of the Ten Commandments was to point out and identify what sin is- Romans 7:7, *“Indeed I would not have known what sin was except through the law.”* It was already a given that the people would sin due to the sinful nature. Under the Old Covenant, God's solution was the Levitical priesthood offering blood sacrifice that only covered sin, until the blood of Jesus would be shed to take it away permanently.

### Romans 3:20, 25-26

**Therefore no one will be declared righteous in his sight by observing the law; rather, through the law we become conscious of sin. God presented him as a sacrifice of atonement, through faith in his blood. He did this to demonstrate his justice, because in his forbearance he had left the sins committed beforehand unpunished- he did it to demonstrate his justice at the present time, so as to be just and the one who justifies those who have faith in Jesus.**

Under the New Covenant, Jesus has become our Great High Priest and His blood remits our sins from us forever, without a trace- no more bondage, just glorious liberty! Even though Jesus descended from the tribe of Judah, and no one was to serve as a priest unless they could trace their lineage from the tribe of Levi, God overrides this regulation by making a decree, a proclamation that supersedes the law.

### Hebrews 7:17-25

**For it is declared: “You are a priest forever, in the order of Melchizedek.” The former regulation is set aside because it was weak and useless (for the law made nothing perfect), and a better hope is introduced, by which we draw near to God. And it was not without an oath! Others became priests without any oath, but he became a priest with an oath when God said to him: “The Lord has sworn and will not change his mind: ‘You are a priest forever.’” Because of this oath, Jesus has become the guarantee of a better covenant. Now there have been many of those priests, since death prevented them from continuing in office; but because Jesus lives forever, he has a permanent priesthood. Therefore he is able to save completely those who come to God through him, because he always lives to intercede for them.**

Psalm 50:5, *“Gather to me my consecrated ones, who made a covenant with me by sacrifice.”*

God reminded His people that He entered into covenant with them by sacrifice. Colossians 2: 17 and Hebrews 10:1 tells us that God established this way to approach Him as shadows of the real Tabernacle, the real sacrifice and the real High Priest who would come later.

Then when the “real thing” came along, there would be no more need to bring animals to a building to be offered by a priest, because the ultimate sacrifice will have been made, all believers would be priests, the Temple would be in us and the laws would be written on our hearts. What God established in the Old Covenant was a temporary, preliminary system pointing the Hebrews in the direction of the New Covenant so that they would recognize Jesus, the “Seed of Abraham” when He came on the scene.



The earthly Tabernacle symbolically represents and points us to the real Tabernacle who is Jesus Christ. God gave the Tabernacle and the details of its construction to portray in a temporary way, what He would one day do permanently through Jesus Christ. We are going to discover that the Tabernacle is a visible picture, or model, showing us how we come to God through Jesus Christ. From the foundations of the world, there's only been one way- Jesus is the only way!

## A. The Tabernacle

God gave precise instructions to Moses in how to construct the natural replica of God's tabernacle that was already in heaven.



### **Exodus 25:1-9**

**The LORD said to Moses, “Tell the Israelites to bring me an offering. You are to receive the offering for me from each man whose heart prompts him to give. These are the offerings you are to receive from them: gold, silver and bronze; blue, purple and scarlet yarn and fine linen; goat hair; ram skins dyed red and hides of sea cows; acacia wood; olive oil for the light; spices for the anointing oil and for the fragrant incense; and onyx stones and other gems to be mounted on the ephod and breast piece. “Then have them make a sanctuary for me, and I will dwell among them. Make this tabernacle and all its furnishings exactly like the pattern I will show you.”**

### **Hebrews 8:1-8**

**The point of what we are saying is this: We do have such a high priest, who sat down at the right hand of the throne of the Majesty in heaven, and who serves in the sanctuary, the true tabernacle set up by the Lord, not by man. Every high priest is appointed to offer both gifts and sacrifices, and so it was necessary for this one also to have something to offer. If he were on earth, he would not be a priest, for there are already men who offer the gifts prescribed by the law. They serve at a sanctuary that is a copy and shadow of what is in heaven. This is why Moses was warned when he was about to build the tabernacle: “See to it that you make everything according to the pattern shown you on the mountain.” But the ministry Jesus has received is as superior to theirs as the covenant of which he is mediator is superior to the old one, and it is founded on better promises. For if there had been nothing wrong with that first covenant, no place would have been sought for another. But God found fault with the people...**

The tabernacle was to be the place where God will meet and dwell with His covenant people. God gives Moses detailed instructions on how to build the Tabernacle in Exodus 25-27; 30-31; 35-38 describes its construction and addresses the making of the priestly Garments- Exodus 28-29, 39. Now the reason God gave such detailed instructions is because this earthly Tabernacle is to foreshadow and be patterned after the real Tabernacle which was then in Heaven. Nothing could be left to chance or man's imagination.

The Tabernacle was the place where the children of Israel would bring their sacrifices for sin and sacrifices of praise. They could only do this at the Tabernacle. They couldn't make sacrifices out in the hills or just anywhere they wanted. They had to approach God this one way through the Tabernacle. The Hebrew had to come to the Tabernacle to get to God. He couldn't approach God his own way. Just as it is today, the only way to God is through Jesus Christ. There is no such thing as many paths leading to God, there is only one Lord, one faith and one Baptism according to Ephesians 4:4-5.

The Tabernacle was portable so that the Hebrews could carry it with them on their journey. Later, when they got into their promised land, a more permanent structure was needed. God then used King Solomon to build a Temple- See 1 Kings 5-8. Solomon's Temple was destroyed in 587 B.C. when Jerusalem finally fell to the Babylonians- 2 Kings 25:8-9.

When they returned to their land from Babylon captivity, they rebuilt their Temple; this was in 536 B.C. Ezra 1:1-2. However, because of meager resources, this Temple was not as glorious as Solomon's Temple. When the foundations were laid, the old men who had seen Solomon's Temple "wept for sorrow" in Haggai 2:3. About 19 B.C. Herod began to restore this Temple making it more grand and majestic. In 70 A.D. the Temple was destroyed again this time by the Romans. The Bible tells us the Jews will rebuild the Temple in the latter days just before the return of Jesus Christ- Revelation 11: 1; Daniel 9:27.

## 1. The Campsite

The tribes of Israel were camped around the Tabernacle in specific locations which God assigned to each of them. Also, each tribe flew its own flag. Speaking to Moses and Aaron, God says in Numbers 2:2, "Each tribe will have its own tent area, with its flag pole and tribal banner; and at the center of these tribal compounds will be the Tabernacle." Then God assigns the tribal locations as recorded in the rest of Numbers chapters 2 & 3.

On the eastern side was the tribe of Judah. The flag for the tribe of Judah was a lion of gold on a field of scarlet. The western tribe was Ephraim. Its flag was a black ox on a field of gold. The southern tribe was Reuben. Reuben's flag was a man on a field of gold. Then on the north side was the tribe of Dan. Its flag was a golden eagle on a field of blue. The four symbols are referenced again in Ezekiel 1:10 and Revelation 4:7. The lion represents the king that reigns supreme. The ox represents the lowly servant. The man represents the highest earthly being. The eagle represents the greatest heavenly being. Clustered around the Tabernacle itself were the Levite tents. The Levites were chosen by God to perform sacred duties at the Tabernacle on behalf of the people. The Levite tents surrounded the Tabernacle shielding the people from the wrath of God.

The flags of each tribe point us to the real banner of God, Jesus Christ, as He is portrayed in the four gospels. In Matthew, Jesus is presented as the King of the Jews- the lion from the tribe of Judah. In Mark, He is the suffering servant (the ox). In Luke, He is the Son of Man. In John, Jesus is revealed as the Son of God (the greatest heavenly being). As the Son of God, Jesus represents God to man. As the Son of Man, He represents man to God. Like the Levite, He stands between God and man shielding man from the wrath of God by His blood. Notice also, this typology is mentioned in the book of Revelation.

### **Revelation 4:6-8**

**In the center, around the throne, were four living creatures, and they were covered with eyes, in front and in back. The first living creature was like a lion, the second was like an ox, the third had a face like a man, the fourth was like a flying eagle. Each of the four living creatures had six wings and was covered with eyes all around, even under his wings. Day and night they never stop saying: "Holy, holy, holy is the Lord God Almighty, who was, and is, and is to come."**

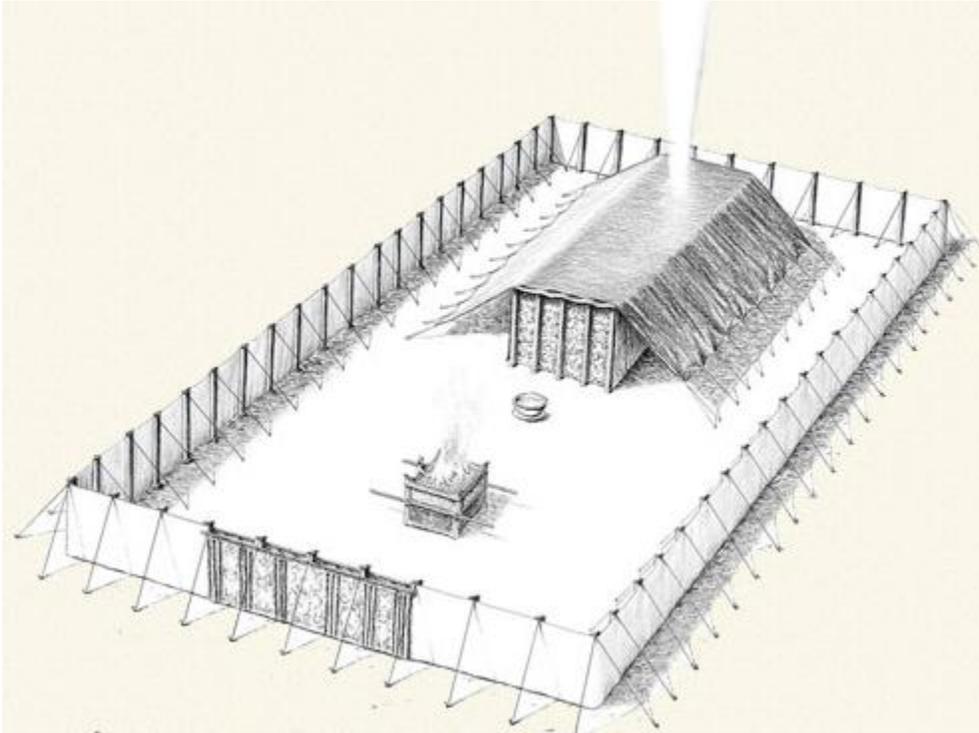
### **The Courtyard- Exodus 27:9-18; 38:9-20**

The Tabernacle stood inside an outer enclosure or courtyard. The size of this courtyard was 150 feet long and 75 feet wide. That's one-half the length of a football field, and about as wide. Now anyone could go inside the courtyard but only the priest could go inside the Tabernacle itself. There was yet a further restriction. Only the High Priest could enter the inner room called the Holy of Holies and he could only do this on one day of the year.

### **The Coverings- Exodus 26:14**

The Tabernacle had two coverings. The outer covering visible to the passerby was made of badgers skin. It was a dull, unattractive grayish color. The outsider wouldn't know about the majesty and glory inside the Tabernacle unless he entered in.

The other covering was directly underneath the badgers skin and not visible to the outside passerby. It was made of ram's skin that had been dyed red. Remember the ram was the substitutionary sacrifice for Isaac. And of course, in the Bible, red represents blood. There were also curtains made of linen and goats' hair. There is much more we could say about the courtyard, the fence, the framework and construction of the Tabernacle. It is a rich study in itself and all points to the greater Tabernacle made without hands. The goal for mankind is how to get into the inner room called the Holy of Holies where God dwells- our objective is to get to God.



John 1:1 (KJV) says, *“In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God and the Word was God.”* John continues this statement in verse 14 and says, John 1:14, *“The Word became flesh and made his dwelling among us. We have seen his glory, the glory of the One and Only, who came from the Father, full of grace and truth.”* The word that became flesh and dwelt among us is Jesus Christ (John 1:15; Revelation 19:13). The Greek word for dwelt is *skenoō*. It means to encamp, occupy, reside, indwell or “tabernacle.” God was tabernacled among us in the form of a man named Jesus Christ. In Him dwelled all the fullness of the Godhead bodily- Colossians 1:19; 2:9.

### **Matthew 1:22-23**

**All this took place to fulfill what the Lord had said through the prophet: “The virgin will be with child and will give birth to a son, and they will call him Immanuel”-which means, “God with us.”**

God's glory had dwelled in the Holy of Holies in the earthly Tabernacle and Temple made with hands; now it was to dwell in Jesus Christ, the heavenly Tabernacle made without hands. Jesus was made without hands in that He was begotten of God, not man. He was born of a virgin. It was His body that God prepared for Himself- Hebrews 2:14; 10:5. John beheld His glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father. Paul writes in 2 Corinthians 4:6 that the glory of God shines in the face of Jesus Christ. Paul even referred to Jesus as “the Lord of Glory” in 1 Corinthians 2:8.

### **Hebrews 1:1-3**

**In the past God spoke to our forefathers through the prophets at many times and in various ways, but in these last days he has spoken to us by his Son, whom he appointed heir of all things, and through whom he made the universe. The Son is the radiance of God's glory and the exact representation of his being, sustaining all things by his powerful word. After he had provided purification for sins, he sat down at the right hand of the Majesty in heaven.**

But like the badger's skin veiled God's glory in the earthly Tabernacle, it was also veiled in Jesus- Philippians 2:7. To the passerby, there was nothing exciting about this carpenter from Nazareth. Why, He looked just like everybody else. The casual observer on the outside wouldn't know the Lord of Glory was dwelling among them. But as the ram's skin that had been dyed red, the blood of God flowed underneath the outer shell of Jesus' body. It was to be the substitutionary blood to take away the sins of all who would enter into covenant with Him- He was that seed of Abraham!

Through the blood covenant, He would come to live in us by His Spirit. We then would become the new Tabernacle or dwelling place of God. After Jesus was resurrected, He appeared to His disciples to show them he was victorious over death, hell and the grave! On one occasion He breathed on them and said, "... receive the Holy Spirit" in John 20:22. Now that Jesus has sent the Holy Spirit, the Christian's body becomes the dwelling place of God. He no longer dwells in a tent in the desert, or brick and mortar on some street corner. He dwells in all who have entered into blood covenant with Him and received His Spirit. The individual Christian is now the temple of the Holy Spirit. The Lord of Glory has come to take up residence in all of His creation who will confess Jesus as Lord and believe that God has raised Him from the dead- Romans 10:9. Through the new birth, God now dwells in us- see 1Corinthians 3:16; 6:19-20; 2Corinthians 6:16; Ephesians 1:14; 2:21-22.

**1 Corinthians 3:16-17- Don't you know that you yourselves are God's temple and that God's Spirit lives in you? If anyone destroys God's temple, God will destroy him; for God's temple is sacred, and you are that temple.**

The world is clueless about this, it's up to us to share the Good News that all the riches of God's inheritance dwells in His people- Ephesians 1:11. The only way they'll find out is by coming into this perfect Tabernacle of God, Jesus Christ. They must become "in Christ" to experience the glory of God.

I feel a preach coming on! Yet to the casual observer, on the surface there is seemingly nothing exciting or special about being a Christian- ah but what is seen is not all that appears. We are the light of the world; this glory that abides in us must exhume and emit from us! The fruit of the Spirit in our lives is meant to be visible for the world to partake of and to taste and see the Lord in good through our lives. Our God is a consuming fire according to Hebrews 12:28-29, we have been baptized in the Holy Spirit and fire- it should be evident. Light a fire and people will come to watch it burn! Acts 4:13, "*When they saw the courage of Peter and John and realized that they were unschooled, ordinary men, they were astonished and they took note that these men had been with Jesus.*" When we live Spirit filled lives, the new wine and joy of the Lord should astound the world, that God Almighty truly lives within us and can live within them too through faith in Jesus Christ! We live under a better covenant than Moses, now through Jesus, we can reflect the Lord's glory with unveiled, unashamed faces. When the world asks us why we have so much Joy- then answer concerns reality, not religion!

### **2 Corinthians 3:4-18**

**Such confidence as this is ours through Christ before God. Not that we are competent in ourselves to claim anything for ourselves, but our competence comes from God. He has made us competent as ministers of a new covenant-not of the letter but of the Spirit; for the letter kills, but the Spirit gives life. Now if the ministry that brought death, which was engraved in letters on stone, came**

with glory, so that the Israelites could not look steadily at the face of Moses because of its glory, fading though it was, will not the ministry of the Spirit be even more glorious? If the ministry that condemns men is glorious, how much more glorious is the ministry that brings righteousness! For what was glorious has no glory now in comparison with the surpassing glory. And if what was fading away came with glory, how much greater is the glory of that which lasts! Therefore, since we have such a hope, we are very bold. We are not like Moses, who would put a veil over his face to keep the Israelites from gazing at it while the radiance was fading away. But their minds were made dull, for to this day the same veil remains when the old covenant is read. It has not been removed, because only in Christ is it taken away. Even to this day when Moses is read, a veil covers their hearts. But whenever anyone turns to the Lord, the veil is taken away. Now the Lord is the Spirit, and where the Spirit of the Lord is, there is freedom. And we, **who with unveiled faces all reflect the Lord's glory, are being transformed into his likeness with ever-increasing glory, which comes from the Lord, who is the Spirit.**

## 2. Entrance Gate



First, you will notice there is only one way to get into the courtyard. This way is through the eastern opening called the GATE. You cannot get to God except you enter through the eastern Gate. This is the only way in. As you approach the Gate, you must have an acceptable sacrifice to get in. Here is another example of God showing us that Jesus is the only way to God- Exodus 27:16.

### John 10:7-10

Therefore Jesus said again, “I tell you the truth, I am the gate for the sheep. All who ever came before me were thieves and robbers, but the sheep did not listen to them. I am the gate; whoever enters through me will be saved. He will come in and go out, and find pasture. The thief comes only to steal and kill and destroy; I have come that they may have life, and have it to the full.”

The Gate into the Tabernacle was on the eastern side. The tribe of Judah camped in front of the Gate. Remember its flag was a lion of gold on a field of scarlet. Speaking of the Temple that was later constructed, Ezekiel says, Ezekiel 43:4, “The glory of the LORD entered the temple through the gate facing east.” The Hebrew had to come through this Gate to get to God. There was no other way. Jesus’ lineage is of the tribe of Judah. Gold represents deity. The lion is the king that reigns supreme; yet he’s covered by a field of scarlet blood. Revelation 5:5 says, “Jesus is the Lion from the tribe of Judah.” The tribe of Judah, its flag and the Eastern Gate all pointed the Hebrew to Jesus Christ who said...

### John 14:6

Jesus answered, “I am the way and the truth and the life. No one comes to the Father except through me.”

### 3. Brazen Altar



The first object staring you in the face as you enter the courtyard is the BRAZEN ALTAR (brazen means brass)- Exodus 27:1-8; 38:1-7. It is seven and a half feet square and four and a half feet high. The Altar is the place where you make your sacrifice. It is called the “Altar of Burnt Offering” in Exodus 30:28. Leviticus 1:9 describes the burnt offering as, “an aroma pleasing to the Lord”- it is the smell of atonement for sin. You cannot be pardoned from sin and blessed by the priest until you come to this Altar with a sacrifice. You can be the most moral Jew in your tribe but you still

have to bring the sacrifice. You can have lots of good works but you still have to bring the sacrifice. Remember the Ten Commandments, the people, the Tabernacle and all its furnishings were sprinkled with blood. You don’t approach God by trying to keep the Ten Commandments but by the blood sacrifice that God has ordained as acceptable to Him. Under the Old Covenant, apart from the Brazen Altar, you cannot approach God at all. God summarizes this way to approach Him in the book of Leviticus.

#### **Leviticus 17:11-14**

**For the life of a creature is in the blood, and I have given it to you to make atonement for yourselves on the altar; it is the blood that makes atonement for one’s life. Therefore I say to the Israelites, “None of you may eat blood, nor may an alien living among you eat blood.” “Any Israelite or any alien living among you who hunts any animal or bird that may be eaten must drain out the blood and cover it with earth, because the life of every creature is its blood.” That is why I have said to the Israelites, “You must not eat the blood of any creature, because the life of every creature is its blood; anyone who eats it must be cut off.”**

In God’s economy, blood is sacred, it represents life, which God has ordained as the only acceptable payment for sin and the penalty of death. Jesus speaking of communion said in Matthew 26:28, “*For this is My blood of the new covenant, which is shed for many for the remission of sins.*” Hebrews chapters 9 & 10 have much more to say about the blood of Jesus being the final payment for sin.

#### **Romans 3:25-26**

**God presented him as a sacrifice of atonement, through faith in his blood. He did this to demonstrate his justice, because in his forbearance he had left the sins committed beforehand unpunished.**

#### **Ephesians 1:7**

**In him we have redemption through his blood, the forgiveness of sins, in accordance with the riches of God’s grace.**

Remember that in blood covenant, the sacrifice represents you, and will take your place on the Altar. And now as you bring your sacrifice to the Altar, you lay (heavily lean) your hands on the head of the animal claiming its death as a sacrifice on your behalf. Unless you claim the animal as your sin sacrifice, you cannot be accepted and declared clean. Only with the blood at the Brazen Altar can you enter the Tabernacle and get to God. As you press your hand heavily on the animal's head and kill it, the priest, standing there with you, pours out the blood of the animal at the foot of the Altar.

You approach God by faith, believing in your heart, that through the blood covenant, your sins are symbolically being transmitted to this animal. The slain animal becomes your personal sin substitute. Of course, you realize that the blood of an animal cannot take away your sins. The blood of the animal will cover your sins until God Himself comes to take them away forever- JESUS!

### **John 1:29**

**The next day John saw Jesus coming toward him and said, "Look, the Lamb of God, who takes away the sin of the world!"**

I would imagine today, many animal rights activities would be outraged at the scale of animal sacrifice that occurred for an entire nation back in Old Covenant times. There is nothing pleasant or pretty about cutting the throat of an animal and collecting its blood. Yet God choose this method as an object lesson for us to illustrate the awfulness of sin. God's justice demands an innocent life as payment for the wages of sin which is death. Satan had taken humanity ransom through sin, and Jesus' blood was the payment to satisfy God's justice. Someone had to pay, but not just anyone; only a perfect sinless substitute would be acceptable to the Ancient of Days.

### **Matthew 20:28**

**"...just as the Son of Man did not come to be served, but to serve, and to give his life as a ransom for many."**

**Hebrews 9:15- "...now that he has died as a ransom to set them free from the sins committed under the first covenant."**

### **Hebrews 4:15-16**

**For we do not have a high priest who is unable to sympathize with our weaknesses, but we have one who has been tempted in every way, just as we are-yet was without sin. Let us then approach the throne of grace with confidence, so that we may receive mercy and find grace to help us in our time of need.**

The Brazen Altar represents the cross of Jesus. This is where the new covenant was cut. As the blood was poured out at the base of the Altar, the blood of Jesus was poured out at the foot of the cross. He gave Himself for us an offering and a sacrifice to God for a sweet smelling savor- Ephesians 5:2.

When Jesus appeared to His disciples right after the resurrection, He made an amazing statement...

### **Luke 24:38-39**

**He said to them, "Why are you troubled, and why do doubts rise in your minds? Look at my hands and my feet. It is I myself! Touch me and see; a ghost does not have flesh and bones, as you see I have."**

Notice that Jesus said, "Flesh and Bone" but what about His blood? He had already poured it out for us and taken it into the heavenly tabernacle, upon the mercy seat- having forever paid the price for our sins.

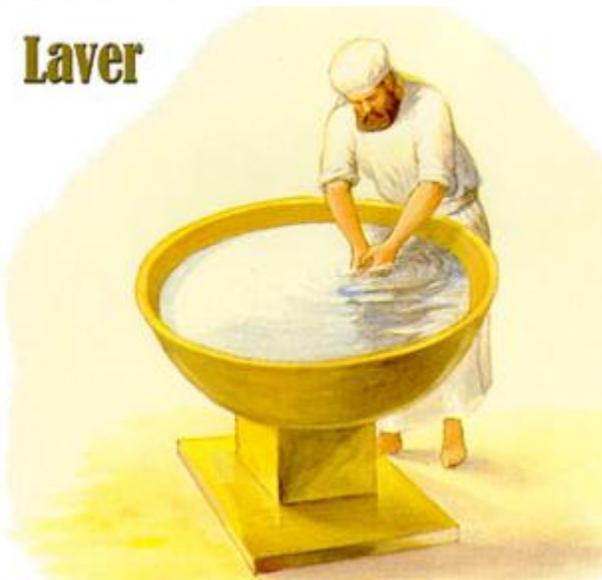
Remember in Romans 3:23, *“for all have sinned and fall short of the glory of God”* and in Romans 6:23, *“For the wages of sin is death, but the gift of God is eternal life in Christ Jesus our Lord.”* A thick veil blocks our way and keeps us from coming into the Holy of Holies where God dwells. Being the best moral and decent person in the community won’t help us. Good works cannot earn, merit or make us worthy of heaven- unless of course you can live the perfect life in absolute thought, action and motive. The Ten Commandments represent God’s Holy Laws, but they can’t save us because no one can follow them perfectly- so they end up condemning and judging us.

The only solution is found in the universal principle of a blood sacrifice from an innocent victim as a substitutionary transference of sin, taking the penalty in place of another. The life of the flesh is in the blood and without the shedding of blood there is no forgiveness of sin at all- Leviticus 17:11; Hebrews 9:22. According to Isaiah 64:6, all our so called self-righteousness is like filthy rags to God. We may be good compared to our neighbor, but our neighbor is not the standard that God uses. He compares us to Himself and none of us can measure up to His perfect absolute standards. It is absolutely impossible to approach God with our own goodness.

But Jesus, who knew no sin, became sin for us that we might be the righteousness of God in Him- 2 Corinthians 5:21. We approach God, not with our own righteousness but through faith in Christ Jesus- Philippians 3:9. When we personally accept by faith the blood of Jesus as our own substitutionary sacrifice for sin, His righteousness is imputed or counted to us. We then can enter into that more perfect Tabernacle in heaven, right into the heavenly Holy of Holies based on what Jesus did for us, not on what we try to do for God.

But where the blood of bulls and goats in the Old Covenant only covered sin, the blood of Jesus takes it away to be remembered no more. No more sacrifices are needed, for the once and for all sacrifice has been made- Hebrews 9-10. This is what Jesus meant when He cried from the cross, *“It is finished”* in John 20:30. The sin debt has been *“paid in full”* for all who receive it for themselves. All who will come to the cross of Jesus are to offer themselves to God as a living sacrifice- Romans 12:1. We become His purchased possession paid for by His own blood. Out of love to our divine covenant partner we, who claim the name *“Christian”*, are to glorify God in our body and spirit which belong to God- 1 Corinthians 3:16; 6:19-20 2 Corinthians 6:16; Ephesians 1:14; 2:21-22. Because of His great grace to enter into covenant with us, we give Him our worship, our praise, our thanksgiving, our very life.

#### 4. Brazen Laver



The next object you encounter is the **BRAZEN LAVER**. The Laver is a wash basin, perhaps *“four or five feet high, filled with water. It is made of polished brass that the women used as a looking glass or mirror. When Aaron and his sons were consecrated, or set apart as priests, they washed their entire body in the Laver (Exodus 29:4; Leviticus 8:6). This was a ceremonial cleansing. Thereafter, they only had to wash their hands and feet. God required them to wash their hands and feet before entering the Tabernacle and before ministering at the Altar. Exodus 30:17-21; 38:8.*

When Jesus went to wash the feet of the disciples, Peter protested, well meaning but not understanding. Look at what Jesus said...

**John 13:9-10- "Then, Lord," Simon Peter replied, "not just my feet but my hands and my head as well!" Jesus answered, "A person who has had a bath needs only to wash his feet; his whole body is clean, and you are clean..."**

We are born again once (totally immersed in living water), then after that as we walk in this world, we get sin on our hands and feet. Therefore, we have 1 John 1:9, to confess our sins and to be cleansed- we don't have to born again all over again!

### **Exodus 30:17-21**

**Then the LORD said to Moses, "Make a bronze basin, with its bronze stand, for washing. Place it between the Tent of Meeting and the altar, and put water in it. Aaron and his sons are to wash their hands and feet with water from it. Whenever they enter the Tent of Meeting, they shall wash with water so that they will not die. Also, when they approach the altar to minister by presenting an offering made to the LORD by fire, they shall wash their hands and feet so that they will not die. This is to be a lasting ordinance for Aaron and his descendants for the generations to come."**

Now as the priest ministered during the day, he would get dirty. So he would come to the Laver and wash. As he looked into the Laver, he would see himself in the polished brass. The Laver showed him how dirty he was and where he needed to wash. But at the same time it showed him how dirty he was, it also provided the water for his cleansing. Thus, the Laver not only showed him he was dirty, it also cleansed him. You cannot enter the Tabernacle unless you have a blood sacrifice and be washed clean in the Laver. You have to come to God by way of the water and blood- Hebrews 4:12; James 1:23-24; Ephesians 5:25-27.

### **1 John 5:6-8**

**This is the one who came by water and blood-Jesus Christ. He did not come by water only, but by water and blood. And it is the Spirit who testifies, because the Spirit is the truth. For there are three that testify: the Spirit, the water and the blood; and the three are in agreement.**

Whereas the Altar points to the death of Jesus, the Laver points to His life coming into us through the Holy Spirit. Remember the encounter Jesus had with a Jewish leader named Nicodemus who came at night to meet with him.

### **John 3:1-7**

**Now there was a man of the Pharisees named Nicodemus, a member of the Jewish ruling council. He came to Jesus at night and said, "Rabbi, we know you are a teacher who has come from God. For no one could perform the miraculous signs you are doing if God were not with him." In reply Jesus declared, "I tell you the truth, no one can see the kingdom of God unless he is born again." "How can a man be born when he is old?" Nicodemus asked. "Surely he cannot enter a second time into his mother's womb to be born!" Jesus answered, "I tell you the truth, no one can enter the kingdom of God unless he is born of water and the Spirit. Flesh gives birth to flesh, but the Spirit gives birth to spirit. You should not be surprised at my saying, 'You must be born again.'"**

Jesus met with the Samaritan woman by the well and Jesus brought up the subject of living water.

**John 4:13-14- Jesus answered, "Everyone who drinks this water will be thirsty again, but whoever drinks the water I give him will never thirst. Indeed, the water I give him will become in him a spring of water welling up to eternal life."**

At the Jewish feast of Tabernacles, when water from the pool of Siloam was being poured into a basin at the foot of the Altar, Jesus stood and proclaimed:

**John 7:37-39- On the last and greatest day of the Feast, Jesus stood and said in a loud voice, “If anyone is thirsty, let him come to me and drink. Whoever believes in me, as the Scripture has said, streams of living water will flow from within him.” By this he meant the Spirit, whom those who believed in him were later to receive. Up to that time the Spirit had not been given, since Jesus had not yet been glorified.**

Paul wrote that we receive the life of God through the blood covenant...

#### **Titus 3:5-7**

**He saved us, not because of righteous things we had done, but because of his mercy. He saved us through the washing of rebirth(regeneration) and renewal by the Holy Spirit, whom he poured out on us generously through Jesus Christ our Savior, so that, having been justified by his grace, we might become heirs having the hope of eternal life.**

The word for regeneration in the Greek is *paliggenesia*. It means to have a spiritual rebirth. God spoke of this spiritual cleansing through the Old Covenant prophet Ezekiel.

#### **Ezekiel 36:25-29**

**I will sprinkle clean water on you, and you will be clean; I will cleanse you from all your impurities and from all your idols. I will give you a new heart and put a new spirit in you; I will remove from you your heart of stone and give you a heart of flesh. And I will put my Spirit in you and move you to follow my decrees and be careful to keep my laws. You will live in the land I gave your forefathers; you will be my people, and I will be your God. I will save you from all your uncleanness.**

When we accept Jesus as our Savior, His blood cleanses us from all our sins, past, present and future- 1 John 1:7. His righteousness is imputed or counted to us- Romans 4:22-24; 2 Corinthians 5:21; Philippians 3:9; Romans 8:4. We are set aside to be ministering priests of the most high God. And we never have to go back to the Brazen Altar again. We never have to go back to the cross. The Holy Spirit seals us into the covenant- Ephesians 1:13; 4:30; 2 Corinthians 1:22; 1 Peter 1:3-5; Jude 24. The Holy Spirit testifies with our own human spirit that we are in blood covenant and a child of God- Romans 8:15-17.

Even as children of God, we still have a body with a sin nature, and our minds are in the process of being renewed with God’s Word; as a result when we sin, we break our fellowship with God. As we walk in the world ministering as a priest of God, we get dirty spiritually- we sin. We do not have to be born again, again- going back to the brazen altar so to speak. Instead we go to the Laver. When we go to the Laver, we don’t have to be washed all over again and be born again and again and again- John 13:10. We only have to wash our hands and feet which represents, not our position in the covenant, but our service to God and our walk with God. The water in the Laver points us to the Holy Spirit. The polished brass mirror points to the Word of God as revealed through the Bible. When we look into the Bible, it is like looking into a mirror. The Bible is God’s holy looking glass that reveals our sin.

#### **James 1:23-25**

**Anyone who listens to the word but does not do what it says is like a man who looks at his face in a mirror and, after looking at himself, goes away and immediately forgets what he looks like. But the man who looks intently into the perfect law that gives freedom, and continues to do this, not forgetting what he has heard, but doing it-he will be blessed in what he does.**

At the same time, the Bible is also like a tub of hot water that the Holy Spirit uses to cleanse us, as we allow Him to- the Holy Spirit uses the Bible to wash us clean. Ah, but that pesky dirty sin gets behind our ears and in difficult places to reach- like little kids we tend to resist a good bath. When we try to live life without regular bathing, we begin to stinketh. Oh we try to cover it up with speed stick deodorant or perfume of self-righteousness, but all we get is filthy rags- are you getting the idea?

The Holy Spirit scrubs us down with the Word of God real good; in all those places in our life where we're dirty. After this spiritual bath, we are cleaned from all unrighteousness according to 1 John 1:9. The same Word of God that reveals our sins also washes them away by the power of the Holy Spirit. This washing of our hands and feet by the Holy Spirit restores our fellowship with God, so like the Old Covenant priest, we can go into His presence and minister on His behalf to others with a clear conscience- John 17:17, "*Sanctify them by the truth; your word is truth.*"

### **Ephesians 5:26-27**

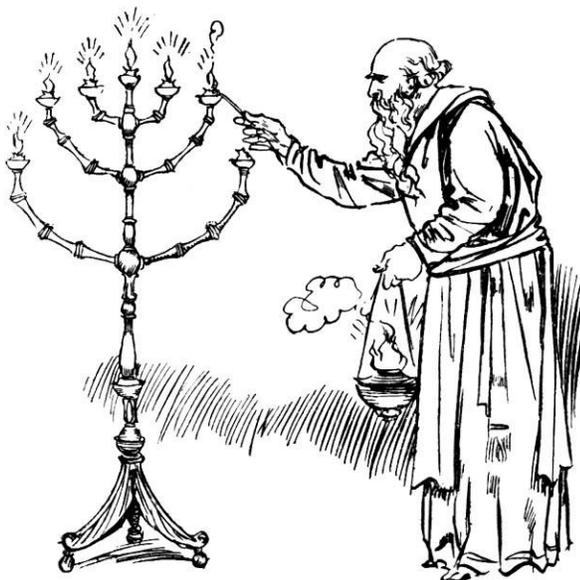
**...to make the church holy, cleansing her by the washing with water through the word, and to present her to himself as a radiant church, without stain or wrinkle or any other blemish, but holy and blameless.**

### **Hebrews 10:19-22**

**Therefore, brothers, since we have confidence to enter the Most Holy Place by the blood of Jesus, by a new and living way opened for us through the curtain, that is, his body, and since we have a great priest over the house of God, let us draw near to God with a sincere heart in full assurance of faith, having our hearts sprinkled to cleanse us from a guilty conscience and having our bodies washed with pure water.**

Remember, there is no conflict in the Bible between the Old Covenant shadow and the New Covenant fulfillment which it points to. If these were not in agreement, then the shadow wouldn't line up with the light and we would miss the light. The New Covenant light in Christ Jesus perfectly fulfills the Old Covenant shadow pointing to Him. Therefore, if there appears to be a conflict between the two, it means we have misinterpreted the Scripture. This is a safeguard God has built into His Word to help us rightly divide it.

## **5. The Holy Place**



You now approach the door of the Tabernacle. It is a linen veil of blue, purple and scarlet. Behind it are hidden the truths of God. Once inside, you see another veil that divides the Tabernacle into two rooms; the Holy Place and the Holy of Holies. The first outer room is called the Holy Place- Exodus 25:30-40; 37:10-28. The Holy of Holies is the inner room behind the veil. Behind this veil dwells the presence of God. You are trying to get into this inner room. But first you must pass through the Holy Place. There are three pieces of furnishings in the Holy Place; the Golden Candlestick, the Table of Shewbread, and the Incense Altar.

Now that we have come by way of the blood and the water, we can now enter through the Door of the Tabernacle. Jesus said in John 10:9 NKJV, *“I am the door. If anyone enters by Me, he will be saved, and will go in and out and find pasture.”*

### **Golden Candlestick- Exodus 25:31-39; 27:20-21; 37:17-24**

Immediately to your left is the GOLDEN CANDLESTICK. It weighs about 107 pounds and has seven branches. The middle branch is the central shaft that continually feeds oil to the other six branches. These six branches, in turn, illuminate the taller central shaft. They are trimmed morning and evening to insure continuous light. The Golden Candlestick provides all the light for the Holy Place. No natural light can get in.

The golden Candlestick points us to the triune Godhead: God the Father, God the Son and God the Holy Spirit. 1 John 1:5 says, *“God is light; in him there is no darkness at all.”* In John 9:5 Jesus said, *“While I am in the world, I am the light of the world.”* Yet on another occasion, Jesus speaking to all who would receive Him, said in Matthew 5:14, *“You are the light of the world...”* Ephesians 5:8, *“For you were once darkness, but now you are light in the Lord. Live as children of light.”*

### **John 1:4-5, 8:12**

**In him was life, and that life was the light of men. The light shines in the darkness, but the darkness has not overcome it. When Jesus spoke again to the people, he said, “I am the light of the world. Whoever follows me will never walk in darkness, but will have the light of life.”**

### **2 Corinthians 4:6**

**For God, who said, “Let light shine out of darkness,” made his light shine in our hearts to give us the light of the knowledge of the glory of God in the face of Christ.**

Now how can this be? How can God be the light, Jesus be the light, and Christians be the light? There's only one way, and Jesus explained it when He spoke of the time He would send the Holy Spirit to indwell believers. He said in John 14:20, *“On that day you will realize that I am in my Father, and you are in me, and I am in you.”* Believers in Christ have received the light of life in them in the person of the Holy Spirit. Since God the Father, God the Son and God the Holy Spirit all claim to be the light; they all have to be God. We, in turn, are light bearers, vessels or containers of this light of life since we are the temple of the Holy Spirit.

This is most clearly taught in the Golden Candlestick. Gold represents deity. The Candlestick itself represents God the Father. The central shaft points us to God the Son, Jesus Christ. The oil symbolizes God the Holy Spirit. The six branches fed by the Holy Spirit represent believers- the Church.

### **Revelation 1:12-13**

**I turned around to see the voice that was speaking to me. And when I turned I saw seven golden lamp stands, and among the lamp stands was someone “like a son of man,” dressed in a robe reaching down to his feet and with a golden sash around his chest.**

John saw Jesus standing in the midst of the Candlestick wearing His High Priestly clothing as He intercedes for the Church. As the central shaft fed oil to the six branches, the branches not only gave off light but also illuminated the central shaft. Likewise, Jesus has sent the Holy Spirit to indwell all believers. The Holy Spirit is our power source. Through His life flowing in us, we not only give off light; but we also illuminate and draw attention to Jesus.

The Candlestick provided the only light in the Tabernacle. No natural light could get in. This points to the Christian walking in the power of the Holy Spirit (being fed by the oil) rather than trying to serve Jesus in the energy of the flesh. We cannot give off light nor glorify Jesus Christ by trying to serve God through our own natural abilities. Striving to keep the Ten Commandments, or a list of do's and don'ts, this only leads to failure, frustration and defeat. It will never glorify Jesus Christ. That is the work of the Holy Spirit, it is His light that is to shine before men. When His light is shining, others will see His good works in our life and God will be glorified- Matthew 5:16.

By good works, Jesus does not mean "being active in all the programs at the church." He means that His own character of holiness and righteousness is to be manifested through us by the power of the Holy Spirit- John 15:26; 16:14; Ephesians 1:4; 2:10; Galatians 5:22-25. As the branches of the candlestick were trimmed morning and evening to insure continuous light, the believer must continuously be filled with the Holy Spirit in order to radiate the light of life in him/her.

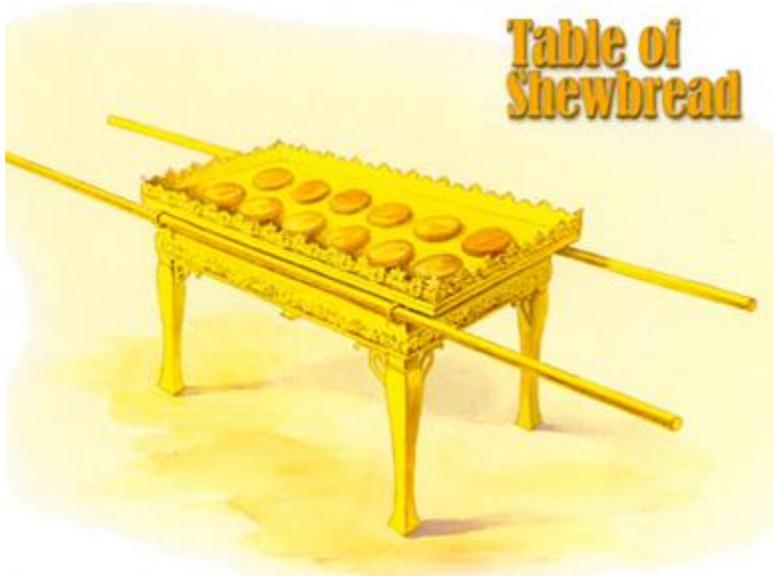
#### **Acts 2:4**

**All of them were filled with the Holy Spirit and began to speak in other tongues as the Spirit enabled them.**

#### **Ephesians 5:18-20**

**Do not get drunk on wine, which leads to debauchery. Instead, be filled with the Spirit. Speak to one another with psalms, hymns and spiritual songs. Sing and make music in your heart to the Lord, always giving thanks to God the Father for everything, in the name of our Lord Jesus Christ.**

#### **Table of Shewbread- Exodus 25:23-30; 37:10-16**



To your right, directly across from the Golden Candlestick, is the TABLE OF SHEWBREAD. This table was three feet long, one and a half feet wide and two and a half feet high. Twelve loaves of bread (one loaf for each of the twelve tribes) are placed on the table in two heaps of six loaves. Then the loaves are covered with frankincense. Every Sabbath the old loaves are removed and eaten by the priests and new loaves are placed on the table. On the table beside the loaves are trays and vessels of wine. The Table of Shewbread, with the accompanying

bread and wine, represent the blood covenant meal. The covenant is cut at the Brazen Altar. The animal that was sacrificed represents the persons entering into covenant. But instead of eating the animal and drinking its blood; bread and wine is offered. For six days the bread and wine sets on the table. It represents the life (body and blood) of the person being offered to God. In this case, the 12 loaves represent the entire nation in covenant with God. On the Sabbath, the priest eats the bread and pours out the wine symbolically feeding on and receiving into himself (and the people he represents) the life of God.

The blood covenant meal at the Table of Shewbread, points to the time when man would have communion with God through the Holy Spirit. In John chapter 6, Jesus presents Himself as the Bread of Life. He explains it this way...

### **John 6:51-58**

**“I am the living bread that came down from heaven. If anyone eats of this bread, he will live forever. This bread is my flesh, which I will give for the life of the world.” Then the Jews began to argue sharply among themselves, “How can this man give us his flesh to eat?” Jesus said to them, “I tell you the truth, unless you eat the flesh of the Son of Man and drink his blood, you have no life in you. Whoever eats my flesh and drinks my blood has eternal life, and I will raise him up at the last day. For my flesh is real food and my blood is real drink. Whoever eats my flesh and drinks my blood remains in me, and I in him. Just as the living Father sent me and I live because of the Father, so the one who feeds on me will live because of me. This is the bread that came down from heaven. Your forefathers ate manna and died, but he who feeds on this bread will live forever.”**

Jesus claims to be the “real thing” who has now come along to put away the Old Covenant and replace it with the New Covenant in His blood. Jesus, seeing that the Jews didn’t understand what He was talking about, further explains Himself in John 6:63, *“The Spirit gives life; the flesh counts for nothing. The words I have spoken to you are spirit and they are life.”*

### **Altar of Incense- Exodus 37:25-28**

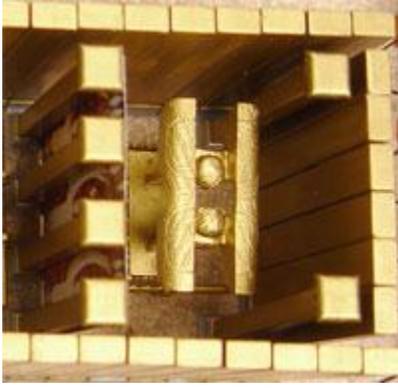


Straight ahead of you and directly in front of the second veil is the ALTAR OF INCENSE. The Altar is three feet high and one and a half feet square. Every morning and evening the priest puts burning coals on this Altar. He then sprinkles incense over the coals. When the incense touches the coals, it fills the room with a fragrant white cloud of smoke. Once a year, on the Day of Atonement, the priest sprinkles blood from the sin offering on the horns of this altar and enters the Holy of Holies with incense billowing up in front of him. The blood sprinkled horns

of the Incense Altar were proof that the sin offering had been made. This blood evidence allowed the High Priest to enter the Holy of Holies into the presence of God. As he went behind the Veil, the incense billowed up in front of the Ark of the Covenant and the manifested presence of God in the glory cloud. The high priest could only go in once a year and the veil hid God’s presence so that no one else could approach Him. This was because the sacrifice was incomplete and had to be offered year after year. The blood of bulls and goats only covered the people’s sins; it didn’t take them away.

Incense is a symbol of prayer- Psalms 141 :2. It represents the high priestly prayers of Jesus and our prayers offered in His name- John 17:9-10; Revelation 5:8; 8:3-4. Jesus is worthy to petition to the Father on our behalf because His own blood is on the Incense Altar. Through His blood, God receives our prayers offered in the Name of Jesus.

## 6. The Holy of Holies



The second veil separates the Holy of Holies from the Holy Place. This veil was so woven together that two pairs of oxen attached to either side and driven in opposite directions could not tear it apart. Behind this veil is the throne room of God. This is your destination. But your way is blocked. You can't go behind the veil. You can't enter into God's presence. Only the High Priest can enter God's presence and only on the Day of Atonement once a year. The veil that hid "the glory" represented the veiled glory of God in the human body of Jesus Christ. When Jesus was crucified, God the Father split the veil from top to bottom; stated in Matthew 27:27:51;

Mark 15:38; Luke 23:45. It was no longer needed because the once and for all perfect sacrifice was being made. Whereas, the blood of bulls and goats only covered sins, the blood of Jesus takes them away- so no more sacrifices are needed, Hebrews 10:18, "*And where these have been forgiven, there is no longer any sacrifice for sin.*"

The blood of Jesus opens the way for all to go right into the heavenly throne room of God and commune with Him through the Holy Spirit- Ephesians 2:13-18; Colossians 1:20-22; Hebrews 10:1-22. Earlier we read about a Samaritan woman who met Jesus at Jacob's well. Samaritans were part Jew and part Gentile. They worshipped God on Mount Gerizim which was north of Jerusalem. The Jews on the other hand, including Jesus worshipped God in Jerusalem.

### **John 4:19-24**

**"Sir," the woman said, "I can see that you are a prophet. Our fathers worshiped on this mountain, but you Jews claim that the place where we must worship is in Jerusalem." Jesus declared, "Believe me, woman, a time is coming when you will worship the Father neither on this mountain nor in Jerusalem. You Samaritans worship what you do not know; we worship what we do know, for salvation is from the Jews. Yet a time is coming and has now come when the true worshipers will worship the Father in spirit and truth, for they are the kind of worshipers the Father seeks. God is spirit, and his worshipers must worship in spirit and in truth."**

Jesus was saying the day was soon coming when a person wouldn't have to "go somewhere" to worship God. We would be able to worship God out of our own spirit in communion with the Holy Spirit. The Holy Spirit would take us right into "Father's house"; the heavenly Holy of Holies, regardless of where we might be physically. In other words, it's not about being in a building anymore, we are that building together as believers, we are the Church of Jesus Christ by receiving the Holy Spirit.

### **Ephesians 2:21-22**

**In him the whole building is joined together and rises to become a holy temple in the Lord. And in him you too are being built together to become a dwelling in which God lives by his Spirit.**

Much that goes under the name of worship is not really worship, but merely a satisfying of man's religious obligations and the soothing of his seared conscience- those not having a personally relationship with Jesus Christ. The only true worship that Jesus talked about is that given through the Holy Spirit, based on the truth of God's Word- in God's presence, in my Father's house! All who desire true worship may go there because the Veil has been removed.

## Ark of the Covenant- Exodus 25:10-22; 37:1-9



The only piece of furniture in the Holy of Holies is the ARK OF THE COVENANT. The Ark of the Covenant is a small chest 3  $\frac{3}{4}$  feet long, 2  $\frac{1}{4}$  feet wide and 2  $\frac{1}{4}$  feet high. The lid attached to the Ark is called “The Mercy Seat.” The Greek word that means the same as the Hebrew word for Mercy Seat is hilasterion. The English word for hilasterion is “propitiation.” Propitiation or atonement, simply means to turn away God’s wrath by removing sin and satisfying His violated justice. Remember the only offering that will turn away His wrath and satisfy His justice is blood. It is the only evidence that the penalty for sin has been paid. The Mercy Seat is the place of propitiation. This is where the blood will be applied. A replica of a cherubim (angel) is attached to each end of the Mercy Seat. Their wings are outstretched touching

each other at the middle of the lid. Right between the two cherubim and above the Mercy Seat is a blinding light. This bright light is called the “Shekinah,” means the presence of God’s glory. It is the manifested presence of God dwelling in the midst of the people. The Holy of Holies is God’s earthly throne room, the Mercy Seat is His throne and the great light is His visible presence.

**Psalms 99:1- The LORD reigns, let the nations tremble; He sits enthroned between the cherubim, let the earth shake.**

Three objects were placed inside the Ark under the Mercy Seat. These were Aaron’s rod that budded with almonds, a small pot of manna and the stone tablets containing the Ten Commandments.

### Hebrews 9:1-5

**Now the first covenant had regulations for worship and also an earthly sanctuary. A tabernacle was set up. In its first room were the lamp stand, the table and the consecrated bread; this was called the Holy Place. Behind the second curtain was a room called the Most Holy Place, which had the golden altar of incense and the gold-covered ark of the covenant. This ark contained the gold jar of manna, Aaron’s staff that had budded, and the stone tablets of the covenant. Above the ark were the cherubim of the Glory, overshadowing the atonement cover.**

Aaron’s rod reminded God that the Hebrews had earlier rejected His leadership through Aaron- Numbers 16-17. The pot of manna spoke of the Hebrews earlier rejection of God’s earthly provisions- Numbers 11. The Ten Commandments were broken by the Hebrews and reminded God that the people fall short of His holiness and glory- Exodus 32.

Every day God would look down from His cloud of glory and see man’s evidence of sin and the penalty for sin is death. God’s justice must be administered. He cannot allow rebellion, His wrath must be vindicated. However, on the Day of Atonement, the High Priest comes behind the veil into the Holy of Holies with the blood of the innocent sacrifice. This is the sacrifice God has ordained to take your place in the blood covenant until He comes Himself personally to earth on your behalf.

As incense fills the room, the High Priest sprinkles the blood of the sacrifice over the Mercy Seat. At that moment, as God looks down from His cloud of glory, He doesn't see the evidence of man's sin. Instead He sees the blood, the blood of the innocent sacrifice tells God that life has been given to pay the penalty of sin which is death. The blood-covered Mercy Seat (not the Ten Commandments) changes God's throne from one of judgment to one of mercy. Justice has been administered and God's wrath is vindicated.

After His first resurrection, Jesus first appeared to Mary Magdalene and made an amazing statement- about what was to happen. Jesus as the perfect sacrifice was going to ascend into heaven, and enter into the heavenly Holy of Holies to sprinkle His own blood over the Ark of the Covenant in God's heavenly throne room. When He offered it, He sat down at the right hand of the Father- Hebrews 1:3, "*After he had provided purification for sins, he sat down at the right hand of the Majesty in heaven.*"

**John 20:17- Jesus said, "Do not hold on to me, for I have not yet returned to the Father. Go instead to my brothers and tell them, 'I am returning to my Father and your Father, to my God and your God.'"**

Remember the blood covered Mercy Seat was attached to the top of the Ark of the Covenant. It was the place of atonement- "turning aside God's wrath by taking away sin." Jesus is now seated at God's right hand, the slain but resurrected "Lamb of God" is on the throne- Acts 2:30; Revelation 3:21; 5:6-9; 21:5. It's His blood that completely satisfies the wrath of God's violated justice. It's His blood that changes God's throne from one of judgment to one of mercy- Hebrews 4:14-16; 9:6-15.

**Romans 3:20-26- Therefore no one will be declared righteous in his sight by observing the law; rather, through the law we become conscious of sin. But now a righteousness from God, apart from law, has been made known, to which the Law and the Prophets testify. This righteousness from God comes through faith in Jesus Christ to all who believe. There is no difference, for all have sinned and fall short of the glory of God, and are justified freely by his grace through the redemption that came by Christ Jesus. God presented him as a sacrifice of atonement, through faith in his blood. He did this to demonstrate his justice, because in his forbearance he had left the sins committed beforehand unpunished- he did it to demonstrate his justice at the present time, so as to be just and the one who justifies those who have faith in Jesus.**

**1 John 2:1-2- My dear children, I write this to you so that you will not sin. But if anybody does sin, we have one who speaks to the Father in our defense-Jesus Christ, the Righteous One. He is the atoning sacrifice for our sins, and not only for ours but also for the sins of the whole world.**

The blood covenant is an eternal, everlasting covenant. All who enter into it will dwell with God forever as stated in Revelation 21:1-7. If you have been trying to approach God through the Ten Commandments, you now see how hopeless that is. God's absolute standards are beyond your reach. Even when you are at your best, you simply cannot measure up to His perfect holiness. Like the Hebrew of old, you must flee to the real Tabernacle of God, Jesus Christ! In Exodus chapter 35, we see a collection is made from the Israelite community for the construction of the Tabernacle.

#### **Exodus 35:4-9**

**Moses said to the whole Israelite community, "This is what the LORD has commanded: From what you have, take an offering for the LORD. Everyone who is willing is to bring to the LORD an offering of gold, silver and bronze; blue, purple and scarlet yarn and fine linen; goat hair; ram skins dyed red and hides of sea cows; acacia wood; olive oil for the light; spices for the anointing oil and for the fragrant incense; and onyx stones and other gems to be mounted on the ephod and breast piece."**

By God's grace, an amazing amount of generosity was on display on behalf of the Israelites in providing materials for the construction of the Tabernacle. Even to the point, where the people had to be restrained. Such overwhelming generosity is most appropriate for God's people- Philippians 4:18!

**Exodus 35:20-22, 29- Then the whole Israelite community withdrew from Moses' presence, and everyone who was willing and whose heart moved him came and brought an offering to the LORD for the work on the Tent of Meeting, for all its service, and for the sacred garments. All who were willing, men and women alike, came and brought gold jewelry of all kinds: brooches, earrings, rings and ornaments. They all presented their gold as a wave offering to the LORD. All the Israelite men and women who were willing brought to the LORD freewill offerings for all the work the LORD through Moses had commanded them to do.**

**Exodus 36:3-7**

**And the people continued to bring freewill offerings morning after morning. So all the skilled craftsmen who were doing all the work on the sanctuary left their work and said to Moses, "The people are bringing more than enough for doing the work the LORD commanded to be done." Then Moses gave an order and they sent this word throughout the camp: "No man or woman is to make anything else as an offering for the sanctuary." And so the people were restrained from bringing more, because what they already had was more than enough to do all the work.**

God had anointed men with the Holy Spirit to be skilled in all kinds of craftsmanship for construction of the Tabernacle. I firmly believe that God continues to anoint His children today with all kinds of talents and abilities, that again sets His covenant people apart from the rest of the world. I encourage you to trust God to take your career and trade to the next level for His glory!

**Exodus 35:30-35**

**Then Moses said to the Israelites, "See, the LORD has chosen Bezalel son of Uri, the son of Hur, of the tribe of Judah, and he has filled him with the Spirit of God, **with skill, ability and knowledge in all kinds of crafts** — to make artistic designs for work in gold, silver and bronze, to cut and set stones, to work in wood and to engage in all kinds of artistic craftsmanship. And he has given both him and Oholiab son of Ahisamach, of the tribe of Dan, the ability to teach others. He has filled them with skill to do all kinds of work as craftsmen, designers, embroiderers in blue, purple and scarlet yarn and fine linen, and weavers — all of them master craftsmen and designers."**

In Exodus chapter 40 we see the Tabernacle being set up under the watchful eye of Moses to ensure that God's requirements are fully met. Once the task was completed we see God's approval as His glory fills the Tabernacle. Exodus 40:34-35, "*Then the cloud covered the Tent of Meeting, and the glory of the LORD filled the tabernacle. Moses could not enter the Tent of Meeting because the cloud had settled upon it, and the glory of the LORD filled the tabernacle.*"

The cloud by day and fire in the cloud by night is a reminder for us that God is our source, and when He moves we ought to move with Him. Romans 8:14, "*because those who are led by the Spirit of God are sons of God*" and Galatians 5:18, "*But if you are led by the Spirit, you are not under law*" makes it clear that God should be the one plotting out a path for our lives, leading and guiding us according to His plans, His purposes and His pursuits! Exodus 40:36-38, "*In all the travels of the Israelites, whenever the cloud lifted from above the tabernacle, they would set out; but if the cloud did not lift, they did not set out — until the day it lifted. So the cloud of the LORD was over the tabernacle by day, and fire was in the cloud by night, in the sight of all the house of Israel during all their travels.*"

**Proverbs 3:5-6 NKJV- Trust in the LORD with all your heart, and lean not on your own understanding; In all your ways acknowledge Him, and He shall direct your paths.**

Unit 13 Review:

Throughout the Scriptures we see numerous references to blood sacrifice, why is this significant?

---

---

---

How was the earthly tabernacle back then pointing to us as believers today?

---

---

---

What was done at the Brazen Altar, and what did it represent in the future?

---

---

---

What is the difference between the blood of an animal and the blood of Jesus?

---

---

---

How is the Brazen Laver significant to us today as a type and shadow?

---

---

---

What is significant about the “Mercy Seat” on the Ark of the Covenant?

---

---

---

## B. The Sacrifices

Let's do a little review, when God appeared to the Hebrews to give them the law, it was an awesome sight. There were tremendous thunder and lightning storms. Mount Sinai was covered with smoke that billowed into the sky like a furnace. The whole mountain shook with a violent earthquake, and God commanded the people to not come even near the mountain, "lest they die."

You see, He is a holy God and He was about to reveal Himself to His covenant people. Already they had been a murmuring and complaining. Yet the parties to a covenant cannot walk together unless they are in agreement. Well, it was quite evident the Hebrews didn't know much about their covenant partner.

So God said, "It's about time I introduce myself to you. It's about time you meet your covenant partner." So He booms out the Ten Commandments. Through the Ten Commandments and the other laws accompanying them, God was saying, "This is what I am like. This is my character. This is who you are in covenant with."

Along with the laws, we've learned that God also gave instructions for building the Tabernacle, for ordaining the priesthood, and for establishing an elaborate system for making sacrifices. Then we read that Moses built an altar and offered a sacrifice to God. He took the blood of the sacrificed animals and sprinkled the blood against the altar. He also sprinkled the people as well. In the same manner, he sprinkled blood over the Book of the Covenant containing the Ten Commandments and accompanying laws. Later he would sprinkle blood over the Tabernacle and all its furnishings used in worship. In Exodus 24:8 it is stated, "*Moses then took the blood, sprinkled it on the people and said, 'This is the blood of the covenant that the LORD has made with you in accordance with all these words.'*"

### Hebrews 9:18-22

**This is why even the first covenant was not put into effect without blood. When Moses had proclaimed every commandment of the law to all the people, he took the blood of calves, together with water, scarlet wool and branches of hyssop, and sprinkled the scroll and all the people. He said, "This is the blood of the covenant, which God has commanded you to keep." In the same way, he sprinkled with the blood both the tabernacle and everything used in its ceremonies. In fact, the law requires that nearly everything be cleansed with blood, and without the shedding of blood there is no forgiveness.**

We learn from this that God gave the law, not as part of the blood covenant, but as his way of revealing Himself to the world. It was His calling card to show the world His character. In this respect, the law served as God's divine mirror. When the Hebrew looked into the Ten Commandments, he would see God's holiness and his sinfulness. This would enable the Hebrew to recognize the infinite gap between God and himself. He could understand that he had sinned and fallen short of God's glory and without the shedding of blood there would be no forgiveness of sin. This revelation would drive the Hebrew to the blood covenant as his means of being reconciled to God.

You see, God was showing the world through His covenant people, that we approach Him by His grace provided through the blood covenant. With the revelation of His absolute holiness, we quickly realize the futility of seeking to reconcile ourselves to God by trying to be a "good person" and keep God's commandments, or any other religious or moral code of ethics. Sin is a spiritual crime that invokes the penalty of death- an eternal punishment. It is ludicrous to suppose a good deed would undo rebellion and high treason. Someone has to pay, you can either pay it yourself or let someone else, but who would be that nice. I had a debt I could not pay, I needed someone to wash my sins away. So Jesus paid my debt He did not owe out of love for one so lost as me- without a savior like Jesus we are doomed!

So we come to understand, that even at our best, we don't measure up to a holy God. So we too, then, should run to the blood covenant that sanctifies us.

The law, Tabernacle, priesthood and sacrifice system were of the Old Covenant. But they pointed the Hebrew to the New Covenant when God, Himself, would come in the flesh. His coming would fulfill His promise to Abraham which was “. . . that from Abraham's seed (singular) would come one who would be a blessing to the whole world.” When He came, He would do away with these temporary provisions that pointed to Him. The imperfect Old Covenant would be replaced by a perfect, everlasting, New Covenant- it is unfortunate, that so many still cling to the old, Luke 5:39 *“And no one after drinking old wine wants the new, for he says, ‘The old is better.’”* The old wine of religious works!

We had just discussed how God had established a Tabernacle, a sacrifice system and a priesthood as the way for the Hebrew to approach Him. We saw how the Tabernacle was a physical representation showing us the way to God. We now want to learn about the sacrifices which are so strange to our western minds- doesn't seem logical to our culture do they?

## 1. Background

In the beginning, God created a perfect universe that was orderly and harmoniously operated within His will. But man chose to rebel against God's will. Man's rebellion brought chaos and destruction on himself and everything around him. We only need to look around to realize this truth. God calls man's rebellion- SIN. He says we all do it because it's our nature- it is within us. A lot of people try to blame the devil for their actions. But God says sin is an inside job- see Mark 7:20-23; Ephesians 2:3; James 1:14.

Now man's sin was no big surprise to God. Adam didn't sneak up on God and pull a fast one while God was napping. God knew all along what would happen when He created man. Of course He would, since He is God. You see, God didn't cause rebellion, but He allowed it. God allowed it because He loves us enough to give us a free will that He will not violate. God doesn't cause us to sin, but He allows us to. I realize that this is a difficult concept, when witnessing to the lost some have said, “Well why did God create me in the first place if I was going to sin and just go to hell for all eternity? It would have been better for me not to have been even born!” This fellow will just have to take that up with his Creator, but the Scripture does say...

### **Romans 9:19-21**

**One of you will say to me: “Then why does God still blame us? For who resists his will?” But who are you, O man, to talk back to God? “Shall what is formed say to him who formed it, ‘Why did you make me like this?’” Does not the potter have the right to make out of the same lump of clay some pottery for noble purposes and some for common use?**

He won't force us to love Him. Forced love isn't really love, is it? But God told Adam that the day he sinned by eating the forbidden fruit he would surely die- see Genesis 2:17. The penalty for sin is death, and what is the evidence that the penalty has been paid? Why, it is blood, shed blood is the evidence that life has been given on behalf of another to pay the penalty, blood speaks on behalf of the guilty- it speaks of forgiveness! God had forewarned Adam.

### **Hebrews 12:24**

**To Jesus the mediator of a new covenant, and to the sprinkled blood that speaks a better word than the blood of Abel.**

## **God's Dilemma**

Now God is a God of order and He cannot tolerate rebellion in His universe- it must be dealt with and punished. To put it simply, if God allowed rebellion to go unpunished, He would cease to be God and His universe would fall apart- it would become an uncontrolled, chaotic mess. Now that would not be love would it- to overlook a little sin. Yet some folks think winking at little sins, overlooking white lies, as long as it does not hurt anybody is no big deal; this is seriously flawed thinking, very convenient to the perpetrator isn't it. Relative moralism is the theme of a me-centric generation that follows its own path of virtue and happiness, void of any absolute truth that would keep them from a shipwrecked life.

## **Isaiah 53:6**

**We all, like sheep, have gone astray, each of us has turned to his own way; and the LORD has laid on him the iniquity of us all.**

## **Isaiah 56:11-12**

**They are dogs with mighty appetites; they never have enough. They are shepherds who lack understanding; they all turn to their own way, each seeks his own gain. "Come," each one cries, "let me get wine! Let us drink our fill of beer! And tomorrow will be like today, or even far better."**

We can get a pretty good idea of God's viewpoint by looking at our own country. Failure to apply the law of the land has resulted in disrespect for the law and a lawlessness and chaos that is almost uncontrollable- Proverbs 29:18, "*Where there is no revelation, the people cast off restraint; but blessed is he who keeps the law.*"

Well God can't allow this to happen to Himself nor His universe. So He says rebellion must be punished. However, God is also a God of love, He loves man, but He must punish man for man's rebellion. He cannot exercise His love at the expense of His justice, so He made a provision for dealing with man's rebellion. He made this provision before man's rebellion ever took place. God knew it would happen so He planned ahead on how to deal with it. That sounds like a God of order, doesn't it. Speaking of Jesus, "*...the Lamb slain from the foundation of the world.*" Revelation 13:8 NKJV

## **Romans 5:6**

**You see, at just the right time, when we were still powerless, Christ died for the ungodly.**

## **God's Plan**

God's plan says, "Although the penalty for sin is death, you don't have to pay it. I'll come to earth and pay it for you. I'll purchase your salvation with my own blood- Life." This is God's provision and is the "out" God ordained for man because it satisfies His perfect love without violating His perfect justice. From the beginning, God determined that He would provide Himself, His own blood, as the evidence that the penalty has been paid. God determined that at a certain time in history, He would become the "Lamb of God" that takes away the sins of the world- John 1:29.

## **Galatians 4:4-5**

**But when the time had fully come, God sent his Son, born of a woman, born under law, to redeem those under law, that we might receive the full rights of sons.**

All who have believed and accepted God's plan in their heart have been saved from the sin penalty by looking to the time when God would literally come to the earth and cut the covenant by the shedding of His own blood. Today we look back to what Jesus had done around 2,000 years ago; confessing Jesus as Lord and believing that God had raised Him from the dead- Romans 10:9-10. Yet like the Pharisees, if we try to put God in a box of our own design we can miss the grace of God.

Luke 7:30, *“But the Pharisees and experts in the law rejected God’s purpose for themselves, because they had not been baptized by John.”* Jesus wept over Jerusalem in Luke 19:44, *“because you did not know the time of your visitation.”* Jesus, Jehovah, the Great I am was in their midst and they missed their salvation because they were looking for a king to deliver them from the Romans instead of what the Bible promised. Jesus would first come as a Lamb to take away their sins, then upon His second coming, He would come as a Lion to rid the world of spiritual darkness.

### **1 Peter 1:18-20**

**For you know that it was not with perishable things such as silver or gold that you were redeemed from the empty way of life handed down to you from your forefathers, but with the precious blood of Christ, a lamb without blemish or defect. He was chosen before the creation of the world, but was revealed in these last times for your sake.**

### **God Gives a Preview**

God gave us a preview of His plan from the very beginning as He tells us about it in Genesis chapter 3. Here is what happened, when Adam and Eve sinned, they covered themselves with leaves and hid from God. This was their way of covering their sin. Well, when God saw Adam and Eve covered with those fig leaves, He knew it was time to explain the “spiritual facts of life.” But how could He do it? How could He explain His plan in terms they could understand? There was only one way. He must kill an innocent animal and accept its blood in substitute as a temporary covering of their sin. It would be an imperfect substitute and only cover sin. But it would point everybody in the right direction. Then when He came along Himself, He would be the perfect substitute. His blood would do more than just cover sin. It would take it away. Then no more sacrifices would be needed.

### **Genesis 3:21**

**The LORD God made garments of skin for Adam and his wife and clothed them.**

So God killed an animal and showed it to Adam and Eve. Now Adam and Eve had never seen death before. You and I are accustomed to death, but not so with Adam and Eve. It must have made them sick to see life taken away from one of God’s creatures. Although God didn’t have Moses record the details of His plan in this preview account, He certainly must have explained it to Adam and Eve. I believe He had Adam watch Him kill the animal and then said, “Adam, you remember I told you the penalty for sin is death? Well, this is what I’m talking about, horrible, isn’t it? Makes your stomach draw into knots, doesn’t it? I don’t like it any more than you do, but the wrath from my violated justice must be satisfied.”

“Now do you understand how horrible sin is in My sight? I can’t even stand to look at it. And those fig leaves you are wearing can’t hide your sins. Because when I look at you with those fig leaves, I don’t see the proper evidence that the price has been paid. I still see your sins and My eyes are too holy to look at you. So your way of covering your sins is not acceptable. But if you will accept this dead animal as your sin substitute for now, I’ll let it pay the price for you; I’ll let it temporarily cover your sins until I come Myself and take them away permanently.”

Then God clothed Adam and Eve with the skins of the innocent animal. At this time, He evidently instructed Adam to bring an acceptable sacrifice and later when children would come along, Adam would teach them to do the same. This was because all of humanity would now inherit Adam’s sin nature according to Romans 5:12 and Ephesians 2:3. All would require the innocent substitutionary sacrifice. Even remote cultures around the world understand the ancient rite of sacrifice to appease the wrath of a god; even though it is not the God of the Bible they are sacrificing to. How did they learn this, if not from the very beginning and passed down from generation to generation as they spread out over the face of the earth.

From then on when God saw Adam and Eve clothed with animal skins, He saw the evidence that the price had been paid, it was a constant reminder to Him forever. So from the beginning, man has known to approach God through the blood covenant- the spilling of blood of an innocent victim on behalf of the guilty. Of course this does not mean that God accepts human sacrifice. Even in the case of Isaac, God stopped Abraham. The only human sacrifice that God would ever accept was that of His Son Jesus Christ in a human body as the ultimate and final sacrifice- this is why works to earn God's favor never works!

### **Deuteronomy 18:9-13**

**When you enter the land the LORD your God is giving you, do not learn to imitate the detestable ways of the nations there. Let no one be found among you who sacrifices his son or daughter in the fire, who practices divination or sorcery, interprets omens, engages in witchcraft, or casts spells, or who is a medium or spiritist or who consults the dead. Anyone who does these things is detestable to the LORD, and because of these detestable practices the LORD your God will drive out those nations before you. You must be blameless before the LORD your God.**

### **Adam Teaches His Sons**

As time passed, Adam and Eve became the proud parents of two sons, Cain and Abel. Cain was the oldest and took up farming as a livelihood. Abel was a shepherd. Now Adam had to learn things the hard way about the spiritual facts of life. Wanting to spare his children the same heartache, he was obedient to teach them about the blood covenant. So in Genesis 4:3-4, we find the two boys bringing an offering to God.

### **Genesis 4:1-4**

**Adam lay with his wife Eve, and she became pregnant and gave birth to Cain. She said, "With the help of the LORD I have brought forth a man." Later she gave birth to his brother Abel. Now Abel kept flocks, and Cain worked the soil. In the course of time Cain brought some of the fruits of the soil as an offering to the LORD. But Abel brought fat portions from some of the firstborn of his flock. The LORD looked with favor on Abel and his offering...**

### **Abel Accepts the Covenant**



Abel brought the best lambs from his flock, so God approved of Abel's offering because this was the way He established for sinful man to approach Him. Therefore, Abel was acceptable to God, not by his own goodness, but based on the innocent blood sacrifice. It was the divinely ordained substitutionary sacrifice that made Abel acceptable to God. When God looked down at Abel's offering, He saw the blood of the innocent sacrifice. The blood was the evidence that the penalty for sin had been paid. God counted Abel as righteous (in right standing with Him) because of his offering.

### **Hebrews 11:4**

**By faith Abel offered God a better sacrifice than Cain did. By faith he was commended as a righteous man, when God spoke well of his offerings. And by faith he still speaks, even though he is dead.**

## **Cain Rejects the Covenant**

Contrary to his younger brother, Cain rejected God's way- he rejected the blood covenant. Instead of bringing an Innocent sacrifice, he brought the fruit of his own labor. Cain probably brought his very best, but it represented his own good works. Unfortunately, even Cain's best goodness could not measure up to a perfect, absolute holy God.

You see, Cain was trying to approach God with his own self-righteousness and man has been trying that ever since. But just as God rejected Adam and Eve's fig leaves, He also rejected Cain's offering of fruit. There was no evidence that the penalty for sin had been paid. There was no blood of an Innocent substitute to cover Cain's sins.

The fruit offering did not satisfy the wrath of God's violated justice. So the very best Cain had to offer of his own merit was not good enough. It was sinful man trying to approach a Holy God on his own good works rather than through the blood of an Innocent substitutionary sacrifice. Sound familiar, Cain represents all the works based religions of the world.

God's rejection angered Cain, so he became outraged against God. However, instead of striking Cain dead, God gave him a chance to repent. God probably said something like, "Cain, it's just like I told your parents. Our fellowship is restored by My grace and through your faith in accepting My way. It is My gift, not your works, so instead of boasting about how good a farmer you are, just accept My provision for you- a blood sacrifice. If you don't, your own pride will ultimately destroy you."

### **Genesis 4:5-8**

**...but on Cain and his offering he did not look with favor. So Cain was very angry, and his face was downcast. Then the LORD said to Cain, "Why are you angry? Why is your face downcast? If you do what is right, will you not be accepted? But if you do not do what is right, sin is crouching at your door; it desires to have you, but you must master it." Now Cain said to his brother Abel, "Let's go out to the field." And while they were in the field, Cain attacked his brother Abel and killed him.**

As you can see in the above verse, that Cain wouldn't repent because evil had filled his heart. He would not confess his need for God's provision. When his pride turned to hate, he killed his brother. In 1 John 3:12, God confirms this condition of Cain's heart, "*Do not be like Cain, who belonged to the evil one and murdered his brother. And why did he murder him? Because his own actions were evil and his brother's were righteous.*"

God was left with no choice but to drive Cain from His presence in Genesis 4:8-16. Cain's descendants turned their back on the blood covenant and chose to follow their own evil ways according to Genesis 4:17-24. As a result, we see the makings of a population of rebellious God haters that brings on Noah's flood. God gives a solemn reminder in Jude 11-13, "*Woe to them! They have taken the way of Cain...*" that those who go the way of Cain will come to their end in everlasting gloom and darkness, forever separated from God.

## **The Covenant Continued**

God gave Adam and Eve another son to replace Abel- his name was Seth. Seth's descendants called upon the name of the Lord according to Genesis 4:26. They had accepted God's covenant through blood and offered an innocent substitutionary sacrifice to cover their sins. One of Seth's descendants was Noah, who walked with God and was the only righteous man in his generation- Genesis 6:9. Therefore, when God destroyed the world because of its evil, He spared Noah and his family.

What do you think Noah did as his first act on dry land after the flood was over? He offered a sacrifice and God took notice and was pleased. It moved God to declare that He would never again destroy every living creature even though man's heart is evil from childhood.



#### **Genesis 8:20-21**

**Then Noah built an altar to the LORD and, taking some of all the clean animals and clean birds, he sacrificed burnt offerings on it. The LORD smelled the pleasing aroma and said in his heart: “Never again will I curse the ground because of man, even though every inclination of his heart is evil from childhood. And never again will I destroy all living creatures, as I have done.”**

In chapter three we saw that Abraham believed in the innocent blood sacrifice and was counted as righteousness. Isaac and Jacob made sacrifices as well in Genesis 26:24-25; 31:54; 33:20; 35:7; 46:1. This is why God could introduce Himself to Moses as the God of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob- Exodus 3:15. Moses asked the Pharaoh for permission to sacrifice in the desert according to Exodus 3:18. During the Passover, every believing Hebrew family offered a sacrifice to God as protection against the destroyer who would take the life of the first born while the Hebrews were in Egypt.

So we see that from the very beginning of man's history, God ordained the innocent, substitutionary sacrifice as a basis of faith to come into right standing with God apart from human effort- religious works. It also afforded the means to teach and prepare humanity for God's ultimate plan that was consummated in Jesus Christ as the Lamb of God, slain from the foundations of the world.

Whew, I hope you will appreciate the lengths at which the backdrop was painted concerning blood sacrifice. Since our educational system and many churches do not teach these ancient Biblical principles, it is imperative that we do so in order to truly appreciate and understand God's redemptive plan.

## **2. The Sacrifice System**

Now God is going to make things even clearer by establishing an elaborate sacrifice system. The system would have five types of sacrifices. Each sacrifice would uniquely reveal something about the nature of the final sacrifice when God would give Himself on man's behalf. Taken as a whole, they would form a complete picture of the perfect sacrifice. That way everybody would recognize Him when He came on the scene.

This system called for 1,273 public sacrifices a year- Numbers 28-29. It included sacrifices each morning and evening, each Sabbath, the first day of each month and during the special feasts days of assembly and celebration. This amounts to almost 2,000,000 public sacrifice ceremonies from the time God established the system to the time He would come in the flesh as the perfect sacrifice. Then when He offered Himself, no more animal sacrifices would be needed, from then on. Under the New Covenant, we are called to offer ourselves now as a living sacrifice unto God- Romans 12:1-2.

In addition to the official public sacrifices, there were millions of individual offerings. Their number was staggering; so it was a continual blood bath. God was making it clear that man can only approach Him through an innocent blood sacrifice. With this background, let's now see how God maintained the blood covenant through the sacrifice system.

## The Old Covenant

The five types of offerings were...Sin Offering...Trespass/Guilt Offering...Burnt Offering...Meal/Grain Offering...Peace/Fellowship Offering. These offerings were to be the physical outward expressions of the longings of the inward heart in seeking communion with God.

The Sin Offering and Trespass Offering were mandatory offerings associated with the sins of the nation and the individual Hebrew. The Burnt Offering, Meal Offering and Peace Offering were spontaneous voluntary offerings of praise and thanksgiving. They were not associated with the individual's sin but were part of his worship to God. Therefore, God was pleased with these voluntary offerings and considered them a sweet aroma. It's interesting that three out of five (60%) of these offerings were associated with praise and worship rather than sin. I believe this is what God expects to see today in the lives of individual Christians and in the worship services of the Church.

**Hebrews 13:15-16- Through Jesus, therefore, let us continually offer to God a sacrifice of praise—the fruit of lips that confess his name. And do not forget to do good and to share with others, for with such sacrifices God is pleased.**

Church services that are cold and indifferent have gotten that way because they have eliminated spontaneous praise from their meetings. The same is true for individual Christians. Drawing from what you learned about the Tabernacle, put yourself in the role of a Hebrew as he brings his sacrifice to the Brazen Altar.

### The Old Covenant Sacrifice System

OFFERING	NATURE	OFFERER'S WORK	PRIEST'S WORK	GOD'S PORTION	PRIEST'S PORTION	OFFERER'S PORTION
<b>SIN</b>	Bull-Lamb-Goat Turtledove Pigeon	Lay on Hands Kill Animal	Sprinkle Blood On Altar	The Whole Within- Without Camp	A Portion Not Burned	None
<b>TRESSPASS Or GUILT</b>	Ram	Lay on Hands Kill animal	Sprinkle Blood On Altar	Fat of Inwards	Remainder	None
<b>BURNT</b>	Bull-Lamb-Goat Turtledove Pigeon	Lay on Hands Kill animal	Sprinkle Blood On Altar	Burn All On Altar	Skin	None
<b>MEAL Or GRAIN</b>	Fine Flour Oil-Salt No Leaven- Honey	Bring to Priest	Offer Handful	Handful	Remainder	None
<b>PEACE Or FELLOWSHIP</b>	Bull-Lamb-Goat	Lay on Hands Kill Animal	Sprinkle Blood On Altar	Fat of Inwards	Breast and Shoulder	Remainder

However, all of these sacrifices are mere symbolisms, they are not the real thing- the Old Covenant sacrifice system was meant to point us to the real thing which is Jesus Christ. The old system required that you keep on bringing the sacrifice again, and again and again- Isaiah chapter 1. The blood of bulls and goats can never take away sins, it only covered them.

#### **Colossians 2:16-17**

**Therefore do not let anyone judge you by what you eat or drink, or with regard to a religious festival, a New Moon celebration or a Sabbath day. These are a shadow of the things that were to come; the reality, however, is found in Christ.**

#### **Hebrews 7:27**

**Unlike the other high priests, he does not need to offer sacrifices day after day, first for his own sins, and then for the sins of the people. He sacrificed for their sins once for all when he offered himself.**

#### **Hebrews 10:1-4**

**The law is only a shadow of the good things that are coming-not the realities themselves. For this reason it can never, by the same sacrifices repeated endlessly year after year, make perfect those who draw near to worship. If it could, would they not have stopped being offered? For the worshipers would have been cleansed once for all, and would no longer have felt guilty for their sins. But those sacrifices are an annual reminder of sins, because it is impossible for the blood of bulls and goats to take away sins.**

That is why when the Old Covenant saints died, they did not go to heaven- with the exception of Enoch and Elijah. They were escorted by the angels of God to a compartment next to Hades in the center of the earth called Abraham's bosom- read Luke 16:19-31.

The blood of bulls and goats cannot make you righteous. It is not the "true meat" and "true drink" that satisfies the longing of your heart to have personal union and communion with God. It is not the promised seed (singular) of Abraham who would be a blessing to the whole world- Jesus Christ!

#### **The New Covenant**

But in the fullness of time, God sent forth His Son, born of a woman, born as a Jew- Galatians 4:4. All the fullness of God dwelled in Him. God was in Christ reconciling the world unto Himself – 2 Corinthians 5:19. God had come to earth as the Son of Man, Jesus Christ; to pay the penalty for sin on our behalf. He came to purchase our salvation with His own blood- there is no other way, Acts 4:12 *"Salvation is found in no one else, for there is no other name under heaven given to men by which we must be saved."*

#### **Colossians 1:15-20; 2:9**

**Jesus is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn over all creation. For by him all things were created: things in heaven and on earth, visible and invisible, whether thrones or powers or rulers or authorities; all things were created by him and for him. He is before all things, and in him all things hold together. And he is the head of the body, the church; he is the beginning and the firstborn from among the dead, so that in everything he might have the supremacy. For God was pleased to have all his fullness dwell in him, and through him to reconcile to himself all things, whether things on earth or things in heaven, by making peace through his blood, shed on the cross. For in Christ all the fullness of the Deity lives in bodily form.**

Jesus Christ is the one for whom Adam and Eve were waiting. The skins of the innocent animal covering their body was a constant reminder that He would come. Jesus Christ is that more acceptable sacrifice in whom Abel put his trust. Jesus Christ is the substitute offering that renewed the covenant with Seth and his descendants. Jesus Christ is Noah's sacrifice that moved God to put a rainbow in the sky. Jesus Christ is the one Abraham believed in and was counted as righteous. Jesus Christ is the reason God was the God of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob. Jesus Christ is Moses' sacrifice before Pharaoh. Jesus Christ is the Passover Lamb that delivered the Hebrews from Egypt. Jesus Christ is the New Covenant sacrifice that takes away the sins of the world. He is the one the Old Covenant sacrifices pointed to so that everyone would recognize Him when He arrived on the scene. This is how Jesus on the road to Emmaus, could quote passage after passage beginning with the book of Genesis and going right through the Scriptures, explaining what the passages meant and what they said concerning Himself.

**Luke 24:25-27- He said to them, "How foolish you are, and how slow of heart to believe all that the prophets have spoken! Did not the Christ have to suffer these things and then enter his glory?" And beginning with Moses and all the Prophets, he explained to them what was said in all the Scriptures concerning himself.**

**Acts 3:24-25- "Indeed, all the prophets from Samuel on, as many as have spoken, have foretold these days. And you are heirs of the prophets and of the covenant God made with your fathers. He said to Abraham, "Through your offspring all peoples on earth will be blessed.'"**

You see God knew exactly what He was going to do when He would come to offer Himself. This is why He gave such specific details on how to offer each sacrifice. He would perfectly fulfill them in Jesus Christ. If you wanted someone to recognize you, you would tell them everything about yourself in advance. Then when you arrived on the scene, they would know who you are. This is how the entire Old Covenant points to Jesus. This is how Jesus could say that everything written in the Law of Moses, in the Prophets and the Psalms were about Him.

**Luke 24:44**

**He said to them, "This is what I told you while I was still with you: Everything must be fulfilled that is written about me in the Law of Moses, the Prophets and the Psalms."**

**The New Covenant Sacrifice**

<b>OFFERING</b>	<b>JESUS CHRIST</b>	<b>THE CHRISTIAN</b>
<b>SIN</b>	Forgiveness for the Sinner by Becoming Sin for Us	Crucified with Christ
<b>TRESSPASS Or GUILT</b>	Forgiveness for Sins We Commit By Taking Sins on Himself	Confess Our Sins for Reconciliation
<b>BURNT</b>	Completely Gave Himself to the Father	Present Ourselves by Yielding to His Lordship
<b>MEAL Or GRAIN</b>	Walked in Obedience to the Father	Walk in the Spirit
<b>PEACE Or FELLOWSHIP</b>	He Had Perfect Fellowship with the Father	Communion and Fellowship with God

### 3. The Sin Offering

Let's begin with the Sin Offering- Leviticus 4:1-5, 13; 6:24-30. You present the Sin offering to God because you are a sinner. The Ten Commandments made that very clear. Oh, you tried hard enough to keep them, but you couldn't. There was something within you that caused you to fall short of their demands. Maybe you never killed anybody, but you wanted to on occasion. And that's what the commandments were all about. They were concerned with what you wanted to do and not so much with what you actually did. You see before knowing Jesus, you were not a sinner because you had sinned; but you sinned because you were a sinner. That's who you were, it was your nature. You inherited it from Adam. So as an Old Covenant Hebrew, in order to approach a holy God, you must have a Sin Offering.

#### **Leviticus 4:13-14**

**If the whole Israelite community sins unintentionally and does what is forbidden in any of the LORD's commands, even though the community is unaware of the matter, they are guilty. When they become aware of the sin they committed, the assembly must bring a young bull as a sin offering and present it before the Tent of Meeting.**

The offering you bring must be spotless, with no defects or blemishes. You see, the animal foreshadows the perfect sacrifice that will come later, so it cannot be contaminated. As you bring your offering to the Altar, the priest is waiting to meet you. Next, you place the offering on the Altar and lay (heavily lean) your hands on the head of the animal and kill it. In this way you personally identify with the animal. This is not just a meaningless ritual. You know that your sins are symbolically being transmitted to this animal and that he is dying in your place. You feel him dying on your behalf and you are grateful for the innocent substitutionary sacrifice. Except for the grace of God, you would be on that Altar paying the price for your own sins.

As you kill the animal, the priest is standing there with you in order to catch the blood. He sprinkles some of it on the horns of the Altar and pours out what is left at the base of the Altar. Then the priest takes the fat of the inward parts of your sacrifice and burns it on the Altar. The Middle-Eastern Hebrew considered the fat as the choicest part of the animal. It protected the vital life giving organs. And the inward parts represented the heart of the animal. So symbolically you are giving your heart to God. Your heart is your sin nature that is now being offered to God on the Altar.

Because this is a Sin Offering, the sacrifice has to be taken outside the camp away from the presence of God. So the priest takes the carcass of the animal beyond the gate and camp to a place where ashes are brought from the Altar. God has declared this place to be ceremonially clean because of the ashes. The ashes indicate that an offering has been made and sin has been dealt with. Now the priest was always rewarded for the service he performed. Except for his portion, the entire animal was burned outside the camp at the place of ashes. All of the animal had to be burned because it represented sin- God consumed the whole sacrifice. You get none of the offering yourself because that would indicate communion with God. And God cannot commune where there is sin.

According to Romans 3:23-24 *"for all have sinned and fall short of the glory of God, and are justified freely by his grace through the redemption that came by Christ Jesus."* Romans 6:23, *"For the wages of sin is death, but the gift of God is eternal life in Christ Jesus our Lord."* The Old and New Covenants confirm that we need a Sin Offering to reconcile us to God- Jesus Christ is our Sin Offering. Since He had never sinned, He was a perfect sacrifice without spot or blemish!

### **1 Peter 1:18-20**

**For you know that it was not with perishable things such as silver or gold that you were redeemed from the empty way of life handed down to you from your forefathers, but with the precious blood of Christ, a lamb without blemish or defect. He was chosen before the creation of the world, but was revealed in these last times for your sake.**

In the Sin Offering, the blood on the horns of the Altar looked ahead to the blood of Jesus on the cross. As the blood is poured out at the foot of the Altar, all His blood was poured out at the foot of the cross. To fulfill the Sin offering, Jesus went beyond the gate of the Temple, outside the camp at which was the city of Jerusalem. There, high upon a hill called Calvary, God placed the sin of the world upon Jesus; past, present and future and He endured the wrath of God almighty!

### **Hebrews 13:11-14**

**The high priest carries the blood of animals into the Most Holy Place as a sin offering, but the bodies are burned outside the camp. And so Jesus also suffered outside the city gate to make the people holy through his own blood. Let us, then, go to him outside the camp, bearing the disgrace he bore. For here we do not have an enduring city, but we are looking for the city that is to come.**

### **John 1:29**

**The next day John saw Jesus coming toward him and said, "Look, the Lamb of God, who takes away the sin of the world!"**

### **Romans 8:3-4**

**For what the law was powerless to do in that it was weakened by the sinful nature, God did by sending his own Son in the likeness of sinful man to be a sin offering. And so he condemned sin in sinful man, in order that the righteous requirements of the law might be fully met in us, who do not live according to the sinful nature but according to the Spirit**

In Isaiah chapter 53, is an incredible prophetic passage concerning the redemptive work of Jesus that came to pass two thousand years ago.

### **Isaiah 53:4-6, 10-11**

**Surely he took up our infirmities(sicknesses) and carried our sorrows(pains), yet we considered him stricken by God, smitten by him, and afflicted. But he was pierced for our transgressions, he was crushed for our iniquities; the punishment that brought us peace was upon him, and by his wounds we are healed. We all, like sheep, have gone astray, each of us has turned to his own way; and the LORD has laid on him the iniquity of us all. Yet it was the LORD's will to crush him and cause him to suffer, and though the LORD makes his life a guilt offering, he will see his offspring and prolong his days, and the will of the LORD will prosper in his hand. After the suffering of his soul, he will see the light [of life] and be satisfied; by his knowledge my righteous servant will justify many, and he will bear their iniquities.**

Jesus as our total sacrifice was consumed as He became sin with our sin that was placed upon Him. Just as the priest placed his hands on the sacrifice confessing the sins of the people before it was slain, so the Father placed all the sin of the world upon Jesus and sacrificed Him on our behalf- the innocent died on behalf of the guilty, that is love!

### **2 Corinthians 5:21**

**God made him who had no sin to be sin for us, so that in him we might become the righteousness of God.**

## **Leviticus 16:21-22**

**He is to lay both hands on the head of the live goat and confess over it all the wickedness and rebellion of the Israelites — all their sins — and put them on the goat's head. He shall send the goat away into the desert in the care of a man appointed for the task. The goat will carry on itself all their sins to a solitary place; and the man shall release it in the desert.**

God the Father could not look upon Jesus as our Sin Offering. Jesus, as our Sin Offering, cried out from the cross- Matthew 27:46, "*About the ninth hour Jesus cried out in a loud voice, "Eloi, Eloi, lama sabachthani?"-which means, 'My God, my God, why have you forsaken me?'"* For the first time in all eternity up to that moment, the second person of the God-Head was separated from God the Father and God the Holy Spirit because of our sin. The torment of the cross was nothing compared to the unimaginable anguish of this separation.

Jesus took on our sin nature when He became sin for us- He became who we were. In terms of blood covenant, we exchanged spiritual natures at the cross. Remember when discussing blood covenant, the first thing I do is take off my coat or robe and give it to you.

Now to the Hebrew, a person's robe represents the person- that is why Joseph's coat of many colors was so important. By taking of my robe and giving it to you, I'm symbolically saying, "*I'm giving you all myself. My total being and my life, I pledge to you.*" And then you would do the same to me. When Jesus was crucified, He took our robe of sin (our sin nature) and self-righteousness – which is as filthy rags according to Isaiah 64:6. In exchange, we received His perfect robe of righteousness, God now sees us as He sees Jesus- with a perfect born again spiritual nature.

## **2 Corinthians 5:17-21**

**Therefore, if anyone is in Christ, he is a new creation; the old has gone, the new has come! All this is from God, who reconciled us to himself through Christ and gave us the ministry of reconciliation: that God was reconciling the world to himself in Christ, not counting men's sins against them. And he has committed to us the message of reconciliation. We are therefore Christ's ambassadors, as though God were making his appeal through us. We implore you on Christ's behalf: Be reconciled to God. God made him who had no sin to be sin for us, so that in him we might become the righteousness of God.**

God considers us who claim Jesus' death on our behalf, as being crucified with Him- Galatians 2:20, "*I have been crucified with Christ and I no longer live, but Christ lives in me.*" Our sins are no longer put to our account, they were put to His account on the cross. Therefore, God does not see us as sinners, He sees us clean, holy and righteous- it has been imputed unto us by grace through faith.

We can never in all eternity improve upon what God has already done in our re-created spirit natures- entrance into heaven requires absolute perfection. We are not sinners saved by grace, rather we were sinners, but now by God's grace we are the righteousness of God in Christ Jesus- Hebrews 10:10, "*And by that will, we have been made holy through the sacrifice of the body of Jesus Christ once for all.*"

## **1 Peter 2:24**

**He himself bore our sins in his body on the tree, so that we might die to sins and live for righteousness.**

Without being clothed with the righteousness of Christ, we have no right to be in heaven or enjoy reconciliation with God.

### **Matthew 22:11-14**

**"But when the king came in to see the guests, he noticed a man there who was not wearing wedding clothes. 'Friend,' he asked, 'how did you get in here without wedding clothes ?' The man was speechless. "Then the king told the attendants, 'Tie him hand and foot, and throw him outside, into the darkness, where there will be weeping and gnashing of teeth.' "For many are invited, but few are chosen."**

That does not mean we are fully mature believers when we receive God's free gift of salvation (free to us, but cost God an unimaginable price), we still have to grow in the knowledge of God and learn to walk as Jesus did- 1 John 2:6, "*Whoever claims to live in him must walk as Jesus did.*"

### **Ephesians 4:13-16**

**...until we all reach unity in the faith and in the knowledge of the Son of God and become mature, attaining to the whole measure of the fullness of Christ. Then we will no longer be infants, tossed back and forth by the waves, and blown here and there by every wind of teaching and by the cunning and craftiness of men in their deceitful scheming. Instead, speaking the truth in love, we will in all things grow up into him who is the Head, that is, Christ. From him the whole body, joined and held together by every supporting ligament, grows and builds itself up in love, as each part does its work.**

The greatest horror story in the history of the world is when a person chooses to pay for their own sins by rejecting Jesus as their sacrifice. We approach God through faith in the blood of Jesus to cleanse us from our sins, not by trying to keep the Ten Commandments or any other religious set of do's and don'ts- see Galatians 2:16-21; 3:15-25. When we accept Jesus as our Savior we give Him our heart (not mental credence or mental assent to Him as a historical figure), which represents our inward most parts. Through child-like faith we offer absolute surrender, desperate abandonment, clinging to Jesus Christ as our one and only Savior, rescuer and hero of our souls. This kind of dependence (giving oneself over to the mercy of God) is what God requires; there is no earning, deserving or meriting God's salvation!

In exchange, He gives us His nature which is without spot or blemish. It is pure and holy, therefore acceptable to God- Christ's imputed or credited righteousness unto us apart from works, the blessed promise- please read Romans chapter 4 for more. Therefore, there is now no more guilt, shame or condemnation according to Romans 8:1; John 5:24. Looking ahead to this point in time, the prophet Isaiah wrote, "*I delight greatly in the LORD; my soul rejoices in my God. For he has clothed me with garments of salvation and arrayed me in a robe of righteousness...*" Isaiah 61:10. This is what no animal could do, but only 'symbolically' representing us; only Jesus was our 'real' representative- please read Hebrews 10:1-20 for more details!

For an Old Covenant teaching of a sacrifice being offered and coming back to life, see the story of the two birds in Leviticus chapter 14. This points to the Messiah coming from heaven, being crucified and resurrected and returning to heaven, bearing His own blood as the final sin offering. Now that we have been crucified with Christ, we no longer have to serve sin. It no longer has dominion over us, unless we allow it to by our own free will. We have been set free by the blood of Jesus- Romans chapter 6, good reading! Jesus as our Sin Offering: Galatians 1:4; 1 Corinthians 15:3; 2 Corinthians 5:21; Hebrews 9-10; Hebrews 13:8-15; 1 Peter 2:24; Isaiah 53.

## 4. The Trespass or Guilt Offering

Whereas the Sin Offering deals with your position before God, the Trespass Offering addresses your walk with God- Leviticus 5:14-19; 7:1-10. You offer it for the sins you have committed, rather than for sin itself. Old Covenant Saints were not born again as we are. Indeed they had a covenant with God as Abraham's descendents, but they were still sinners by nature. When they sinned, they needed to bring a Trespass Offering.

As you lay your hands on the offering, identifying yourself with it, you confess your particular sins. Your statement of confession offered to God is, "O Jehovah, I have sinned, I have done perversely, I have rebelled and have committed (naming the sins). But I return in repentance and let this be for my atonement." Confessing your sins removes the burden of guilt and it brings continuous forgiveness so you can approach God with a clear conscience.

The priest offers the fat of the inward parts to God upon the Altar. He then sprinkles blood back and forth on the Altar and pours out the remainder at the base of the Altar. The priest eats the remainder of the offering, but you do not share in the offering because it is for sins you have committed. Along with the offering, you must make restitution for any harm you may have done to a fellow Hebrew. This includes reimbursing him in full and adding twenty percent to the value of his loss. This brings about a reconciliation between you and the one you have harmed- Leviticus 6:1-7.

The Ten Commandments have helped you realize you are separated from God by your sins. This drives you to approach Him through the blood covenant. Through the Sin offering and Trespass Offering you express your desire for communion with God. You know that the blood of animals is only a temporary provision to cover you sins, but you are looking forward to the time when the perfect sacrifice will come to take them away.

Jesus not only took on our sin nature, but He also took on all the sins that we have or will ever commit. He died not for who we are but also for what we do. In the Sin Offering Jesus Christ destroyed the power of sin over us; which is what the Bible refers to as iniquity or the sin nature (Hebrew *avon*-crooked, perverse and twisted nature- our propensity to sin by nature). Isaiah 53:6, "*We all, like sheep, have gone astray, each of us has turned to his own way; and the LORD has laid on him the iniquity of us all.*" We no longer need to serve our old nature because it was crucified with Christ-Galatians 2:20, "*I have been crucified with Christ and I no longer live, but Christ lives in me.*" Yet, we still sin. When we do, we need a Trespass Offering. Jesus Christ is our Trespass Offering.

### **2 Corinthians 5:19 (TLB)**

**For God was in Christ restoring (reconciling) the world to himself, no longer counting men's sins against them but blotting them out. This is the wonderful message he has given us to tell others.**

Colossians 1:14, "*...in whom we have redemption, the remission of sins.*" His perfect sacrifice included forgiveness for every sin you committed in the past, every sin you are now committing, and every sin you will commit in the future. To help us realize this extent of God's forgiveness, Paul writes in...

### **Colossians 2:13-15**

**When you were dead in your sins and in the uncircumcision of your sinful nature, God made you alive with Christ. He forgave us all our sins, having canceled the written code, with its regulations, that was against us and that stood opposed to us; he took it away, nailing it to the cross. And having disarmed the powers and authorities, he made a public spectacle of them, triumphing over them by the cross.**

### **Psalms 103:12**

**As far as the east is from the west, so far has he removed our transgressions from us.**

### **Isaiah 43:25**

**“I, even I, am he who blots out your transgressions, for my own sake, and remembers your sins no more.”**

There is a power Biblical truth concerning ‘Remittance’ which is an accounting term that means to blot out or erase like it was never there. By God’s amazing grace this is what He does with our sins through the precious blood of Jesus- He blots them out into oblivion! God has forgiven us for all our sins, because all of them, past, present, and future, were nailed to the cross of Jesus. Not only has God forgiven us of all our sins, but He doesn’t even remember them. He blotted them from His memory. This is what the blood of bulls and goats could not do.

### **Hebrews 10:11-14, 17-18**

**Day after day every priest stands and performs his religious duties; again and again he offers the same sacrifices, which can never take away sins. But when this priest had offered for all time one sacrifice for sins, he sat down at the right hand of God. Since that time he waits for his enemies to be made his footstool, because by one sacrifice he has made perfect forever those who are being made holy. Then he adds: “**Their sins and lawless acts I will remember no more.**” And where these have been forgiven, there is no longer any sacrifice for sin.**

When we sin, the Scriptures tell us that our own heart will condemn and reveal our sin to us- not the Holy Spirit as you might think.

### **1 John 3:19-22**

**This then is how we know that we belong to the truth, and how we set our hearts at rest in his presence whenever our hearts condemn us. For God is greater than our hearts, and he knows everything. Dear friends, if our hearts do not condemn us, we have confidence before God and receive from him anything we ask, because we obey his commands and do what pleases him.**

Jesus stated that the Holy Spirit would convict the world of the one sin (John 16:8) that is left for unbelievers to commit, the one sin that sends them to hell- the sin of rejecting Jesus as their Lord and Savior. Jesus already bore all the sins of the world, all that is left for mankind to do now is confess Jesus as Lord; righteousness, reconciliation, justification, sanctification and everything else that is included in salvation is accredited to them by grace through faith- Ephesians 2:8. For salvation in Romans 10:9, does not instruct the unbeliever to confess all their sins to God (you could not remember them all anyway), but rather to confess Jesus as Lord. Nowhere in the New Covenant will you find a Scripture that states that the Holy Spirit convicts the saints of sin.

### **John 16:8-11**

**When the Holy Spirit comes, **he will convict the world of guilt in regard to sin** and righteousness and judgment: **in regard to sin, because men do not believe in me**; in regard to righteousness, because I am going to the Father, where you can see me no longer; and in regard to judgment, because the prince of this world now stands condemned.**

Thank God, when we do sin we have a promise in 1 John 1:9 for the believer to confess their sins to God! Watch out for false condemnation; Satan trying to take advantage of Christians. When we confess our sins to God our fellowship that was broken by sin is now restored; we continue to be a child of God, so our relationship is intact even when we sin. Remember, sin opens the door to Satan to come in and kill, steal and destroy; so be quick to forgive and quick to repent- Ephesians 4:27; John 10:10.

## **1 John 1:5-10; 2:1-2**

**This is the message we have heard from him and declare to you: God is light; in him there is no darkness at all. If we claim to have fellowship with him yet walk in the darkness, we lie and do not live by the truth. But if we walk in the light, as he is in the light, we have fellowship with one another, and the blood of Jesus, his Son, purifies us from all sin. If we claim to be without sin, we deceive ourselves and the truth is not in us. If we confess our sins, he is faithful and just and will forgive us our sins and purify us from all unrighteousness. If we claim we have not sinned, we make him out to be a liar and his word has no place in our lives. But if anybody does sin, we have one who speaks to the Father in our defense-Jesus Christ, the Righteous One. He is the atoning sacrifice for our sins, and not only for ours but also for the sins of the whole world.**

We stay free of condemnation and guilt by confessing our sins to God and claiming the forgiveness that is already ours through the blood of Jesus. Just like the Old Covenant believer, we say, "Heavenly Father, I have sinned. I have done perversely, and I have rebelled- I have committed (naming the sins). But I return in repentance and claim my forgiveness through the blood of Jesus- He is my atonement."

Along with our confession to our Heavenly Father, we must also confess our sins and make restitution to anyone we may have harmed by our sins. Jesus spoke of this in Matthew 5:23-24, *"Therefore, if you are offering your gift at the altar and there remember that your brother has something against you, leave your gift there in front of the altar. First go and be reconciled to your brother; then come and offer your gift."*

## **Ephesians 4:26-27**

**"In your anger do not sin": Do not let the sun go down while you are still angry, and do not give the devil a foothold.**

You see, when we get angry at someone and don't confess it, we begin to harbor that anger, that resentment, that envy, or jealousy, and it hardens our heart- Hebrews 3:13. When this happens, the root of bitterness begins to take hold. That's just the foothold Satan needs to destroy us and create strife and enmity between us and another person. As a result, our faith won't work (Galatians 5:6), that reality can get us into big trouble since our prayers would be hindered- 1 Peter 3:7.

## **Hebrews 12:15**

**See to it that no one misses the grace of God and that no bitter root grows up to cause trouble and defile many.**

Well, God has a better life for us than that. So He says in Ephesians 4:31-32, *"Get rid of all bitterness, rage and anger, brawling and slander, along with every form of malice. Be kind and compassionate to one another, forgiving each other, just as in Christ God forgave you."* For spiritual as well as physical healing, James writes in James 5:16, *"Therefore confess your sins to each other and pray for each other so that you may be healed. The prayer of a righteous man is powerful and effective."*

Many people have expressed a desire to commune with God by accepting Jesus Christ as their Sin Offering and Trespass Offering. They realized they could not save themselves and so they turned to Jesus Christ as their Savior. Yet they are not experiencing the abundant Christian life the Bible promises. They are not enjoying the spiritual blessings God has for them. Their position with God is secure, but the grace and glory of God is not manifested in their life. This happens to a Christian because they have not appropriated Jesus Christ as their Burnt Offering, Meal Offering and Peace Offering.

Often when this is brought to a Christian's attention, they will say, "Well, I'm not ready to make that commitment." What they are really saying is, "I've expressed a desire for communion with God but I'm not ready to enter into it." Remember that these are voluntary offerings of praise and thanksgiving. They are not associated with our sin, but with our worship to God. God won't force us to worship Him. We must choose to do so of our own free will. Yet the only way to experience the abundant Christian life is by expressing our readiness to have it through these offerings.

## 5. The Burnt Offering

Now that you have expressed a desire for communion with God, you want to offer yourself to Him. You indicate this through the Burnt Offering. The Burnt Offering expresses your readiness for communion with God. It is a voluntary offering of yourself. God doesn't force you to make this offering. You present yourself of your own free will. Yet, if you aren't willing to present yourself, it shows you aren't ready to have communion with God- Leviticus 1:3-17; 6:8-13.

The offering you bring is a bull, lamb, or goat. If you are poor, you may bring a turtledove or pigeon. These are not wild animals, but domesticated pets you have personally raised. As with all the offerings, they must be spotless, without defects or blemishes. As you bring the animal you have raised from its youth to the Altar, you lay your hands on its head to identify with it. If the offering is a lamb, you kill it on the north side of the Altar.



The priest catches the blood and sprinkles it roundabout and upon the Altar. Then the priest skins the animal to expose all of its inward parts. He then carefully dissects the animal checking each part to make sure it is free from defects. After the priest is satisfied with his examination, he burns the entire animal on the Altar, except for the skin.

So also Jesus was carefully examined by the religious leaders to look for a flaw, a crack or any tiny issue that would disqualify Him from being the Messiah. They were relentless, yet Jesus perfectly met all the requirements.

### **Luke 11:53-54**

**When Jesus left there, the Pharisees and the teachers of the law began to oppose him fiercely and to besiege him with questions, waiting to catch him in something he might say.**

### **Luke 20:39-40**

**Some of the teachers of the law responded, "Well said, teacher!" And no one dared to ask him any more questions.**

### **1 Peter 1:19**

**...but with the precious blood of Christ, a lamb without blemish or defect.**

The entire animal is offered as an expression of your readiness to present your entire being to God. It is a complete consecration or giving of yourself to God. Nothing can be held in reserve if you want to commune with Him. The smoke from the Burnt Offering ascends as a sweet aroma to God- Leviticus 1:9, *“It is a burnt offering, an offering made by fire, an aroma pleasing to the LORD.”* For his service, the priest receives the skin of the offering. The skin is the evidence that a sacrifice has been made. Since an entire sacrifice is offered to God, there is no portion left for you.

Jesus Christ voluntarily left His home in glory to become our Burnt Offering -Philippians 2:5-8. As the animal was killed on the north side of the Altar, Jesus, too was crucified on the north side of Jerusalem. He perfectly fulfilled every detail of the Old Covenant. In the Burnt Offering, the entire animal was offered to God. likewise, Jesus said in John 6:38, *“For I have come down from heaven not to do my will but to do the will of him who sent me.”* On another occasion in John 4:34, *“‘My food,’ said Jesus, ‘is to do the will of him who sent me and to finish his work.’”* Paul also recognized Jesus as our Burnt Offering when he wrote in Ephesians 5:2, *“...just as Christ loved us and gave himself up for us as a fragrant offering and sacrifice to God.”* As Jesus offered Himself to God with no reservations, so we must do the same concerning our own lives.

### **Romans 12:1-2**

**Therefore, I urge you, brothers, in view of God’s mercy, to offer your bodies as living sacrifices, holy and pleasing to God-this is your spiritual act of worship. Do not conform any longer to the pattern of this world, but be transformed by the renewing of your mind. Then you will be able to test and approve what God’s will is-his good, pleasing and perfect will.**

We present ourselves as a living sacrifice by yielding to the Lordship of Jesus over our lives. It takes many Christians a lifetime and some never realize, that Jesus is not just our Savior who came to help us when we are in trouble; Jesus came to take over our lives as Lord as well. As our Lord, He is the master, ruler and controller of our life. We are His purchased possession. He bought and paid for us with His own blood- Ephesians 1:14.

### **1 Corinthians 6:18-20**

**Flee from sexual immorality. All other sins a man commits are outside his body, but he who sins sexually sins against his own body. Do you not know that your body is a temple of the Holy Spirit, who is in you, whom you have received from God? You are not your own; you were bought at a price. Therefore honor God with your body.**

As a Burnt Offering, we lay ourselves open for God to inspect us. Our prayer must be...

### **Psalms 139:23-24**

**Search me, O God, and know my heart; test me and know my anxious thoughts. See if there is any offensive way in me, and lead me in the way everlasting.**

Jesus as our Burnt Offering- Psalm 40:6-8; John 4:34; Ephesians 5:2; Hebrews 9-10.

## **6. The Meal or Grain Offering**

At this point you’ve expressed a desire for communion with God through the Sin Offering and Trespass/Guilt Offering. You then expressed a readiness for communion with God through the Burnt Offering. You now come to the Meal or Grain Offering. Now that you have expressed a desire and readiness to commune with God, you want to walk with Him and serve Him. The Meal Offering symbolizes your walk in communion with God- Leviticus 2; 6:14-23.

The Meal Offering was the only offering without blood; however, it was only offered along with the Burnt Offering. The offering consisted of fine flour mingled with oil. Salt was added for seasoning and frankincense for spice. You offer it as raw flour, or as unleavened cakes and wafers that have been baked, fried, or roasted. No leaven or honey could be used in the flour.

Having properly prepared the offering, you present it to the priest. The priest offers a handful to God and eats the remainder. The handful represents the whole of the offering, accepting the representative handful, God accepts the whole. Since the Meal Offering represents your walk with God by His might and power and for His glory alone, you do not share in the meal.

On one occasion Jesus said in John 12:24, *“I tell you the truth, unless a kernel of wheat falls to the ground and dies, it remains only a single seed. But if it dies, it produces many seeds.”* Jesus was speaking of His death and resurrection. Through it He perfectly fulfilled the Meal Offering by becoming the bread of life for us to feed on. The Meal Offering symbolizes our walk in communion with God. Speaking of His walk with the Father Jesus said, *“I always do those things that please him”* John 8:29.

In the Bible, leaven or yeast represents sin. Honey with leaven represents the pleasures of sin- see Matthew 16:6; 1 Corinthians 5:6-8; Revelation 10:9-10. As the perfect Meal Offering, Jesus knew no sin according to 2 Corinthians 5:21. There was no leaven or honey in His life. It was as the sweet fragrance of incense to His heavenly Father.

The Bible uses oil as a symbol of the Holy Spirit. In place of the leaven and honey, Jesus was full of the Holy Spirit. As oil was poured on the flour of the Meal Offering, it was also poured upon Jesus. When He was water baptized, the heavens were opened to Him and He saw the Spirit of God descending like a dove and lighting upon Him. God then spoke and said, *“... This is my Son, whom I love; with him I am well pleased”* Matthew 3:17.

#### **Luke 4:18-19**

**The Spirit of the Lord is on me, because he has anointed me to preach good news to the poor. He has sent me to proclaim freedom for the prisoners and recovery of sight for the blind, to release the oppressed, to proclaim the year of the Lord’s favor.**

#### **Acts 10:38**

**How God anointed Jesus of Nazareth with the Holy Spirit and power, and how he went around doing good and healing all who were under the power of the devil, because God was with him.**

Salt preserves and purifies from corruption. Jesus is our salt, in that He is able to keep us from falling.

#### **Jude 24**

**To him who is able to keep you from falling and to present you before his glorious presence without fault and with great joy.**

This is the “sealing” with the Holy Spirit when we confess Jesus as Lord and believe in our hearts’ that God had raised Him from the dead- see Ephesians 1:13; 4:30; 2 Corinthians 1:22; 1 Peter 1:5. In this regard, salt relates to our position with God.

As believers in Jesus Christ, we are called the salt of the earth by Jesus Himself in Matthew 5:13- which relates to our walk with God. Christians function as the salt of the earth when we appropriate Jesus as our Meal Offering. As there was no leaven, or honey found in Him, neither should there be any found in us. This means to walk with God in the power of the Holy Spirit.

You see, God, through the Holy Spirit, will not lead us into temptation- James 1:13. Therefore, when we walk in the Spirit, we will not fulfill the lust of the flesh or our physical body. Since we live in the Spirit we should also walk in the Spirit according to Galatians 5:16-25. To make the Meal Offering a reality in our life, Paul writes for all Christians, “. . . *to be filled with the Spirit*” in Ephesians 5:18. The Holy Spirit is God living in us. Only when we allow Him to control our life, can we experience fellowship with God.

When we experience fellowship with God, we find it to be much better than any honey the world can offer. It creates a desire within us to set our affections on things that are above rather than earthly gains and earthly things- Colossians 3:1-3. As the song goes, “Turn your eyes upon Jesus, look full in His wonderful face, and the things of earth will grow strangely dim, in the light of His glory and grace...”

#### **Psalms 16:11**

**You have made known to me the path of life; you will fill me with joy in your presence, with eternal pleasures at your right hand.**

#### **Psalms 63:3**

**Because your love is better than life, my lips will glorify you.**

#### **Psalms 84:10**

**Better is one day in your courts than a thousand elsewhere.**

It becomes our motivation to want to come out from the world and be separate- 2 Corinthians 6:17. It moves us to be holy as He is Holy (1 Peter 1:16), that we may glorify and bring honor to Him who has brought us out of darkness into His marvelous light- 1 Peter 2:9. Like frankincense, our lives will be a sweet fragrance to our heavenly Father.

#### **2 Corinthians 2:14-16**

**But thanks be to God, who always leads us in triumphal procession in Christ and through us spreads everywhere the fragrance of the knowledge of him. For we are to God the aroma of Christ among those who are being saved and those who are perishing. To the one we are the smell of death; to the other, the fragrance of life. And who is equal to such a task?**

Jesus as our Meal Offering- John 4:34; 8:29; 12:23-24; Luke 4:18; Ephesians 5:2; 1 Peter 2:22.

## **7. The Peace or Fellowship Offering**

By the time you come to the Peace Offering, you have expressed a desire for communion with God through the Sin Offering and Trespass Offering. You have expressed a readiness for communion through the Burnt Offering and Meal Offering. You are now going to celebrate that communion through the Peace Offering- Leviticus 3; 7:11-36.

All the other offerings have been leading to the Peace offering. This is the one you have been looking forward to presenting. Because you are going to get a portion of this offering. It symbolizes the completion of your union, but first you had to be cleansed of your sins and offer your total being to God. Now that you have made that commitment, you are going to celebrate your union with God by sharing in the Peace Offering. This is what you've always wanted. This is why you made the other offerings. Through the Peace Offering, the cry and yearning of your heart is met as you enter into communion with God by sharing in this offering.

With a noticeable anticipation, you hurriedly lay your hands on the head of the animal and kill it. The priest catches the blood and sprinkles it all around and upon the Altar. He then takes the fat, places it on the Altar and offers it to God. With the help of the priest, you now offer to God the breast and right shoulder of your sacrifice. The breast represents your heart; the right shoulder, your strength. The priest places his hands under yours, and together you move the sacrifice up and down, right and left, in a waving motion resembling a “T”. God then gives back this portion, the High Priest receives the breast and the right shoulder goes to the priest who is helping you make the offering.

Along with the animal sacrifice, you also bring unleavened cakes and wafers mixed with oil plus loaves of leavened bread. There, in the courtyard of the Tabernacle, you eat the remainder of the sacrifice along with the loaves with your family and friends. It is a time of great joy as together you celebrate communion with God. Since God has returned part of the offering to you, you now are symbolically feeding on His divine nature. He is coming into you and you into Him. You are becoming one with God. That’s just what you have always wanted; to know God and share in His very own divine nature, to become one with Him, and now it’s happening in the Peace Offering. It’s the ultimate symbolism of your union with God.

When Jesus was born, all of heaven gave praise to God, “*Glory to God in the highest, and on earth peace to men on whom his favor rests*” in Luke 2:14. God’s favor rests on all who have accepted Jesus as their Peace Offering. He is the “true meat” and “true drink” that satisfies the cries and longings of the human heart-see John 6:53-63. This is the offering we have been looking for. All the other offerings were leading up to this one, we get a portion of this offering. The portion we get is God’s very own divine nature coming in us by the person of the Holy Spirit.

## **2 Peter 1:2-4**

**Grace and peace be yours in abundance through the knowledge of God and of Jesus our Lord. His divine power has given us everything we need for life and godliness through our knowledge of him who called us by his own glory and goodness. Through these he has given us his very great and precious promises, so that through them you may participate in the divine nature and escape the corruption in the world caused by evil desires.**

In the Peace offering, the breast and right shoulder that were waved before God in a “T” motion, looked ahead to the cross of Jesus; where He suffered as our sin sacrifice. Psalms chapter 22 provides some details and prophetic insight into what Jesus suffered for us.

## **Psalms 22:14-15**

**I am poured out like water, and all my bones are out of joint. My heart has turned to wax; it has melted away within me. My strength is dried up like a potsherd, and my tongue sticks to the roof of my mouth; you lay me in the dust of death.**

Just as the breast and shoulder were given back to the priest, so also were they given back to Jesus. Now He ministers in the heavenly Holy of Holies as our High Priest. There, before our Heavenly Father, Jesus bears our name over His heart and on His shoulder. Through His intercession on our behalf, we can cast all our cares upon Him, for He cares for us- 1 Peter 5:7. We can do all things through Him who gives us strength- Philippians 4:13.

## **Hebrews 7:25**

**Therefore he is able to save completely those who come to God through him, because he always lives to intercede for them.**

**Romans 8:34**

**Christ Jesus, who died-more than that, who was raised to life-is at the right hand of God and is also interceding for us.**

**1 Timothy 2:5-6**

**For there is one God and one mediator between God and men, the man Christ Jesus, who gave himself as a ransom for all men...**

As the peace Offering was eaten with leavened bread and unleavened bread mixed with oil, so we who know sin have received within us, Jesus who did not know sin. The Holy Spirit is the heavenly oil of joy and gladness who has come to live in our hearts.

At one time we were separated from God by our sins. Being apart from God, we were restless with no peace in our hearts, but now through the blood of Jesus we may draw near to God. We may walk in communion and fellowship with Him. We may walk in peace with Him and with each other- John 14:27; 16:33. Jesus as our Peace Offering- Luke 2:14; Colossians 1:16-23; 3:15.

**Ephesians 2:14**

**For he himself is our peace, who has made the two(Jew and Gentile) one and has destroyed the barrier, the dividing wall of hostility...**

**Romans 5:1-2**

**Therefore, since we have been justified through faith, we have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ, through whom we have gained access by faith into this grace in which we now stand. And we rejoice in the hope of the glory of God.**

When Jesus gave Himself as the perfect sacrifice, He fulfilled the Old Covenant. We no longer worship a system but a person- Jeshua Hamashiah is that person. He is the sacrifice needed for cleansing. Speaking of Himself through King David, God said:

**Hebrews 10:5-7**

**Therefore, when Christ came into the world, he said: "Sacrifice and offering you did not desire, but a body you prepared for me; with burnt offerings and sin offerings you were not pleased. Then I said, 'Here I am-it is written about me in the scroll- I have come to do your will, O God.'"**

Both Jew and Gentile can now enter into a New Covenant as a new creation, as one new man through the blood of Jesus, the once and for all perfect sacrifice!

Unit 14 Review:

Why is it ludicrous to suppose that a person can earn salvation through good works?

---

---

---

What lesson did God give Adam and Eve concerning the spiritual “Facts of life” in the Garden?

---

---

---

What was the purpose of God going into such detail over the sacrificial system in the Old Covenant?

---

---

---

What is the “One” sin that sends the sinner to hell, and that the Holy Spirit convicts the world of?

---

---

---

How does the “Burnt Offering” apply to us today as New Covenant believers?

---

---

---

Why was the “Peace or Fellowship Offering” important?

---

---

---

## C. The Priesthood

So far we have learned that when God gave the law, He also established a Tabernacle, a sacrifice system and a priesthood. The Tabernacle was a physical representation showing the people how to approach God. Tabernacle worship centered around the offerings; each offering uniquely revealed something about the nature of the final sacrifice when God would give Himself on man's behalf.

According to Exodus 28:1; 29:9, God chose Aaron and his sons to serve Him as priests. The priesthood was to be exclusively theirs. No one else could function in the priestly office. Aaron was the first High Priest. At his death, he would be succeeded by his oldest son. This way the priesthood could be passed down from generation to generation. Aaron's sons were to begin their priestly responsibilities at the age of 30- Numbers 4:3. When Aaron and his sons were consecrated, or set apart for their priestly office, they along with their priestly garments were sprinkled with blood- Exodus 28-29; Leviticus 8. This was a necessary part of the ceremony because they were sinners. You see, the priests were to be the mediator between God and man. Yet God, in His holiness, could not receive them unless their sins were covered by blood. Their blood-sprinkled garments publicly testified to their real inadequacy to represent the people. Yet it pointed the entire nation to a future time, when a perfect priest would come. He would set Himself apart and give His own blood as the perfect mediator between God and man.

### 1. The Old Covenant High Priestly Garments

The Central figure in the Old Covenant system was the High Priest- Exodus 28. He was the most important person in the entire nation because he represented the nation before God. The High Priest stood out above everyone else. This was not only because of his office, but also because of his dress- he wore seven different pieces of clothing. In the Bible, the number seven represents perfection. So symbolically, the High Priest was perfectly clothed for his position. His garments consisted of fine linen beautifully interwoven with blue, gold, scarlet and purple. They were called "holy" garments- Exodus 28:2. Their glory and beauty gave the proper dignity and honor to the High office. They also uniquely revealed something about the nature of the perfect High Priest who was to come. Like the sacrifices, when taken as a whole, they formed a complete picture of the one who would be greater than Aaron.



The High Priest wore white breeches of fine linen next to his body. Over the linen breeches, he wore a white coat of fine linen that hung to his feet. This was his ordinary dress as well as the dress of the other priests. Therefore, they were considered part of his garments of glory and beauty. In the Bible, fine white linen represents perfect righteousness- Revelations 19:8. So from within, the High Priest was symbolically clothed in perfect righteousness. The High Priest wore a blue robe over his coat. The blue color speaks of heaven. It represents a heavenly appointment by God Himself who selected Aaron as the High Priest. The blue robe hung slightly above the white coat. Embroidered on the bottom of the robe were golden bells alternating with pomegranates of blue, purple and scarlet. Gold represents deity. The purple and scarlet refer to royalty and blood sacrifice. These colors pointed ahead to the time when God, Himself would come from heaven to establish a kingdom with His own blood. As the High Priest walked back and forth inside the Tabernacle, the people outside could not see him. But they could hear the bells jingling. And as long as they heard the bells jingling, they knew the High Priest was alive and representing them before God. Over his robe, the High Priest

wore a short sleeveless jacket, called an ephod. The ephod was made of beaten gold that had been cut into thin wires and woven into fine linen of blue, purple and scarlet. It consisted of two pieces, front and back, that were joined at the shoulders by two gold chains. Two onyx stones were set in gold and fastened to the ephod at the shoulders. The names of the 12 tribes of Israel were engraved with a seal on these stones, six names on each stone. The ephod reached from the shoulders to below the waist, hanging slightly above the blue robe. A sash of fine linen fastened around the ephod. The sash served as a reminder that the High Priest was a servant of both God and the nation of Israel. A gold breast plate, also of blue, purple, and scarlet was attached to the ephod. Twelve beautiful stones were attached to the breast plate. The name of one of the 12 tribes was engraved with a seal on each stone. The stones were attached in four rows with three stones to a row.

As the High Priest interceded for the people, he symbolically carried the entire covenant nation into the presence of God. The stones on his shoulders symbolized his strength. Those over his heart represented his love. The seventh article of clothing was a turban (mitre) worn as a head piece. A gold plate was attached to the turban with a blue ribbon. The words "HOLINESS TO THE LORD" were engraved with a seal on the gold plate. It was the crowning piece of the garments of glory and beauty. By wearing it on his forehead, the High Priest would symbolically bear the guilt of any unclean sacrifices made to God- it also made him acceptable before God.

So we see that when the High Priest was set apart for his office, he, along with his garments of glory and beauty, were sprinkled with blood. Then later as he ministered on behalf the people, he stood before God as the holy and righteous representative of the entire covenant nation. God accepted the people in their priest.

## 2. The Day of Atonement

The High Priest had many duties and responsibilities, but his most important duty was to minister on the Day of Atonement- Leviticus 16; 23:26-32. The Day of Atonement occurred on the tenth day of Tishri, which is the seventh month on the Hebrew religious calendar. This corresponds to the Gentile months September-October. The Day of Atonement is also known as the Day of Forgiveness. The Jews call it "Yom Kipper." The Day of Atonement is the most solemn of all days. This is the day for making atonement or covering for the sins of the entire nation of Israel. It is the one day of the year when the High Priest could go behind the veil into the Holy Holies. There he would offer the blood of the sin offering on the Mercy Seat. God would accept it as covering for the sins of the people.

The pressure was on the High Priest. If he made a mistake, the whole nation would be without forgiveness. So God gave detailed instructions to the High Priest. The instructions not only told the High Priest what to do, but they pointed the nation to a Priest who would come as one greater than Aaron. When he came, everyone would recognize Him because He would perfectly fulfill every one of these instructions in Himself.

Leviticus 16 describes the ceremony on the Day of Atonement. The High Priest is in complete charge of the service, he must perform it all by himself- no one can help him or touch him until the ceremony is completed. We will follow the events step by step; put yourself in the role of a Hebrew. Come with me to the Tabernacle and together we will watch as our High Priest ministers on our behalf on the Day of Atonement.

### **High Priest Washes Himself Clean**

The first action by the High Priest is to wash himself. The washing represents a symbolic cleansing of any ceremonial defilement. Therefore the High Priest is cleansed so that he might minister on behalf of the people.

### **Dresses for the Service**

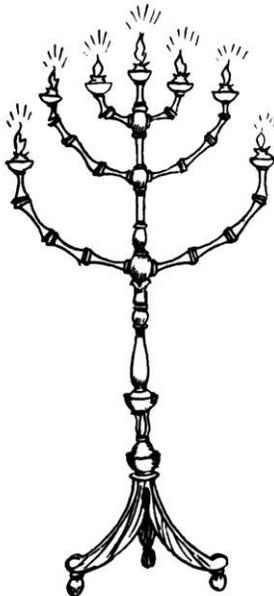
After washing, the High Priest dresses for the service. He puts on his linen breeches, his white robe, his sash and his turban. These are the clothes he will wear to represent the nation before God in the Holy of Holies. But notice that these are not his garments of glory and beauty. He does not put on his blue robe with the beautiful colors, golden bells pomegranates embroidered on the bottom. Neither does he put on his glorious ephod and breast plate. On the contrary, he is dressed very plainly in his white coat of fine linen, and he looks just like everybody else. Why you can't tell him from the next guy. As you look at him, probably think to yourself, "What makes him so great anyway? After all, the only reason he is the High Priest is because he is a son of Aaron. He probably didn't even want to be a High Priest. But there he is following in his father's footsteps."

### **Makes Sin Offering for Himself**

Now that he is properly dressed for the occasion, the High Priest begins the ceremony. His first action is to sacrifice a bull as his own sin offering. You see, the High Priest is just a man. So he must make atonement for his own sins before he can represent the nation. That doesn't give you too much confidence knowing that the person representing you before God is a sinner just like you are. Why, he's no better or worse than the rest of us.

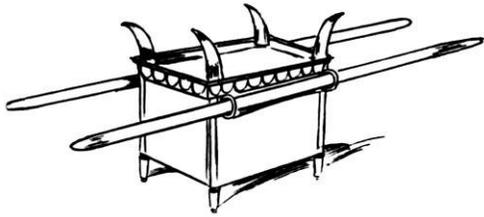
But since he is a man, he does understand your problems, he can identify with you and you with him. You know he is sweating it out on your behalf, but it seems as soon as you get to know him, he dies. Then somebody else takes his place. The new High Priest may not even like you. Well, this is not a very good deal for anybody, but it's the best you've got.

### **Enters Holy of Holies**



After the High Priest makes his sacrifice, he takes some of the blood of the sacrifice and carries it inside the Tabernacle. He has now disappeared from your view. First he must pass through the outer room called the Holy Place. He goes by the Golden Candlestick and Shewbread Table but stops at the Incense Altar. There he puts coals from the Altar into a golden censor and fills his hand with incense. Then he goes behind the veil into the inner-room called the Holy of Holies.

Remember that the Holy of Holies has only one piece of furniture- the Ark of the Covenant. It is a small chest about two feet high, two feet wide and four feet long. The lid of the Ark is called "The Mercy Seat." A replica of a cherubim (angel) is attached to each end of the Mercy Seat. Their wings outstretch touching each other at the middle of the lid. Right between the two cherubims and above the Mercy Seat is the blinding light representing the presence of God's glory.



It is the manifested presence of God dwelling in the midst of the people. The Holy of Holies is God's earthly throne room, the Mercy Seat is His throne, and the great light is His visible presence. The glory of God is so bright in the Holy of Holies, that the High Priest cannot stand in His presence. So as he goes into the room he puts incense over the hot coals in the golden censer. When the incense touches the coals, it completely fills the room with a

fragrant white cloud of smoke. This enables the High Priest to enter into God's presence. The fragrance of the incense is a sweet aroma to God. Standing in its midst, the High Priest sprinkles the blood of his sin offering over the Mercy Seat. This is the place of atonement for the sins of the nation. But before he can represent the nation, he must first make atonement for his own sins. Seven times he sprinkles the blood over the Mercy Seat. The number seven looks ahead to the perfect sacrifice that will come and not only cover sins, but take them away.



The High Priest cannot enter the Holy of Holies except on the Day of Atonement. He must stand during the entire ceremony. There is no place for him to sit down because his work is never finished. I'm sure when he entered the Holy of Holies, he would look at the Mercy Seat and want to just sit down and put an end to this once and for all. Instead he has to keep going back year after year because his job is never finished. To this point, the work of the High Priest has been for himself. However, it is all leading up to the main event of the day which is the sin offering for the nation. Now that he has made atonement for his own sins, he comes out of the Tabernacle back to the Altar in the outer courtyard.

### **Sin Offering for the Nation**

Two goats are provided as one sin offering for the nation. One goat will be sacrificed to God while the other goat will be set free. As the excitement builds, the High Priest brings the two goats before the Altar at the entrance of the Tabernacle. There he casts lots to determine which goat will die and which will be let go. After the lot is cast, he places one of the goats on the Altar, heavily leans his hands on its head and kills it. The sins of the nation are symbolically being transmitted to this animal. He is dying in your place as he symbolically becomes your sin substitute.

Then the High Priest takes the blood of the animal into the Holy of Holies. This is the most crucial moment of the biggest event of the year. Not only is the High Priest nervous but you are nervous. You are particularly nervous when the High Priest disappears from your view back into the Tabernacle. You are worried, you are anxious, you are tense. You'd like to go in there with him and make sure he does it just right. You see, this is your sin he is atoning for. Why, he might have a heart attack when he comes into God's presence and nobody would know it. That inner veil separates the throne room of God from the rest of the people. You don't know what is going on because you can't see in.

Oh, he has tried to describe it to you but it's just too wonderful for words, it's too glorious. There's no way he can express how it feels to stand before the glory of God in midst of the sweet cloud of incense. If you could just go in yourself, but you can't. You can't even go into the outer room. Only the priest can go in there, you are stuck out in the courtyard. If this could just be completed once and for all, then you wouldn't have to keep bringing sacrifices over and over and over. You wouldn't have to sweat out the High Priest year after year hoping God will accept him on your behalf. Surely there must be a real sacrifice, a real High Priest to put an end to this once and for all- don't you just love this deliberate build up!

But for now you must stand on the outside believing, that the blood of a goat is going to cover your sins and bring you forgiveness before God. Knowing that the High Priest has entered the Holy of Holies on your behalf, your heart begins to pound faster and faster. Standing before God in the cloud of incense, the High Priest sprinkles the blood of the goat over the Mercy Seat. Under that Mercy Seat in the Ark of the Covenant are the stone tablets containing the Ten Commandments. These are the commandments that you have broken. And every day of the year, God looks down from His glory cloud and sees His laws that you have broken.

The broken law is evidence of your rebellion and sin, and the penalty for sin is death. The wrath of God's violated Justice must be satisfied. The price must be paid. But God in His great grace has made a provision so that you don't have pay it. He has declared that the blood of the innocent sacrifice will take your place and temporarily cover your sins in anticipation that the ultimate sacrifice in the future will atone for them forever- only the blood of Jesus actually takes those sins away, remits and blots them out.

And now seven times the High Priest sprinkles the blood of the innocent substitutionary sacrifice over the Mercy Seat. At that moment, as God looks down from His cloud of glory, He doesn't see the evidence of your sins, instead He sees the blood.

The blood of the innocent sacrifice tells God that life has been given to pay the penalty. The blood covered Mercy Seat changes God's throne from one of judgment to one of mercy. Justice has been administered and God's wrath is vindicated for now. The High Priest then returns from inside the Tabernacle back into the courtyard. He goes directly to the Altar and smears the blood of the bull and goat on the horns of the Altar. Then he sprinkles blood upon the Altar seven times. This is a ceremonial cleansing of the Altar from the sinfulness of the nation.

### **The Scapegoat**

Now the High Priest needs some way to visibly show you that your sins have been dealt with and separated from you. This is the purpose of the second goat, the High Priest lays his hands on the goat symbolically transmitting to it, your sins and the sins of the nation. Then he sends the goat into the wilderness, and your sins symbolically go with it.

The scapegoat did not have to die, it was set free. However, before it was set free, the first goat had to be sacrificed and its blood sprinkled in the Holy of Holies. The blood of the first goat was the evidence to God that the penalty for your sin had been paid. The second goat could be free only after the blood of the first goat had been applied.

Now the blood of the first goat represented you. Symbolically your blood was applied through that first goat, but you were standing on the outside and didn't see it happen. But now as you see the second goat set free, you know that you are forgiven and your sins have been separated from you; that's the best news that you have heard since this time last year.

## **The High Priestly Garments**

But just as you are becoming overjoyed with this glorious news, the High Priest disappears again. He goes back into the Tabernacle to remove his plain white coat and to wash himself, again you begin to worry. Would God accept what the High Priest has done on your behalf? Are you really forgiven for another year? Is God pleased? How will you know? There is only one way, that's by hearing the jingling of the bells as the High Priest puts back on his garments of glory and beauty.

There in the Holy Place, hidden from your eyes, he puts on his beautiful blue robe with the gold bells and pomegranates. He puts on the ephod and breastplate with the stones bearing the name of your tribe. Symbolically he is carrying on his shoulders and over his heart. As he walks around inside the Tabernacle, you hear the jingling of the bells. A peace comes over you as this is your evidence that your High Priest is still alive and will soon be coming out to meet you.

## **A Burnt Offering**

Finally as the High Priest appears in his garments of glory and beauty, great shouts of joy go out from the people. You've been forgiven for another year. To conclude the ceremony, the High Priest offers a burnt offering to the Lord. It is a sacrifice of praise that God receives as a sweet aroma- all is well. That is until next year, when it has to be done all over again!

## **A Shadow of Better Things to Come**

Once again we see the inadequacy of the Old Covenant system. It is true the Ten Commandments were perfect; but they were written on tablets of stone rather than the fleshly tablets of the peoples' hearts.

## **2 Corinthians 3:3**

**You show that you are a letter from Christ, the result of our ministry, written not with ink but with the Spirit of the living God, not on tablets of stone but on tablets of human hearts.**

The Tabernacle was just a temporary building. Although God gave the details for its construction, still it was made with the hands of man. God established the sacrifice system, yet the blood of bulls and goats could never really take away sins. Therefore, the job of the High Priest was never finished. He had to keep going back year after year offering the sacrifices for his own sins and the sins of the people.

## **Hebrews 10:1-4**

**The law is only a shadow of the good things that are coming-not the realities themselves. For this reason it can never, by the same sacrifices repeated endlessly year after year, make perfect those who draw near to worship. If it could, would they not have stopped being offered? For the worshipers would have been cleansed once for all, and would no longer have felt guilty for their sins. But those sacrifices are an annual reminder of sins, because it is impossible for the blood of bulls and goats to take away sins.**

## **Hebrews 10:11-14**

**Day after day every priest stands and performs his religious duties; again and again he offers the same sacrifices, which can never take away sins. But when this priest had offered for all time one sacrifice for sins, he sat down at the right hand of God. Since that time he waits for his enemies to be made his footstool, because by one sacrifice he has made perfect forever those who are being made holy.**

Aaron and his sons were imperfect. But God in His grace, accepted the people in their High Priest as their holy and righteous representative. Like the sacrifice system, it was only intended to be temporary, a stop-gap until the permanent solution presented Himself- JESUS!!!

### **Hebrews 7:11, 18-19**

**If perfection could have been attained through the Levitical priesthood (for on the basis of it the law was given to the people), why was there still need for another priest to come-one in the order of Melchizedek, not in the order of Aaron? The former regulation is set aside because it was weak and useless for the law made nothing perfect), and a better hope is introduced, by which we draw near to God.**

Since Jesus lives forever, and is God, we now have absolute perfection- Praise God! Jesus never fails, grows tired or loses interest; He always lives to make intercession for us, mediate and represent us to the Father!

### **Hebrews 7:23-26**

**Now there have been many of those priests, since death prevented them from continuing in office; but because Jesus lives forever, he has a permanent priesthood. Therefore he is able to save completely those who come to God through him, because he always lives to intercede for them. Such a high priest meets our need-one who is holy, blameless, pure, set apart from sinners, exalted above the heavens.**

## **3. The New Covenant High Priestly Garments**

Now a perfect High Priest has come to fulfill what the Old Covenant High Priest could not do. Philippians 2:5-11 gives us some details. It says that Christ, being God, having the same nature and attributes of God laid aside all of His divine abilities in order to become a man and identify with His creation. Other scriptures describe His pre-existing glory; the prophet Isaiah saw Him high and lifted up on His throne, and His glory filled the heavenly Temple. Isaiah cried *“Woe is me, for mine eyes have seen the King, the Lord of hosts.”* See Isaiah 6:1-5.

Peter, James and John saw Him on a high mountain, His appearance changed before their very eyes. His face did shine as the sun, His raiment was as white as the light- Matthew 17:2. John saw Him again in the book of Revelation; His head and hair were white like wool, as white as snow. His eyes were like a flame of fire, His feet were like fine brass. His voice was as the sound of many waters and His glory was an unapproachable light. To look upon Him was to look upon glittering diamonds and shining rubies- Revelation 14; 4:3; 1 Timothy 6:16.

Yet Christ did not cling to His pre-existing glory, instead He laid aside His garments of glory and beauty. Now we've learned that in blood covenant the garment represents the person. Christ did not have a garment so He laid aside His own glory to be a High Priest for us who would feel our infirmities and be tempted as we are. He would be a God we could identify with and who could identify with us. He is the One, the High Priestly garments were pointing to.

### **Hebrews 4:15-16**

**For we do not have a high priest who is unable to sympathize with our weaknesses, but we have one who has been tempted in every way, just as we are-yet was without sin. Let us then approach the throne of grace with confidence, so that we may receive mercy and find grace to help us in our time of need.**

### **Dresses for the Service**

At the same time Christ laid aside His glory, He dressed Himself for the perfect atonement service. He dressed for the service by preparing Himself a body and becoming one of us. The Creator became the creation. The Master became the servant. The Son of God became the Son of Man. The Lord of Glory became a baby in a manger, and they called His name Jesus.

Through the incarnation, the virgin birth, Jesus became as much human as you and I are- thus the name Son of Man. At the same time remained the Son of God just without all the supernatural enabling. He looked just like everybody else. Why you couldn't tell Him from the next guy. He didn't have a halo around His head, you know. He wasn't glorious and beautiful in His appearance. He just wore a plain white linen robe- just like the Old Covenant high priest did while carrying out his ministry. But no man spoke like this man, who was perfectly fulfilling the Old Covenant throughout His life on earth. For the first 30 years, His life was very ordinary, it was not until the Baptism of John that He started His ministry and was anointed with the power of the Holy Spirit to start His earthly ministry- Luke 3:23.

#### **Luke 4:14**

**Jesus returned to Galilee in the power of the Spirit, and news about him spread through the whole countryside.**

#### **Symbolic Washing**

His first action was to allow John the Baptist to baptize Him in the Jordan River. In this way Jesus identified Himself with the Old Covenant High Priest who was washed in water on the day he was set apart for his priestly ministry. Not that Jesus needed to be cleansed, seeing that He was already perfect, but He wanted to show that He was fulfilling the Old Covenant types and shadows.

#### **Matthew 3:13-15**

**Then Jesus came from Galilee to the Jordan to be baptized by John. But John tried to deter him, saying, "I need to be baptized by you, and do you come to me?" Jesus replied, "Let it be so now; it is proper for us to do this to fulfill all righteousness." Then John consented.**

#### **4. The Sin Offering for the World**

The High Priest after the seed of Aaron was a sinner just like everybody else; however, Jesus was a High Priest, being in nature God. He came from God the Father, He was God but also very man. He was perfectly righteous from within and knew no sin; therefore, it was not necessary that He sacrifice for Himself. Instead He sacrificed Himself for us, He who knew no sin became sin for us according to 2 Corinthians 5:21. He became that once and for all perfect sacrifice. He got up on the altar by His own free will- that altar was the cross. There He became the sin offering for the world. He humbled Himself and became obedient unto death, even the death of the cross.

#### **Hebrews 7:27-28**

**Unlike the other high priests, he does not need to offer sacrifices day after day, first for his own sins, and then for the sins of the people. He sacrificed for their sins once for all when he offered himself. For the law appoints as high priests men who are weak; but the oath, which came after the law, appointed the Son, who has been made perfect forever.**

#### **Hebrews 8:3**

**Every high priest is appointed to offer both gifts and sacrifices, and so it was necessary for this one also to have something to offer.**

On the morning of His resurrection, He appeared to Mary and said in John 20:17, "*Do not hold on to me, for I have not yet returned to the Father. Go instead to my brothers and tell them, 'I am returning to my Father and your Father, to my God and your God.'*" Like the Old Covenant High Priest, Jesus was on a mission until He had completed His work in the heavenly tabernacle.

### **Hebrews 8:1-2, 4-8**

**The point of what we are saying is this: We do have such a high priest, who sat down at the right hand of the throne of the Majesty in heaven, and who serves in the sanctuary, the true tabernacle set up by the Lord, not by man. If he were on earth, he would not be a priest, for there are already men who offer the gifts prescribed by the law. They serve at a sanctuary that is a copy and shadow of what is in heaven. This is why Moses was warned when he was about to build the tabernacle: “See to it that you make everything according to the pattern shown you on the mountain.” But the ministry Jesus has received is as superior to theirs as the covenant of which he is mediator is superior to the old one, and it is founded on better promises. For if there had been nothing wrong with that first covenant, no place would have been sought for another. But God found fault with the people.**

But later that same evening Jesus appeared to His disciples and said in Luke 24:39, *“Look at my hands and my feet. It is I myself! Touch me and see; a ghost does not have flesh and bones, as you see I have.”* Jesus said flesh and bone rather than flesh and blood. That’s because all of His blood was poured out at the foot of the cross. Now that His work was over, they could touch Him again. It happened just like it did in the Old Covenant except this was not the blood of a goat. On resurrection morning, He entered into that more perfect Tabernacle in heaven. He went right into the heavenly Holy of Holies. It was the real High Priest, entering the real throne room of God, with the real sacrifice. The real sacrifice was His own blood that He sprinkled over the Mercy Seat. With His blood, He purchased our eternal salvation. This is part of the will He has left us in the New Covenant in His blood. The Old has passed away because it was temporary (\*Galatians 3:19-25), and the New Covenant has come for all eternity!

### **Hebrews 8:13**

**By calling this covenant “new,” he has made the first one obsolete; and what is obsolete and aging will soon disappear.**

When Jesus had given up His spirit on the cross by becoming sin for us, the great curtain in the temple that had separated the Holy place from the Holy of Holies was supernaturally torn in half- mind you it was a few inches thick. God was signifying that sin which had separated us from Him was now taken out of the way through Jesus Christ.

### **Matthew 27:50-54**

**And when Jesus had cried out again in a loud voice, he gave up his spirit. At that moment the curtain of the temple was torn in two from top to bottom. The earth shook and the rocks split. The tombs broke open and the bodies of many holy people who had died were raised to life. They came out of the tombs, and after Jesus’ resurrection they went into the holy city and appeared to many people. When the centurion and those with him who were guarding Jesus saw the earthquake and all that had happened, they were terrified, and exclaimed, “Surely he was the Son of God!”**

### **Hebrews 10:19-22**

**Therefore, brothers, since we have confidence to enter the Most Holy Place by the blood of Jesus, by a new and living way opened for us through the curtain, that is, his body, and since we have a great priest over the house of God, let us draw near to God with a sincere heart in full assurance of faith, having our hearts sprinkled to cleanse us from a guilty conscience and having our bodies washed with pure water.**

In 70 AD the Romans came and besieged Jerusalem, the Roman commander Titus, literally flattened the entire city including the Temple of God. Which certainly served God’s purpose, since Jesus had ushered in the New Covenant, we are now God’s temple- 1 Corinthians 6:19-20.

### **Luke 19:41-45 NKJV**

**Now as He drew near, He saw the city and wept over it, saying, "If you had known, even you, especially in this your day, the things that make for your peace! But now they are hidden from your eyes. For days will come upon you when your enemies will build an embankment around you, surround you and close you in on every side, and level you, and your children within you, to the ground; and they will not leave in you one stone upon another, because you did not know the time of your visitation." Then He went into the temple and began to drive out those who bought and sold in it.**

### **Certificate of Debt**

When someone dies and leaves a will, there must be evidence of the death before the will can be executed. The evidence that this will and the New Covenant can be executed is the blood of Jesus sprinkled on the Mercy Seat. All who claim His death as their personal sin substitute receive the gift of the will which is eternal life in union and communion with God.

When criminals were put in jail in Rome, their crimes and the number of years penalty were listed and nailed to their cell door. Each year the jailer would go by the cell door and mark off the time served until the debt had been paid. This paper was called a Certificate of Debt. It stayed nailed to the cell door until the debt was paid in full. Then the jailor would take the Certificate of Debt to the judge who would stamp it "paid in full." Then the prisoner would be set free. This is what God has done for all who will receive it. He took our Certificate of Debt that lists all our sins and He nailed it to the cross of Jesus, and when it was over, He cried out, "It is finished" in John 19:30- this was His victory cry.

He meant that our sin debt had now been paid in full, so when we appropriate this payment in our own life, we can be set free from the penalty and bondage of sin.

### **Colossians 2:13-15**

**When you were dead in your sins and in the uncircumcision of your sinful nature, God made you alive with Christ. He forgave us all our sins, having canceled the written code, with its regulations, that was against us and that stood opposed to us; he took it away, nailing it to the cross. And having disarmed the powers and authorities, he made a public spectacle of them, triumphing over them by the cross.**

According to the Scriptures, all the sins that were committed before Jesus were handled in a special way, *"in his forbearance he had left the sins committed beforehand unpunished."* God in His justice dealt with all sin, past, present and future when he nailed them to the cross in Jesus. When Jesus said, "It is finished" He meant it, there is no longer a sin issue. The only question left for mankind is, "What are you going to do with Jesus?" John 3:36 *"Whoever believes in the Son has eternal life, but whoever rejects the Son will not see life, for God's wrath remains on him."*

### **Romans 3:21-26**

**But now a righteousness from God, apart from law, has been made known, to which the Law and the Prophets testify. This righteousness from God comes through faith in Jesus Christ to all who believe. There is no difference, for all have sinned and fall short of the glory of God, and are justified freely by his grace through the redemption that came by Christ Jesus. God presented him as a sacrifice of atonement, through faith in his blood. He did this to demonstrate his justice, because in his forbearance he had left the sins committed beforehand unpunished- he did it to demonstrate his justice at the present time, so as to be just and the one who justifies those who have faith in Jesus.**

According to Romans, 10:9 salvation comes simply by confessing Jesus as Lord, not by confessing all your sins; it would be impossible to remember them all anyway. Currently the Holy Spirit convicts the world of one sin- the sin of rejecting Jesus as Lord, this is what sends people to hell John 16:8-11.

## **The Perfect Atonement**

### **Hebrews 10:8-10**

**First he said, “Sacrifices and offerings, burnt offerings and sin offerings you did not desire, nor were you pleased with them” (although the law required them to be made). Then he said, “Here I am, I have come to do your will.” He sets aside the first to establish the second. And by that will, we have been made holy through the sacrifice of the body of Jesus Christ once for all.**

We have been forgiven and made clean once and for all by blood of Jesus, He is the perfect sin offering. Through His blood, He has forever made us holy and righteous in the eyes of God. The blood of Jesus did what the blood of bulls and goats could never do. It didn't just cover sins, it took them away to be remembered no more. So He doesn't need to offer Himself again and again as the High Priest of the Old Covenant had to keep bringing the sin offering year after year.

### **Hebrews 9:24-28**

**For Christ did not enter a man-made sanctuary that was only a copy of the true one; he entered heaven itself, now to appear for us in God's presence. Nor did he enter heaven to offer himself again and again, the way the high priest enters the Most Holy Place every year with blood that is not his own. Then Christ would have had to suffer many times since the creation of the world. But now he has appeared once for all at the end of the ages to do away with sin by the sacrifice of himself. Just as man is destined to die once, and after that to face judgment, so Christ was sacrificed once to take away the sins of many people; and he will appear a second time, not to bear sin, but to bring salvation to those who are waiting for him.**

If that was necessary, He would have to die again and again. But He came once, for all, to put away the power of sin forever. Just as it is destined that men die only once, and after that comes the judgment, so Christ Jesus died only once as the offering for the sins of the world. So when sins have been forgiven and forgotten, there is no need to offer more sacrifices to get rid of them. We are like the scapegoat. We are set free. The blood of Jesus has removed our transgressions from us as far as the east is from the west, Psalms 103:12. Now the distance between east west cannot be measured- it is infinite. So is the distance that the blood of Jesus has removed us from our sins.

The angels must have shouted for joy that day when Jesus went into the heavenly Holy of Holies with His own blood. His wounded, pierced, bruised body was the final burnt offering. God the Father received the sacrifice of His only begotten Son as a sweet aroma- Ephesians 5:2.

## **The High Priestly Garments**

The veil of the glory of God has now been lifted off of Jesus. As our High Priest, He has now put back on His garments of glory and beauty as stated in the following verse:

### **Hebrews 2:9**

**But we see Jesus, who was made a little lower than the angels, now crowned with glory and honor because he suffered death, so that by the grace of God he might taste death for everyone.**

God the Father has exalted Him and given Him the name that is above every name. At the name of Jesus, every knee shall bow and every tongue confess that Jesus Christ is Lord- Philippians 2:10-11. Jesus is now seated on a throne of glory at the Right Hand of God the Father. Jesus is seated because it is finished, He has already bought and paid for our redemption. He is not going to do anything more for your salvation, healing, prosperity, peace of mind and victory in this life and the life to come- it's a done deal! Jesus is also seated because He has triumphed over death, hell and the grave- He has the keys according to Revelation 1:18; Hebrews 2:14; 1 Corinthians 2:6-7.

### **Ephesians 1:19-23**

**That power is like the working of his mighty strength, which he exerted in Christ when he raised him from the dead and seated him at his right hand in the heavenly realms, far above all rule and authority, power and dominion, and every title that can be given, not only in the present age but also in the one to come. And God placed all things under his feet and appointed him to be head over everything for the church, which is his body, the fullness of him who fills everything in every way.**

### **Colossians 3:1**

**Since, then, you have been raised with Christ, set your hearts on things above, where Christ is seated at the right hand of God.**

**Hebrews 1:3- After he had provided purification for sins, he sat down at the right hand of the Majesty in heaven.**

### **1 Corinthians 15:24-26**

**Then the end will come, when he hands over the kingdom to God the Father after he has destroyed all dominion, authority and power. For he must reign until he has put all his enemies under his feet. The last enemy to be destroyed is death.**

There are many more- Acts 2:33-34, 5:31; Romans 8:34; Hebrews 1:13; 8:1; 10:12; 12:2.

## **5. The Perfect Priest**

For unlike the Old Covenant High Priest, Jesus lives forever. Since He lives forever, He is always there to remind God the Father that He has paid for our sins with His own blood. Therefore, He is exactly the kind of High Priest we need. He is not going to have a heart attack, He's not going to die and have to be replaced. For God the Father has given Him the place of glory and honor in heaven.

### **1 John 2:1-2**

**My dear children, I write this to you so that you will not sin. But if anybody does sin, we have one who speaks to the Father in our defense- Jesus Christ, the Righteous One. He is the atoning sacrifice for our sins, and not only for ours but also for the sins of the whole world.**

Jesus now ministers before God the Father as the holy and righteous representative of all His covenant children. He constantly bears our name on His shoulders and over His heart in the very throne room of God. He ministers there on our behalf as the perfect mediator we need. Therefore, I can do all things through Christ Who strengthens me- Philippians 4:13.

### **Hebrews 9:15**

**For this reason Christ is the mediator of a new covenant, that those who are called may receive the promised eternal inheritance-now that he has died as a ransom to set them free from the sins committed under the first covenant.**

As believers when we sin, we confess our sins in His name and know He has forgiven us according to 1 John 1:9, because our names are sealed on His shoulders and over His heart. He is able to keep us from falling and present us faultless before the presence of His glory with exceeding joy- Jude 24. God accepts us as our High Priest.

### **Hebrews 9:11-14**

**When Christ came as high priest of the good things that are already here, he went through the greater and more perfect tabernacle that is not man-made, that is to say, not a part of this creation. He did not enter by means of the blood of goats and calves; but he entered the Most Holy Place once for all by his own blood, having obtained eternal redemption. The blood of goats and bulls and the ashes of a heifer sprinkled on those who are ceremonially unclean sanctify them so that they are outwardly clean. How much more, then, will the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered himself unblemished to God, cleanse our consciences from acts that lead to death, so that we may serve the living God!**

Therefore, when Jesus died, the veil in the Temple that hid the glory of God from the face of the people was split in the middle. You see, it was no longer needed because the New Covenant had been cut at the cross. Jesus, through His blood, has carried us to "Father's house." Now we all may walk right into the heavenly Holy of Holies by the blood of Jesus. We may pray directly to God the Father, in the Name of God the Son, through God the Holy Spirit- Ephesians 2:18, "*For through him we both have access to the Father by one Spirit.*"

### **John 16:23-24**

**In that day you will no longer ask me anything. I tell you the truth, my Father will give you whatever you ask in my name. Until now you have not asked for anything in my name. Ask and you will receive, and your joy will be complete.**

Now, all believers in the Lord Jesus are now ministering priests of the most high God. Speaking of this priesthood of the believer, Peter writes in 1 Peter 2:9, "*But you are a chosen people, a royal priesthood, a holy nation, a people belonging to God, that you may declare the praises of him who called you out of darkness into his wonderful light.*" Romans 15:16, "*...with the priestly duty of proclaiming the gospel of God, so that the Gentiles might become an offering acceptable to God, sanctified by the Holy Spirit.*"

## **6. The High Priest on the Throne**

When Jesus sprinkled His blood on the Mercy Seat, He did something that the Old Covenant High Priest could not do. He sat down on the throne- Ephesians 1:20; Revelation 3:21; 21 :5; Acts 2:30. This High Priest is on the throne, because His work is complete. Looking ahead to this time, the prophet Zechariah wrote:

**Zechariah 6:13- It is he who will build the temple of the LORD, and he will be clothed with majesty and will sit and rule on his throne. And he will be a priest on his throne. And there will be harmony between the two.**

Just as sure as the Mercy Seat was on the Ark of the Covenant, Jesus is on the throne of God as King of kings and Lord of lords. There He represents us before God the Father, He is the High Priest of all who have personally accepted Him as their sin offering. All of fallen humanity must stand before God in the heavenly courtroom of eternity. The only evidence presented for the will to be executed is the blood of Jesus. If you have appropriated His blood, He will be your advocate before God the Father. The blood of Jesus will cry out on your behalf, "Holiness unto the Lord." You will be accepted in your High Priest, Jesus Christ the Righteous.

### **Hebrews 9:16-23**

**In the case of a will, it is necessary to prove the death of the one who made it, because a will is in force only when somebody has died; it never takes effect while the one who made it is living. This is why even the first covenant was not put into effect without blood. When Moses had proclaimed every commandment of the law to all the people, he took the blood of calves, together with water, scarlet wool and branches of hyssop, and sprinkled the scroll and all the people. He said, “This is the blood of the covenant, which God has commanded you to keep.” In the same way, he sprinkled with the blood both the tabernacle and everything used in its ceremonies. In fact, the law requires that nearly everything be cleansed with blood, and without the shedding of blood there is no forgiveness. It was necessary, then, for the copies of the heavenly things to be purified with these sacrifices, but the heavenly things themselves with better sacrifices than these.**

However, if you are not covered by His blood sacrifice, Jesus Christ cannot represent you as your High Priest. The will cannot be executed, so the verdict will be guilty. You will stand before God in the Great White Throne Judgment. John had a vision of this future judgment of the unrighteous dead:

### **Revelation 20:11-15**

**Then I saw a great white throne and him who was seated on it. Earth and sky fled from his presence, and there was no place for them. And I saw the dead, great and small, standing before the throne, and books were opened. Another book was opened, which is the book of life. The dead were judged according to what they had done as recorded in the books. The sea gave up the dead that were in it, and death and Hades gave up the dead that were in them, and each person was judged according to what he had done. Then death and Hades were thrown into the lake of fire. The lake of fire is the second death. If anyone’s name was not found written in the book of life, he was thrown into the lake of fire.**

These are the people who always said they were good enough to approach God on their own good works like Cain. They claimed they didn’t need all that “blood business.” Therefore, God judges them on their own good works just as they desired. Unfortunately, they are cast into the lake of fire because their works of self-righteousness cannot cry out on their behalf, “Holiness to the Lord.”

### **1 John 5:10-12**

**Anyone who believes in the Son of God has this testimony in his heart. Anyone who does not believe God has made him out to be a liar, because he has not believed the testimony God has given about his Son. And this is the testimony: God has given us eternal life, and this life is in his Son. He who has the Son has life; he who does not have the Son of God does not have life.**

What about you, dear reader? Are you trying to approach God by your own good works, to earn your salvation? You will never make it you know, since God requires absolute perfection. However, forgiveness and reconciliation to God is available through the blood of Jesus. He’s already taken your Certificate of Debt and paid the price for all our sins. Now He desires to represent you before God the Father. The universal question that every human being will answer, “What will you do with Jesus?” To accept or reject Him, our eternal destination will be determined by our choice.

Unit 15 Review:

Why was the High Priest the most important person in the entire nation?

---

---

---

Why is the “Day of Atonement” so important?

---

---

---

When the “Mercy Seat” is covered with blood, what did that mean for the Old Covenant Hebrew?

---

---

---

Who was the Old Covenant High Priest a type of, and why is that significant?

---

---

---

How did Jesus identify with us and become the ultimate High Priest for us in the New Covenant?

---

---

---

Why is Jesus considered the perfect High Priest?

---

---

---

## **Lesson II Credits:**

The following sources of material have made significant and substantial contributions to the content of this training lesson.

**“The Miracle of the Scarlet Thread” by Richard Booker**  
**© 1981 by Sounds of the Trumpet, Inc.**

**Unless noted otherwise, all Bible quotations are from the New International Version, Zondervan Bible Publishers, 1978.**

**The Pentateuch**  
**2009 All Rights Reserved**